



BIOS and Kernel Developer's Guide for AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ Processors



Publication # 26094	Revision: 3.00
Issue Date: April 2003	

© 2002, 2003 Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. All rights reserved.

The contents of this document are provided in connection with Advanced Micro Devices, Inc. ("AMD") products. AMD makes no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this publication and reserves the right to make changes to specifications and product descriptions at any time without notice. No license, whether express, implied, arising by estoppel or otherwise, to any intellectual property rights is granted by this publication. Except as set forth in AMD's Standard Terms and Conditions of Sale, AMD assumes no liability whatsoever, and disclaims any express or implied warranty, relating to its products including, but not limited to, the implied warranty of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose, or infringement of any intellectual property right.

AMD's products are not designed, intended, authorized or warranted for use as components in systems intended for surgical implant into the body, or in other applications intended to support or sustain life, or in any other application in which the failure of AMD's product could create a situation where personal injury, death, or severe property or environmental damage may occur. AMD reserves the right to discontinue or make changes to its products at any time without notice.

Trademarks

AMD, the AMD Arrow logo, AMD Athlon, AMD Opteron, and combinations thereof, 3DNow!, and AMD PowerNow! are trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices, Inc.

HyperTransport is a licensed trademark of the HyperTransport Technology Consortium.

MMX is a trademark and Pentium is a registered trademark of Intel Corporation.

Microsoft and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Other product names used in this publication are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective companies.

Contents

	Revision History	15
1	Introduction and Overview	17
1.1	About This Guide	17
1.2	Related Documents	18
1.3	Conventions and Definitions	18
1.3.1	Notation	18
1.4	Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors	19
2	Processor Initialization and Configuration	21
2.1	Bootstrap Processor Initialization	21
2.1.1	Detecting AP and Initializing Routing Table	21
2.1.2	Initializing Noncoherent HyperTransport™ Technology Devices	22
2.1.3	Initializing Link Width and Frequency	22
2.1.4	Initializing the Memory Controller on All Processor Nodes	23
2.1.5	Initializing the Address Map Table	23
2.2	Application Processor Initialization	23
2.3	BIOS Requirement for 64-Bit Operation	24
2.3.1	Sizing and Testing Memory above 4 Gbytes	24
2.3.2	Using BIOS Callbacks in 64-Bit Mode	24
3	Memory System Configuration	25
3.1	Configuration Space Accesses	25
3.1.1	Configuration Address Register	25
3.1.2	Configuration Data Register	26
3.2	Memory System Configuration Registers	27
3.3	Function 0—HyperTransport™ Technology Configuration	27
3.3.1	Device/Vendor ID Register	29
3.3.2	Status/Command Register	30

3.3.3	Class Code/Revision ID Register	30
3.3.4	Header Type Register	31
3.3.5	Capabilities Pointer Register	31
3.3.6	Routing Table Node <i>i</i> Registers	32
3.3.7	Node ID Register	34
3.3.8	Unit ID Register	35
3.3.9	HyperTransport™ Transaction Control Register	36
3.3.10	HyperTransport™ Initialization Control Register	40
3.3.11	LDTi Capabilities Register	42
3.3.12	LDTi Link Control Registers	43
3.3.13	LDTi Frequency/Revision Registers	47
3.3.14	LDTi Feature Capability Registers	48
3.3.15	LDTi Buffer Count Registers	49
3.3.16	LDTi Bus Number Registers	51
3.3.17	LDTi Type Registers	51
3.4	Function 1—Address Map	53
3.4.1	Device/Vendor ID Register	55
3.4.2	Class Code/Revision ID Register	55
3.4.3	Header Type Register	56
3.4.4	DRAM Address Map	57
3.4.5	Memory-Mapped I/O Address Map Registers	59
3.4.6	PCI I/O Address Map Registers	62
3.4.7	Configuration Map Registers	64
3.5	Function 2—DRAM Controller	65
3.5.1	Device/Vendor ID Register	67
3.5.2	Class Code/Revision ID Register	68
3.5.3	Header Type Register	68
3.5.4	DRAM CS Base Address Registers	69
3.5.5	DRAM CS Mask Registers	72
3.5.6	DRAM Bank Address Mapping Register	72

3.5.7	DRAM Timing Low Register	76
3.5.8	DRAM Timing High Register	78
3.5.9	DRAM Configuration Registers	80
3.5.10	DRAM Delay Line Register	86
3.6	Function 3—Miscellaneous Control	86
3.6.1	Device/Vendor ID Register	88
3.6.2	Class Code/Revision ID Register	89
3.6.3	Header Type Register	89
3.6.4	Machine Check Architecture (MCA) Registers	90
3.6.5	Scrub Control Register	106
3.6.6	DRAM Scrub Address Registers	107
3.6.7	XBAR Flow Control Buffers	109
3.6.8	XBAR-to-SRI Buffer Count Register	113
3.6.9	Display Refresh Flow Control Buffers	115
3.6.10	Power Management Control Registers	115
3.6.11	GART Aperture Control Register	118
3.6.12	GART Aperture Base Register	119
3.6.13	GART Table Base Register	119
3.6.14	GART Cache Control Register	120
3.6.15	Clock Power/Timing Low Register	121
3.6.16	Clock Power/Timing High Register	123
3.6.17	HyperTransport™ FIFO Read Pointer Optimization Register	124
3.6.18	Thermtrip Status Register	125
3.6.19	Northbridge Capabilities Register	126
4	DRAM Configuration	129
4.1	Programming Interface	130
4.1.1	SPD ROM-Based Configuration	130
4.1.2	DIMM ECC Enable	133
4.1.3	Non-SPD ROM-Based Configuration	134
4.1.4	Base Address and Mask Registers	136

4.1.5	DRAM Initialization	137
4.1.6	DRAM Configuration	138
5	Machine Check Architecture	141
5.1	Determining Machine Check Support	141
5.2	Machine Check Errors	141
5.2.1	Sources of Machine Check Errors	142
5.3	Machine Check Architecture Registers	143
5.3.1	Global Machine Check Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)	144
5.3.2	Error Reporting Bank Machine Check MSRs	147
5.4	Error Reporting Banks	150
5.4.1	Data Cache (DC)	150
5.4.2	Instruction Cache (IC)	154
5.4.3	Bus Unit (BU)	156
5.4.4	Load Store Unit (LS)	159
5.4.5	Northbridge (NB)	160
5.5	Initializing the Machine Check Mechanism	160
5.6	Using Machine Check Features	161
5.6.1	Handling Machine Check Exceptions	162
6	System Management Mode (SMM)	165
6.1	SMM Overview	165
6.2	Operating Mode and Default Register Values	165
6.3	SMM State Save Definition	167
6.4	SMM Initial State	169
6.5	SMM-Revision Identifier	170
6.6	SMM Base Address	171
6.7	Auto Halt Restart	171
6.8	SMM I/O Trap and I/O Restart	172
6.8.1	SMM I/O Trap	173
6.8.2	SMM I/O Restart Byte	173
6.9	Exceptions and Interrupts in SMM	174

6.10	Protected SMM and ASeg/TSeg	174
6.10.1	SMM_MASK Register	175
6.10.2	SMM_ADDR Register	176
6.10.3	SMM ASeg	176
6.10.4	SMM TSeg	177
6.10.5	Closing SMM	178
6.10.6	Locking SMM	178
6.11	SMM Special Cycles	178
7	Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC)	179
7.1	Interrupt Delivery	180
7.2	Vectored Interrupt Handling	180
7.3	Spurious Interrupts	181
7.4	Lowest-Priority Arbitration	181
7.5	Inter-Processor Interrupts	181
7.6	APIC Timer Operation	182
7.7	State at Reset	182
7.8	Register Summary	183
7.8.1	APIC ID Register	184
7.8.2	APIC Version Register	184
7.8.3	Task Priority Register	185
7.8.4	Arbitration Priority Register	185
7.8.5	Processor Priority Register	185
7.8.6	End of Interrupt Register	186
7.8.7	Logical Destination Register	186
7.8.8	Destination Format Register	187
7.8.9	Spurious Interrupt Vector Register	187
7.8.10	In-Service Registers	188
7.8.11	Trigger Mode Registers	189
7.8.12	Interrupt Request Registers	190
7.8.13	Error Status Register	191

7.8.14	Interrupt Command Register Low	192
7.8.15	Interrupt Command Register High	193
7.8.16	Timer Local Vector Table Entry	194
7.8.17	Thermal Local Vector Table Entry	194
7.8.18	Performance Counter Local Vector Table Entry	195
7.8.19	Local Interrupt 0 (Legacy INTR) Local Vector Table Entry Register	196
7.8.20	Local Interrupt 1 (Legacy NMI) Local Vector Table Entry	197
7.8.21	Error Local Vector Table Entry	197
7.8.22	Timer Initial Count Register	198
7.8.23	Timer Current Count Register	198
7.8.24	Timer Divide Configuration Register	198
8	HyperTransport™ Technology Configuration and Enumeration	201
8.1	Initial Configuration Steps	201
8.2	One-Node Coherent HyperTransport™ Technology Initialization	202
8.3	Two-Node Coherent HyperTransport™ Technology Initialization	202
8.4	Generic HyperTransport™ Technology Configuration	203
8.4.1	Algorithm	205
9	Power and Thermal Management	213
9.1	Stop Grant	214
9.2	C-States	216
9.2.1	C1 Halt State	216
9.2.2	C2 and C3	216
9.3	Throttling	216
9.4	Processor ACPI Thermal Zone	217
9.5	Processor Performance States	217
9.5.1	BIOS Requirements for P-State Transitions	218
9.5.2	BIOS-Initiated P-State Transitions	219
9.5.3	BIOS Support for Operating System/CPU Driver-Initiated P-State Transitions ..	220
9.5.4	Processor Driver Requirements	220
9.5.5	P-State Transition Sequence	220

9.6	ACPI 2.0 Processor P-State Objects	229
9.6.1	_PCT (Performance Control)	229
9.6.2	_PSS (Performance-Supported States)	230
9.6.3	_PPC (Performance Present Capabilities)	236
9.6.4	PSTATE_CNT	238
9.6.5	CST_CNT	239
9.7	BIOS Support for AMD PowerNow!™ Software with Legacy Operating Systems ..	239
9.8	System Configuration for Power Management	240
9.8.1	Chipset Configuration for Power Management	240
9.8.2	Processor Configuration for Power Management	241
10	Performance Monitoring	245
10.1	Performance Counters	245
10.2	Performance Event-Select Registers	246
11	BIOS Checklist	255
11.1	CUID	255
11.2	CPU Speed Detection	255
11.3	Multiprocessing Capability Detection	255
11.4	Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)	256
11.5	Machine Check Architecture (MCA)	256
11.6	Memory Map	257
11.6.1	I/O and Memory Type and Range Registers (IORRs, MTRRs)	257
11.6.2	Memory Map Registers (MMRs)	257
11.7	Cache Testing and Programming	258
11.8	Memory System Configuration Registers	258
11.9	SMM Issues	258
12	Processor Configuration Registers	261
12.1	General Model-Specific Registers	261
12.1.1	System Software Registers	263
12.1.2	Memory Typing Registers	265
12.1.3	APIC Registers	282

12.1.4	Software Debug Registers	283
12.1.5	Performance Monitoring Registers	284
12.2	AMD Athlon™ 64 processor and AMD Opteron™ Processor Model-Specific Registers	284
12.2.1	Feature Registers	286
12.2.2	Identification Registers	291
12.2.3	Memory Typing Registers	292
12.2.4	I/O Range Registers	293
12.2.5	System Call Extension Registers	294
12.2.6	Segmentation Registers	296
12.2.7	Power Management Registers	298
12.2.8	IO and Configuration Space Trapping to SMI	301
	Glossary	305
	Index of Register Names	311

List of Figures

Figure 1.	Interleave Example (IntlvEn Relation to IntlvSel)	59
Figure 2.	Default SMM Memory Map	166
Figure 3.	An Eight-Node Configuration.....	203
Figure 4.	High-Level P-state Transition Flow.....	224
Figure 5.	Example P-State Transition Timing Diagram.....	225
Figure 6.	Phase 1: Core Voltage Transition Flow	226
Figure 7.	Phase 2: Core Frequency Transition Flow.....	227
Figure 8.	Phase 3: Core Voltage Transition Flow	228

List of Tables

Table 1.	Related Documents	18
Table 2.	Function 0 Configuration Registers	27
Table 3.	Function 1 Configuration Registers	53
Table 4.	Function 2 Configuration Registers	66
Table 5.	DRAM CS Base Address Registers	70
Table 6.	Mapping Host Address Lines to Memory Address Lines (64-Bit Interface).....	74
Table 7.	Mapping Host Address Lines to Memory Address Lines (128-Bit Interface).....	75
Table 8.	Function 3 Configuration Registers	87
Table 9.	Error Code Field Formats.....	97
Table 10.	Transaction Type Bits (TT).....	97
Table 11.	Cache Level Bits (LL).....	97
Table 12.	Memory Transaction Type Bits (RRRR)	97
Table 13.	Participation Processor Bits (PP)	98
Table 14.	Time-Out Bit (T)	98
Table 15.	Memory or I/O Bits (II).....	98
Table 16.	Northbridge Error Codes.....	98
Table 17.	Northbridge Error Status Bit Settings	101
Table 18.	Scrub Rate Control Values.....	107
Table 19.	XBAR Input Buffers	109
Table 20.	Default XBAR Command Buffer Allocation.....	109
Table 21.	Default Virtual Channel Command Buffer Allocation	110
Table 22.	An Example of a Non Default Virtual Channel Command Buffer Allocation	111
Table 23.	GART PTE Organization.....	120
Table 24.	Trwt Values.....	134
Table 25.	RdPreamble Values.....	135
Table 26.	Sources of Machine Check Errors.....	143
Table 27.	Valid MC0_ADDR Bits.....	153
Table 28.	Valid MC1_ADDR Bits.....	156
Table 29.	Valid MC2_ADDR Bits.....	159
Table 30.	SMM Save State (Offset FE00–FFFFh)	167
Table 31.	SMM Entry State.....	170
Table 32.	SMM ASeg-Enabled Memory Types.....	177
Table 33.	SMM TSeg-Enabled Memory Types.....	177
Table 34.	APIC Register Summary.....	183
Table 35.	Valid Combinations of ICR Fields.....	193
Table 36.	Power Management Categories.....	213
Table 37.	ACPI-State Support by System Class	214
Table 38.	Required SMAF Code to Stop Grant Mapping.....	215
Table 39.	Processor MSRs for Power Management	217
Table 40.	Low FID Frequency Table (< 1600 MHz).....	222

Table 41.	High FID Frequency Table (≥ 1600 MHz)	222
Table 42.	Sample VST Values	233
Table 43.	MVS Values	234
Table 44.	RVO Values	234
Table 45.	VID Code Voltages	235
Table 46.	IRT Values	235
Table 47.	_PSS Status Field	236
Table 48.	Performance State Block Structure (PSB Version 1.4).....	239
Table 49.	Configuration Register Settings for Power Management	241
Table 50.	FADT Table Entries	242
Table 51.	Processor Functional Unit Encoding.....	248
Table 52.	Performance Monitor Events	248
Table 53.	General MSRs	261
Table 54.	AMD Athlon™ 64 Processor and AMD Opteron™ Processor MSRs	285
Table 55.	FID Code Translations	299

Revision History

Date	Rev.	Description
April 2003	3.00	Initial Public release.



1 Introduction and Overview

The *BIOS and Kernel Developer's Guide for the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ Processors* is intended for programmers involved in the development of low-level BIOS (basic input/output system) functions, drivers, and operating system kernel modules. It assumes previous experience in microprocessor programming, as well as fundamental knowledge of legacy x86 and AMD64 microprocessor architecture. The reader should also have previous experience in BIOS or OS kernel design issues, as related to microprocessor systems, and a familiarity with various platform technologies, such as DDR, HyperTransport™ technology, and JTAG.

1.1 About This Guide

This guide covers the *implementation-specific* features of AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors, as opposed to architectural features. AMD64 architectural features include the AMD64 technology, general-purpose, multimedia, and x87 floating-point registers, as well as other programmer-visible features defined to be constant across all processors. A subset of implementation-specific features are not defined by the processor architectural specifications. These implementation-specific features may differ in various details from one implementation to the next.

Note: *The term processor in this document refers to AMD Athlon™ 64 processor architecture and AMD Opteron™ processor architecture. This document covers both classes of devices. For details about differences between them, see the AMD Athlon™ 64 Processor Data Sheet, order# 24659 and the AMD Opteron™ Processor Data Sheet, order# 23932.*

The implementation-specific features covered in the following chapters include:

- Model-specific registers
- Processor initialization
- Integrated memory system configuration
- HyperTransport technology fabric initialization
- Performance monitoring and special debug features
- DRAM configuration
- Machine check error codes
- Thermal and power management

1.2 Related Documents

The references listed in Table 1 may prove invaluable towards a complete understanding of the subject matter in this volume.

Table 1. Related Documents

Title	Order#
<i>AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 1, Application Programming</i>	24592
<i>AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 2, System Programming</i>	24593
<i>AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 3, General-Purpose and System Instructions</i> <i>AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 4, 128-Bit Media Instructions</i> <i>AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 5, 64-Bit Media and x87 Floating-Point Instructions</i>	24594 (three-volume kit)
<i>AMD Opteron™ Processor Data Sheet</i>	23932
<i>AMD Athlon™ 64 Processor Data Sheet</i>	24659
<i>AMD Processor Recognition Application Note</i>	20734
<i>CPUID Guide for AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ Processors</i>	25481
<i>Revision Guide for the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ Processors</i>	25759
<i>HyperTransport™ I/O Link Specification, Rev. 1.03</i>	http://www.hypertransport.org

1.3 Conventions and Definitions

Some of the following definitions assume a knowledge of the legacy x86 architecture. See Table 1 for documents that include information on the legacy x86 architecture.

Additional definitions are provided in the glossary at the end of this book, beginning on page 305. That glossary includes the most important terminology of the AMD64 architecture.

1.3.1 Notation

1011b. A binary value. In this example, a 4-bit value is shown.

F0EAh. A hexadecimal value. In this example, a 2-byte value is shown.

[1,2]. A range that includes the left-most value (in this case, 1) but excludes the right-most value (in this case, 2).

7–4. A bit range, from bit 7 to 4, inclusive. The high-order bit is shown first.

#GP(0). Notation indicating a general-protection exception (#GP) with error code of 0.

CR0–CR4. A register range, from register CR0 through CR4, inclusive, with the low-order register first.

CR0.PE = 1. Notation indicating that the PE bit of the CR0 register has a value of 1.

DS:rSI. The contents of a memory location whose segment is DS and whose byte address is located in the rSI register.

EFER.LME = 0. Notation indicating that the LME bit of the EFER register has a value of 0.

FF /0. Notation indicating that FF is the first byte of an opcode and a sub-opcode field in the MODRM byte has a value of 0.

1.4 Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors

Some changes to the register set are introduced with different silicon revisions. Refer to the *Revision Guide for AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ Processors*, order# 25759 for information about how to identify different processor revisions. The following summarizes register changes after the initial revision.

Revision C.

- MSR C001_0043h (ThermTrip_STATUS Register) deleted.
- Function 2, offset 90h, DramEn (bit 10), MemClrStatus (bit 11) added.
- Function 2, offset CCh, DisTscCapture (bit 30) added.
- Function 3, offset 70h, DispRefReq (bits 21-20) added.
- Function 3, offset 74h, DispRefReq (bits 22-20) added.
- MSR C001_001Fh (NB_CFG register), DisDatMsk (bit 36) added.
- Function 3, offset 90h, DisGartTblWlkPrb (bit 6) added.
- Function 3, offset D4h, ClkRampHyst (bits 10-8) added.
- MSR C001_0015 (HWCR register), HLTXYCEN (bit 12) added.
- MSR C001_0010 (SYSCFG register), ClVicBlkEn (bit 11) deleted.
- MSRs C001_0050h, C001_0051h, C001_0052h, C001_0053h (IOTRAP_ADDR*i* registers), and MSR C001_0054h (IOTRAP_CTL register) added.



2 Processor Initialization and Configuration

Each AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processor based system has one processor with its HyperTransport™ link connected to a HyperTransport™ I/O hub. When a reset signal is applied to an AMD Athlon™ 64 system or an AMD Opteron™ system, this processor is initialized as the bootstrap processor (BSP). In a multiple processor system, any other processors are initialized as application processors (APs). The BSP begins executing code from the reset vector (0xFFFFFFF0), while each of the APs waits for its Request Disable bit to clear to 0. An AP does not fetch code until its Request Disable bit is cleared. Both BSP and AP operate in 16-bit Real mode after reset. The BSP has the Boot Strap Processor bit set in its APIC_BASE (001Bh) MSR, and each AP has this bit cleared.

The processor node is addressed by its Node ID on the HyperTransport link and can be accessed with a device number in the PCI configuration space on Bus 0. The Node ID 0 is mapped to Device 24, the Node ID 1 is mapped to Device 25, and so on. The BSP is initialized with Node ID 0 after reset, and all APs are initialized with Node ID 7.

The BSP is ready to access its Northbridge and memory controller after its routing table is enabled. The APs are not accessible from the BSP until the links and the routing table are configured.

The initial processor states are described in the “Processor Initialization State” section of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual: Volume 2, System Programming*.

2.1 Bootstrap Processor Initialization

The BSP is responsible for the execution of the BIOS Power-On Self Test (POST) and initialization of APs. The BSP must perform the following tasks in an AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processor system:

- AP detection and routing table initialization
- Noncoherent HyperTransport device initialization
- Link width and frequency initialization
- Memory controller initialization on all processor nodes
- Address map table initialization

2.1.1 Detecting AP and Initializing Routing Table

The AMD Opteron™ processor has three HyperTransport links; therefore, an AMD Opteron™ system can have from one to eight processors. The BSP must detect all APs in the system, starting from its adjacent processor. Since the APs are initialized at Node 7, the BSP must set entry 7 of its

Routing Table before the AP can be accessed. The adjacent AP will respond to a PCI configuration read if it is present. A new Node ID can be assigned to the AP after the routing information is updated in the routing table. Setting the routing table is the key to the successful detection of all APs. Chapter 3, “Memory System Configuration,” explains the steps for enumerating and initializing the processor in one-processor (UP) and two-processor (DP) configurations, as well as in configurations with as many as eight processors in a system.

The AMD Athlon™ 64 processor has one HyperTransport link. Because one link must be connected to the HyperTransport I/O hub, an AMD Athlon™ 64 system can only be used in a uniprocessor system.

2.1.2 Initializing Noncoherent HyperTransport™ Technology Devices

Once all APs have been detected and the routing tables and link control registers have been initialized, the BSP must initialize noncoherent HyperTransport technology devices.

A noncoherent HyperTransport technology device has either one or two links. A tunnel device has two links and a terminal device has one link. The HyperTransport I/O hub is a typical example of a terminal noncoherent HyperTransport device. The noncoherent HyperTransport device is identified by its unit ID in a noncoherent HyperTransport link and can be accessed with a device number in the PCI configuration space. The device number in PCI space is the same as the Unit ID assigned to the noncoherent HyperTransport device.

After reset, the Unit ID of each noncoherent HyperTransport technology device is initialized with a value of 0. When a PCI configuration read is performed from the BSP through a noncoherent HyperTransport link, the noncoherent HyperTransport device connected to the port responds. A new non-zero Unit ID value must be assigned to this device. The BIOS continues this process until no device responds at Device 0. The bus number range must be set to the noncoherent HyperTransport link on the BSP and in the address map table prior to the detection. The link control and status registers of a noncoherent device are implemented in the capability register block.

The noncoherent HyperTransport technology devices connected to a port on the AP node can be detected in the same fashion. Again, the bus number range must be set to the noncoherent HyperTransport link on this AP and in the address map table. The noncoherent device can be detected with the starting bus number, Device 0 on the PCI configuration space.

A noncoherent HyperTransport technology device may occupy more than one Unit ID. The new ID assigned to a device is its starting ID, the Base Unit ID (BaseUID). The next logic device in this noncoherent HyperTransport device can be identified with BaseUID + 1, and so on. The Unit ID Count field in the Capabilities register indicates how many Unit IDs this device occupies.

2.1.3 Initializing Link Width and Frequency

The HyperTransport link width and frequency are initialized between the adjacent coherent and/or noncoherent HyperTransport technology devices during the reset sequence. After AP and noncoherent HyperTransport device detection, the link width and frequency can be changed

according to the capability of the adjacent devices or the implementation of the system. To make the new link width and frequency take effect, an LDTSTOP_L needs to be asserted or a warm reset must be performed. The BIOS must guarantee that LDTSTOP_L assertion for link width and frequency changes does not occur within 200µs of reset.

2.1.4 Initializing the Memory Controller on All Processor Nodes

The BSP is responsible for configuring the memory controller on all processor nodes and for initializing the DRAM map table. Chapter 4, “DRAM Configuration,” describes the functionality of the memory controller and the steps required to initialize memory.

After memory configuration, the memory address MSR must be set accordingly. The Top of Memory MSR is used for the top of DRAM below 4 Gbytes, and TOP_MEM2 is set to the top of DRAM above 4 Gbytes.

2.1.5 Initializing the Address Map Table

Each processor node has an address map table. This table contains the address map for the DRAM area, the address map for PCI memory spaces (MMIO), the address map for PCI I/O spaces, and the bus number range for each noncoherent HyperTransport link in AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors. The address map table must be duplicated on all AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors in a system.

2.2 Application Processor Initialization

The application processor (AP) waits until its request disable bit is cleared to 0. The BIOS may clear this bit for an AP as soon as the AP node detection is completed and the routing tables are initialized, or just before the AP register initialization.

When the request disable bit is cleared, the corresponding AP starts to fetch code from the reset vector (0xFFFFFFFF). The BSP bit in AP APIC_BASE register is cleared at reset, so it can be used to terminate the AP execution after the initial APIC initialization.

The AP register initialization is the same as that of other AMD x86 processor families, such as the AMD Athlon™ processors.

2.3 BIOS Requirement for 64-Bit Operation

In general, the BIOS need not be aware of 64-bit mode in POST. Nothing extra is necessary to support 64-bit mode. The operating system determines whether to enable 64-bit mode after the BIOS invokes the operating system loader in legacy mode. There are two areas that need further explanation:

- Sizing and testing memory above 4 Gbytes
- Using BIOS callback when in 64-bit mode

2.3.1 Sizing and Testing Memory above 4 Gbytes

AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors have extended physical address extension (PAE) to support a 40-bit address space. Thus, the BIOS can set up a 32-bit page table that allows it to size and test all physical memory in the system.

2.3.2 Using BIOS Callbacks in 64-Bit Mode

Using BIOS callbacks on an AMD Athlon™ 64 processor or an AMD Opteron™ processor platform in 64-bit mode is neither recommended nor supported by AMD64 operating systems. This can lead to serious system errors that can only be corrected by re-booting the processor. Errors occur because cross-mode callbacks require a complex software environment with much of the 64-bit operating system state being duplicated in 32-bit versions of IDT, page tables, etc. Making this work would require a good deal of BIOS and OS effort and provide ample opportunity for bugs to affect operating system kernel stability.

Thus, BIOS callbacks must be avoided by operating system software and device drivers while the system is in 64-bit mode. By always invoking the operating system loader in legacy mode with paging disabled, the loader can use 16/32-bit BIOS callbacks. If an operating system changes into 64-bit mode, operating systems for AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors will not require nor use a BIOS function that returns to legacy mode. This is possible because the BIOS is required to be compliant with ACPI 2.0 and because operating systems require all operating system drivers—especially video drivers—to avoid option ROM callbacks.

3 Memory System Configuration

3.1 Configuration Space Accesses

The AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors implement configuration space as defined in the PCI Local Bus Specification, Rev. 2.2, and the HyperTransport™ I/O Link Specification, Rev. 1.03.

Both coherent HyperTransport links and the compatibility bus (the bus to the HyperTransport I/O hub) are accessed through Bus 0. Configuration accesses to Bus 0, devices 0 to 23, are transmitted to the compatibility noncoherent HyperTransport bus. Coherent HyperTransport device configuration space is accessed by using Bus 0, devices 24 to 31, where Device 24 corresponds to Node 0 and Device 31 corresponds to Node 7.

All configuration cycles are type 1 on coherent HyperTransport links. When transmitted down a noncoherent HyperTransport chain by the host bridge, configuration cycles are translated to type 0 if they target the noncoherent HyperTransport bus immediately behind the host bridge. If they target a subordinate bus, they remain as type 1.

Accesses to memory system configuration registers are controlled through the Configuration Address register (see “Configuration Address Register” on page 25) and the Configuration Data register (see “Configuration Data Register” on page 26), which can be accessed through I/O reads/writes to addresses 0CF8h and 0CFCh, respectively.

3.1.1 Configuration Address Register

Writes to the Configuration Address register specify the target of a configuration access in terms of the bus, device, function, and register. Access to the Configuration Address register must be full doubleword reads or writes.

To access one of the memory system configuration registers defined in this chapter, the bus number should be 0, the device number should be the target AMD Athlon™ 64 processor or AMD Opteron™ processor node number plus 24, and the function and register number should be set based on the register function and offset as specified in this chapter.

When the Enable bit of the Configuration Address register is set, reads and writes to the Configuration Data register access the register specified in the Configuration Address register.

Configuration Address Register

0CF8h (doubleword)

31	24	23	16	15	11	10	8	7	2	1	0
EnReg	reserved				BusNum		DevNum		FuncNum		RegNum
											reserved

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W
31	EnReg	Enable Register	R/W
30–24	reserved		R
23–16	BusNum	Bus Number	R/W
15–11	DevNum	Device Number	R/W
10–8	FuncNum	Function Number	R/W
7–2	RegNum	Register Number	R/W
1–0	reserved		R

Field Descriptions

Register Number (RegNum)—Bits 7–2. Specifies the doubleword offset of the configuration address.

Function Number (FuncNum)—Bits 10–8. Specifies the function number of the configuration address.

Device Number (DevNum)—Bits 15–11. Specifies the device number of the configuration address.

Bus Number (BusNum)—Bits 23–16. Specifies the bus number of the configuration address.

Enable (EnReg)—Bit 31. When this bit is set, aligned doubleword accesses to the Configuration Data Register result in configuration-space transactions.

0 = Configuration transactions disabled.

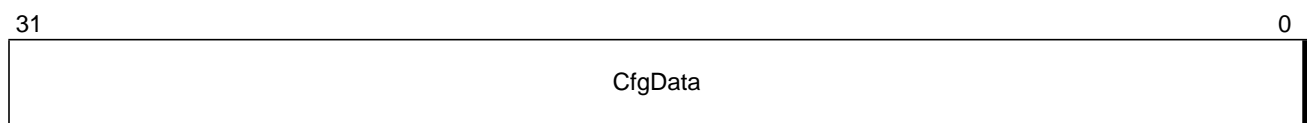
1 = Configuration transactions enabled.

3.1.2 Configuration Data Register

Accesses to the Configuration Data Register are translated to configuration-space transactions at the address specified by the Configuration Address Register.

Configuration Data Register

0CFCh (Doubleword)



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W
31–0	CfgData	Configuration Data	R/W

Field Descriptions

Configuration Data (CfgData)—Bits 31–0.

3.2 Memory System Configuration Registers

The AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors implement memory system configuration registers in the “Northbridge” block of the processor. These registers are mapped into the coherent HyperTransport technology configuration space (Bus 0, device numbers 24–31). The number of devices implemented is equal to the number of processor nodes in the system. Configuration space Device 24 corresponds to Node 0 and is normally the bootstrap processor (BSP). Configuration space device numbers 25 through 31 correspond to nodes 1 through 7, which may or may not be implemented.

The processor implements configuration registers in PCI configuration space using the following four headers:

- Function 0: HyperTransport technology configuration (see page 27)
- Function 1: Address map configuration (see page 53)
- Function 2: DRAM configuration (see page 65)
- Function 3: Miscellaneous configuration (see page 86)

Each of these functions are detailed in the following sections.

Note: Some fields in the headers and HyperTransport technology capability blocks are defined to be persistent through warm reset, which means their values are only affected by cold (power-on) reset. If not specified otherwise, a field is non-persistent.

3.3 Function 0—HyperTransport™ Technology Configuration

Table 2. Function 0 Configuration Registers

Offset	Register Name				Reset	Access	Description
00h	Device ID		Vendor ID (AMD)		1100_1022h	RO	page 29
04h	Status		Command ¹		0010_0000h	RO	page 30
08h	Base Class Code	Subclass Code	Program Interface	Revision ID	0600_0000h	RO	page 30
0Ch	BIST	Header Type	Latency Timer	Cache Line Size	0080_0000h	RO	page 31
10h	Base Address 0				0000_0000h	RO	

Notes:

1. The unimplemented registers in the standard PCI configuration space are implemented as read-only and return 0 if read.
2. Reads and writes to unimplemented registers in the extended PCI configuration space will result in unpredictable behavior.

Table 2. Function 0 Configuration Registers (Continued)

Offset	Register Name				Reset	Access	Description
14h	Base Address 1				0000_0000h	RO	
18h	Base Address 2				0000_0000h	RO	
1Ch	Base Address 3				0000_0000h	RO	
20h	Base Address 4				0000_0000h	RO	
24h	Base Address 5				0000_0000h	RO	
28h	Card Bus CIS Pointer				0000_0000h	RO	
2Ch	Sub-System ID		Sub-System Vendor ID		0000_0000h	RO	
30h	ROM Base Address				0000_0000h	RO	
34h	Capabilities Pointer				page 31	RO	page 31
38h	reserved				0000_0000h	RO	
3Ch	Max Latency	Min GNT	Int Pin	Int Line	0000_0000h	RO	
40h	Routing Table Node 0				0001_0101h	RW	page 32
44h	Routing Table Node 1				0001_0101h	RW	page 32
48h	Routing Table Node 2				0001_0101h	RW	page 32
4Ch	Routing Table Node 3				0001_0101h	RW	page 32
50h	Routing Table Node 4				0001_0101h	RW	page 32
54h	Routing Table Node 5				0001_0101h	RW	page 32
58h	Routing Table Node 6				0001_0101h	RW	page 32
5Ch	Routing Table Node 7				0001_0101h	RW	page 32
60h	Node ID				0000_0000h	RW	page 34
64h	Unit ID				0000_00E4h	RW	page 35
68h	HyperTransport™ Transaction Control				0F00_0000h	RW	page 36
6Ch	HyperTransport™ Initialization Control				page 40	RW	page 40
80h	LDT0 Capabilities				page 42	RO	page 42
84h	LDT0 Link Control				0011_0000h	RW	page 43
88h	LDT0 Frequency/Revision				page 47	RW	page 47
8Ch	LDT0 Feature Capability				0000_0002h	RO	page 48
90h	LDT0 Buffer Count				page 49	RW	page 49
94h	LDT0 Bus Number				0000_0000h	RW	page 51
98h	LDT0 Type				page 51	RO	page 51
A0h	LDT1 Capabilities				page 42	RO	page 42
A4h	LDT1 Link Control				0011_0000h	RW	page 43

Notes:

1. The unimplemented registers in the standard PCI configuration space are implemented as read-only and return 0 if read.
2. Reads and writes to unimplemented registers in the extended PCI configuration space will result in unpredictable behavior.

Table 2. Function 0 Configuration Registers (Continued)

Offset	Register Name	Reset	Access	Description
A8h	LDT1 Frequency/Revision	page 47	RW	page 47
ACh	LDT1 Feature Capability	0000_0002h	RO	page 48
B0h	LDT1 Buffer Count	page 49	RW	page 49
B4h	LDT1 Bus Number	0000_0000h	RW	page 51
B8h	LDT1 Type	page 51	RO	page 51
C0h	LDT2 Capabilities	page 42	RO	page 42
C4h	LDT2 Link Control	0011_0000h	RW	page 43
C8h	LDT2 Frequency/Revision	page 47	RW	page 47
CCh	LDT2 Feature Capability	0000_0002h	RO	page 48
D0h	LDT2 Buffer Count	page 49	RW	page 49
D4h	LDT2 Bus Number	0000_0000h	RW	page 51
D8h	LDT2 Type	page 51	RO	page 51
Notes: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The unimplemented registers in the standard PCI configuration space are implemented as read-only and return 0 if read. 2. Reads and writes to unimplemented registers in the extended PCI configuration space will result in unpredictable behavior. 				

3.3.1 Device/Vendor ID Register

This register specifies the device and vendor IDs for the Function 0 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Device/Vendor ID Register

Function 0: Offset 00h

31	16	15	0
DevID		VenID	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	DevID	Device ID	R	1100h
15–0	VenID	Vendor ID	R	1022h

Field Descriptions

Vendor ID (VenID)—Bits 15–0. This read-only value is defined as 1022h for AMD.

Device ID (DevID)—Bits 31–16. This read-only value is defined as 1100h for the HyperTransport technology configuration function.

3.3.2 Status/Command Register

This register contains status and command information for the Function 0 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Status/Command Register

Function 0: Offset 04h

31	16	15	0
Status		Command	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16		Status	R	0010h
15–0		Command	R	0000h

Field Descriptions

Command—Bits 15–0. This read-only value is defined as 0000h.

Status—Bits 31–16. This read-only value is defined as 0010h to indicate that the processor has a capabilities list containing configuration information specific to HyperTransport technology.

3.3.3 Class Code/Revision ID Register

This register specifies the class code and revision for the Function 0 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Class Code/Revision ID Register

Function 0: Offset 08h

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
BCC		SCC		PI		RevID	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	BCC	Base Class Code	R	06h
23–16	SCC	Subclass Code	R	00h
15–8	PI	Programming Interface	R	00h
7–0	RevID	Revision ID	R	00h

Field Descriptions

Revision ID (RevID)—Bits 7–0.

Programming Interface (PI)—Bits 15–8. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

Sub Class Code (SCC)—Bits 23–16. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

Base Class Code (BCC)—Bits 31–24. This read-only value is defined as 06h for a host bridge device.

3.3.4 Header Type Register

This register specifies the header type for the Function 0 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Header Type Register

Function 0: Offset 0Ch

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0	
BIST				HType		LatTimer		CLS

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	BIST	BIST	R	00h
23–16	HType	Header Type	R	80h
15–8	LatTimer	Latency Timer	R	00h
7–0	CLS	Cache Line Size	R	00h

Field Descriptions

CacheLineSize (CLS)—Bits 7–0. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

LatencyTimer (LatTimer)—Bits 15–8. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

HeaderType (HType)—Bits 23–16. This read-only value is defined as 80h to indicate that multiple functions are present in the configuration header and that the header layout corresponds to a device header as opposed to a bridge header. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

BIST—Bits 31–24. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

3.3.5 Capabilities Pointer Register

This register contains a capabilities pointer to a linked capabilities list of registers specific to HyperTransport technology, with one set for each HyperTransport link. It is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Capabilities Pointer Register

Function 0: Offset 34h

31	8	7	0
reserved			CapPtr

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–8	reserved		R	0
7–0	CapPtr	Capability Pointer	R	

Field Descriptions

Capability Pointer (CapPtr)—Bits 7–0. Points to the first available HyperTransport technology capabilities block. Depending on the specific HyperTransport link configuration physically present on the processor, this will be either 80h (LDT0), A0h (LDT1) or C0h (LDT2).

3.3.6 Routing Table Node *i* Registers

The routing table contains three entries—one for requests RQRoute[7:0], one for responses RPRoute[7:0], and one for broadcasts BCRoute[7:0].

A maximum of eight nodes with three links per node is supported in an AMD Opteron™ system.

These table entries can be read and written, and are not persistent. At reset, all table entries are initialized to the value 01h, indicating that packets should be accepted by this node. Care must be exercised when changing table entries after reset to ensure that connectivity is not lost during the process.

3.3.6.1 Request Routing Table

Each node contains a routing table for use with directed requests, with one entry for each of the eight possible destination Node IDs. The value in each entry indicates which outgoing link is used for request packets directed to that particular destination node (DestNode). A 1 in a given bit position indicates that the request is routed through the corresponding output link. Bit 0, when set to 1, indicates that the request must be accepted by this node.

3.3.6.2 Response Routing Table

Each node contains a routing table for use with responses, with one entry for each of the eight possible destination node IDs. The value in each entry indicates which outgoing link is used for response packets directed to that particular destination node (DestNode). A 1 in a given bit position indicates that the response is routed through the corresponding output link. Bit 0, when set to 1, indicates that the response must be accepted by this node.

3.3.6.3 Broadcast Routing Table

Each node contains a routing table for use with broadcast and probe requests with one entry for each of the eight possible source node IDs. Each entry contains a single bit for each of the outbound links from the node. The packet is forwarded on all links with their corresponding links set to a 1. Bit 0 when set to 1 indicates that the broadcast must be accepted by this node.

Routing Table Node 0–7 Registers**Function 0: Offset 40h, 44h, 48h, 4Ch,
50h, 54h, 58h, 5Ch**

31	20	19	16	15	12	11	8	7	4	3	0
reserved				BCRte	reserved		RPRte	reserved		RQRte	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–20	reserved		R	000h
19–16	BCRte	Broadcast Route	R/W	1h
15–12	reserved		R	0h
11–8	RPRte	Response Route	R/W	1h
7–4	reserved		R	0h
3–0	RQRte	Request Route	R/W	1h

Field Descriptions

Request Route (RQRte)—Bits 3–0. The Request Route field defines the node or link to which a request packet is forwarded. Request packets are routed to only one destination and the table index is based on the destination Node ID.

- Bit [0] = Route to this node
- Bit [1] = Route to Link 0
- Bit [2] = Route to Link 1
- Bit [3] = Route to Link 2

Response Route (RPRte)—Bits 11–8. The Response Route field defines the node or link to which a response packet is forwarded. Response packets are routed to only one destination and the table index is based on the destination Node ID.

- Bit [0] = Route to this node
- Bit [1] = Route to Link 0
- Bit [2] = Route to Link 1
- Bit [3] = Route to Link 2

Broadcast Route (BCRte)—Bits 19–16. The Broadcast Route field defines the node or link(s) to which a broadcast packet is forwarded. Broadcasts may be routed to more than one destination. The Node ID that indexes into the table is the source Node ID.

- Bit [0] = Route to this node
- Bit [1] = Route to Link 0
- Bit [2] = Route to Link 1
- Bit [3] = Route to Link 2

3.3.7 Node ID Register

The Node ID register contains node ID, node count and CPU count information. In general the number of CPUs will be the same as the number of nodes but separate fields are provided in order to allow for nodes which may contain more than one CPU per node.

It is expected that system configuration software will program the Node ID as part of coherent HyperTransport link configuration. Correct system operation depends on an assignment of distinct node ID values not exceeding NodeCnt[2:0]. For example, the Node IDs in a 4-node system must be 0, 1, 2, and 3; an example of an incorrect Node ID assignment in this system is 0, 1, 3, and 4. The Node ID will also be used as the initial APIC ID for the local APIC.

Node ID Register

Function 0: Offset 60h

31	20	19	16	15	14	12	11	10	8	7	6	4	3	2	0
reserved				CpuCnt	reserved	LkNode	reserved	SbNode	reserved	NodeCnt	reserved	NodeId			

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–20	reserved		R	0
19–16	CPUCnt	CPU Count	R/W	0
15	reserved		R	0
14–12	LkNode	Lock Controller Node ID	R/W	0
11	reserved		R	0
10–8	SbNode	HyperTransport I/O Hub Node ID	R/W	0
7	reserved		R	0
6–4	NodeCnt	Node Count	R/W	0
3	reserved		R	0
2–0	NodeID	This Node ID	R/W	

Field Descriptions

Node ID (NodeID)—Bits 2–0. Defines the Node ID of this node. It resets to 0 for the boot strap processor (BSP) and to 7h for all other nodes.

Node Count (NodeCnt)—Bits 6–4. Specifies the number of coherent nodes in the system. Note that the hardware allows only values to be programmed into this field that are consistent with the multiprocessor capabilities of the device, as specified in “Northbridge Capabilities Register” on page 126. This field will not be updated if there is an attempt to write a values that is inconsistent with the specified multiprocessor capabilities.

- 000b = 1 node
- 001b = 2 nodes
- 010b = 3 nodes
- 011b = 4 nodes
- 111b = 8 nodes

HyperTransport I/O Hub Node ID (SbNode)—Bits 10–8. Defines the Node ID of the node that owns the HyperTransport link to the HyperTransport I/O hub.

Lock Controller Node ID (LkNode)—Bits 14–12. Defines the Node ID of the node that contains the Lock Controller. The lock controller node (LkNode) must be the same as the HyperTransport I/O hub node (SbNode).

CPU Count (CPUCnt)—Bits 19–16. Defines the number of CPUs in the system.

0000b = 1 CPU
1111b = 16 CPUs

3.3.8 Unit ID Register

The Unit ID register specifies the Unit ID of each functional unit on the processor. Under normal operation, there is no need for software to change the default Unit ID assignments. This register also contains a pointer to the HyperTransport I/O hub link.

Unit ID Register

Function 0: Offset 64h

31	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
reserved								SbLink	HbUnit	McUnit	C1Unit	C0Unit

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–10	reserved		R	0
9–8	SbLink	HyperTransport I/O Hub Link ID	R/W	00b
7–6	HbUnit	Host Bridge Unit ID	R/W	11b
5–4	McUnit	Memory Controller Unit ID	R/W	10b
3–2	C1Unit	CPU1 Unit ID	R/W	01b
1–0	C0Unit	CPU0 Unit ID	R/W	00b

Field Descriptions

CPU0 Unit ID (C0Unit)—Bits 1–0. Defines the Unit ID of CPU0.

CPU1 Unit ID (C1Unit)—Bits 3–2. Defines the Unit ID of CPU1 (if present).

Memory Controller Unit ID (McUnit)—Bits 5–4. Defines the Unit ID of the memory controller.

Host Bridge Unit ID (HbUnit)—Bits 7–6. Defines the Unit ID of the host bridge. The host bridge is used to bridge between coherent and noncoherent HyperTransport technology domains.

HyperTransport I/O Hub Link ID (SbLink)—Bits 9–8. Defines the link to which the HyperTransport I/O hub is connected. It is only used by the node which owns the HyperTransport I/O hub, as indicated in the Node ID register.

00b = LDT0 (default)
01b = LDT1

- 10b = LDT2
11b = Undefined

3.3.9 HyperTransport™ Transaction Control Register

The HyperTransport Transaction Control register configures the high-level HyperTransport protocols. It can be used to optimize system performance or change HyperTransport technology transaction protocols.

HyperTransport™ Transaction Control Register

Function 0: Offset 68h

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
DisIsocWrMedPri	DisIsocWrHiPri	DisWrLoPri	EnCpuRdHiPri	HiPriBypCnt	MedPriBypCnt	reserved			DsNpReqLmt	SeqIdSrcNodeEn	ApicExtSpur	ApicExtId	ApicExtBrdCst	LintEn	LimitCldtCfg	BufRelPri	ChglSocToOrd	RspPassPW	DisFillP	DisRmtPMemC	DisPMemC	CPUrdRspPassPW	CPUReqPassPW	Cpu1En	DisMTS	DisWrDwP	DisWrBP	DisRdDwP	DisRdBP		

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31	DisIsocWrMedPri	Disable medium priority isochronous writes	R/W	0
30	DisIsocWrHiPri	Disable high priority isochronous writes	R/W	0
29	DisWrLoPri	Disable low priority writes	R/W	0
28	EnCpuRdHiPri	Enable high priority CPU reads	R/W	0
27–26	HiPriBypCnt	High-priority bypass count	R/W	11b
25–24	MedPriBypCnt	Medium-priority bypass count	R/W	11b
23	reserved		R	0
22–21	DsNpReqLmt	Downstream non-posted request limit	R/W	00b
20	SeqIdSrcNodeEn	Sequence ID source node enable	R/W	0
19	ApicExtSpur	APIC extended spurious vector enable	R/W	0
18	ApicExtId	APIC extended ID enable	R/W	0
17	ApicExtBrdCst	APIC extended broadcast enable	R/W	0
16	LintEn	Local interrupt conversion enable	R/W	0
15	LimitCldtCfg	Limit coherent HyperTransport configuration space range	R/W	0
14–13	BufRelPri	Buffer release priority select	R/W	00b
12	ChgIsocToOrd	Change ISOC to Ordered	R/W	0
11	RspPassPW	Response PassPW	R/W	0
10	DisFillP	Disable fill probe	R/W	0
9	DisRmtPMemC	Disable remote probe memory cancel	R/W	0
8	DisPMemC	Disable probe memory cancel	R/W	0
7	CPUrdRspPassPW	CPU Read response PassPW	R/W	0
6	CPUReqPassPW	CPU request PassPW	R/W	0
5	Cpu1En	CPU1 enable	R/W	0
4	DisMTS	Disable memory controller target start	R/W	0

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
3	DisWrDwP	Disable write doubleword probes	R/W	0
2	DisWrBP	Disable write byte probes	R/W	0
1	DisRdDwP	Disable read doubleword probe	R/W	0
0	DisRdBp	Disable read byte probe	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Disable Read Byte Probe (DisRdBp)—Bit 0. This bit determines if probes are issued for CPU-generated RdSized byte (must be 0 for multiprocessor system; recommended to be 1 for uniprocessor system)

- 0 = Probes issued
- 1 = Probes not issued

Disable Read Doubleword Probe (DisRdDwP)—Bit 1. This bit determines if probes are issued for CPU-generated RdSized Doubleword (must be 0 for multiprocessor system; recommended to be 1 for uniprocessor system)

- 0 = Probes issued
- 1 = Probes not issued

Disable Write Byte Probes (DisWrBP)—Bit 2. This bit determines if probes are issued for CPU-generated WrSized byte (must be 0 for multiprocessor system; recommended to be 1 for uniprocessor system)

- 0 = Probes issued
- 1 = Probes not issued

Disable Write Doubleword Probes (DisWrDwP)—Bit 3. This bit determines if probes are issued for CPU-generated WrSized Doubleword (must be 0 for multiprocessor system; recommended to be 1 for uniprocessor system)

- 0 = Probes issued
- 1 = Probes not issued

Disable Memory Controller Target Start (DisMTS)—Bit 4. Disables use of TgtStart. TgtStart is used to improve scheduling of back-to-back ordered transactions by indicating when the first transaction is received and ordered at the memory controller.

- 0 = TgtStart packets are generated
- 1 = TgtStart packets are not generated

CPU1 Enable (Cpu1En)—Bit 5. Enables a second CPU (if present on the node). This bit should only be set for nodes which include two CPUs.

- 0 = Second CPU disabled or not present
- 1 = Second CPU enabled

CPU Request PassPW (CPUReqPassPW)—Bit 6. Allows CPU-generated requests to pass posted writes.

- 0 = CPU requests do not pass posted writes
- 1 = CPU requests pass posted writes

CPU Read Response PassPW (CPURdRspPassPW)—Bit 7. Allows RdResponses to CPU-generated reads to pass posted writes.

- 0 = CPU responses do not pass posted writes
- 1 = CPU responses pass posted writes

Disable Probe Memory Cancel (DisPMemC)—Bit 8. Disables generation of the MemCancel command when a probe hits a dirty cache block. MemCancels are used to attempt to save DRAM and/or HyperTransport technology bandwidth associated with the transfer of stale DRAM data.

- 0 = Probes may generate MemCancels
- 1 = Probes may not generate MemCancels

Disable Remote Probe Memory Cancel (DisRmtPMemC)—Bit 9. Disables generation of the MemCancel command when a probe hits a dirty cache block unless the probed cache is on the same node as the memory controller. MemCancels are used to attempt to save DRAM and/or HyperTransport technology bandwidth associated with the transfer of stale DRAM data.

- 0 = Probes hitting dirty blocks generate memory cancel packets, regardless of the location of the probed cache
- 1 = Only probed caches on the same node as the target memory controller generate memory cancel packets

Disable Fill Probe (DisFillP)—Bit 10. Disables probes for CPU-generated fills (must be 0 for multiprocessor system; recommended to be 1 for uniprocessor system).

- 0 = Probes issued for cache fills
- 1 = Probes not issued for cache fills

Response PassPW (RspPassPW)—Bit 11. Causes the host bridge to set the PassPW bit in all downstream responses.

This technically breaks the PCI ordering rules but it is not expected to be an issue in the downstream direction. Setting this bit improves the latency of upstream requests by allowing the downstream responses to pass posted writes.

- 0 = Downstream response PassPW based on original request
- 1 = Downstream response PassPW set to 1

Change ISOC to Ordered (ChgIsocToOrd)—Bit 12. Causes bit 1 of RdSz/WrSz commands to be treated as an ordered bit in coherent HyperTransport technology, instead of as an isochronous bit. Setting this bit will disable prioritization of isochronous requests, but will enable tracking of ordered commands across coherent HyperTransport links. This bit should only be set if it is desired to optimize the performance of non-ordered peer-to-peer traffic across coherent HyperTransport links, or to disable isochronous prioritization.

- 0 = Bit 1 of coherent HyperTransport technology sized command used for isochronous prioritization

1 = Bit 1 of coherent HyperTransport technology sized command used for ordering

Buffer Release Priority Select (BufRelPri)—Bits 14–13. Selects the number of HyperTransport technology packets sent with a buffer release pending before the buffer release is inserted into the command/data stream of a busy link.

00b = 64 (default)

01b = 16

10b = 8

11b = 2

This should be set to a value of 10 (8 HyperTransport packets) to maximize HyperTransport technology bandwidth.

Limit Coherent HyperTransport Configuration Space Range (LimitCldtCfg)—Bit 15. Limits the extent of the coherent HyperTransport technology configuration space based on the number of nodes in the system. When this bit is set, configuration accesses that normally map to coherent HyperTransport space will be sent to noncoherent HyperTransport links instead, if these accesses attempt to access a non-existent node, as specified through the node count in the Node ID register. This bit should be set by BIOS once coherent HyperTransport fabric initialization is complete. Failure to do so will result in PCI configuration accesses to non-existent nodes being sent into the coherent HyperTransport routing fabric, causing the system to hang.

0 = No coherent HyperTransport configuration space restrictions

1 = Limit coherent HyperTransport configuration space based on number of nodes

Local Interrupt Conversion Enable (LintEn)—Bit 16. Enables the conversion of broadcast ExtInt/NMI HyperTransport technology interrupts to LINT0/1 before delivering to the local APIC. This conversion only takes place if the local APIC is hardware enabled.

0 = ExtInt/NMI interrupts unaffected

1 = ExtInt/NMI broadcast interrupts converted to LINT0/1

APIC Extended Broadcast Enable (ApicExtBrdCst)—Bit 17. Enables extended APIC broadcast functionality.

0 = APIC broadcast is 0Fh

1 = APIC broadcast is FFh

APIC Extended ID Enable (ApicExtId)—Bit 18. Enables extended APIC ID functionality.

0 = APIC ID is 4 bits

1 = APIC ID is 8 bits

APIC Extended Spurious Vector Enable (ApicExtSpur)—Bit 19. Enables extended APIC spurious vector functionality.

0 = Lower 4 bits of spurious vector are read-only 1111b

1 = Lower 4 bits of spurious vector are writable

Sequence ID Source Node Enable (SeqIdSrcNodeEn)—Bit 20. Causes the source node of requests to be used in the SeqID field of downstream noncoherent HyperTransport technology request packets. This may be desirable for some debug HyperTransport packet tracing applications, to match downstream packets with their originating CPU. For normal operation, this bit should be cleared, since this use of SeqID for source node determination may cause problems with packet ordering.

Downstream non-posted request limit (DsNpReqLmt)—Bits 22–21. Sets the number of downstream non-posted requests issued by CPU(s) which may be outstanding on the noncoherent HyperTransport links attached to this node. Non-posted requests from CPU(s) will be throttled such that they do not exceed the programmed value in this field.

00b = No limit
01b = Limited to 1
10b = Limited to 4
11b = Limited to 8

Medium-Priority Bypass Count (MedPriBypCnt)—Bits 25–24. The maximum number of times a medium priority access can pass a low priority access before medium priority mode is disabled for one access.

High-Priority Bypass Count (HiPriBypCnt)—Bits 27–26. The maximum number of times a high priority access can pass a medium or low priority access before high priority mode is disabled for one access.

Enable High Priority CPU Reads (EnCpuRdHiPri)—Bit 28. Enables CPU reads to be treated as high priority. CPU reads are treated as medium priority by default. Setting EnCpuRdHiPri changes their priority to high.

Disable Low Priority Writes (DisWrLoPri)—Bit 29. Disables non-isochronous writes from being treated as low priority. Non-isochronous writes are treated as low priority by default. Setting DisWrLoPri changes their priority to medium.

Disable High Priority Isochronous Writes (DisIsocWrHiPri)—Bit 30. Disables isochronous writes from being treated as high priority. Isochronous writes are treated as high priority by default. Setting DisIsocWrHiPri changes their priority to medium (if DisIsocWrMedPri is clear) or low (if DisIsocWrMedPri is set).

Disable Medium Priority Isochronous Writes (DisIsocWrMedPri)—Bit 31. Disables isochronous writes from being treated as medium priority. Isochronous writes are treated as high priority by default. Setting DisIsocWrMedPri along with DisIsocWrHiPri changes their priority to low.

3.3.10 HyperTransport™ Initialization Control Register

The HyperTransport Initialization Control register controls the routing and request generation that follows device initialization. This register also contains a set of scratchpad read/write bits that are cleared by different initialization conditions and that may be used to distinguish between various

types of initialization events. Note that the Request Disable and Routing Table Disable bits must not be cleared until the routing tables have been initialized.

HyperTransport™ Initialization Control Register

Function 0: Offset 6Ch

31	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
reserved							InitDet	BiosRstDet
								ColdRstDet
							DefLnk	
							ReqDis	
							RouteTbiDis	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–7	reserved		R	0
6	InitDet	INIT Detect	R/W	0
5	BiosRstDet	BIOS Reset Detect	R/W	0
4	ColdRstDet	Cold Reset Detect	R/W	0
3–2	DefLnk	Default Link	R	
1	ReqDis	Request Disable	R/W	
0	RouteTblDis	Routing Table Disable	R/W	1

Field Descriptions

Routing Table Disable (RouteTblDis)—Bit 0. This bit determines whether the routing tables are used or whether default configuration access routing is used. It resets to 1, thereby routing requests to the Configuration Special Register (CSR) block and routing responses based on DefLink. Once the routing tables have been set up this bit should be cleared.

- 0 = Packets are routed according to the routing tables
1 = Packets are routed according to the default link field (DefLnk)

Request Disable (ReqDis)—Bit 1. This bit determines if the node is allowed to generate request packets. It resets to 0 for the BSP and to 1 for all other processors. This bit should be cleared by system initialization firmware once the system has been initialized from the BSP. This bit is set by hardware and cleared by software.

- 0 = Request packets may be generated
1 = Request packets may not be generated

Default Link (DefLnk)—Bits 3–2. This field is used after a reset and before the routing tables are initialized. It is used by hardware to determine which link to route responses to and may be used by software as part of system connectivity discovery.

The default link field is loaded each time an incoming request is received, with the link ID of the link on which the packet arrived. It is read-only from software. It is only used to route packets during initialization, when the Routing Table Disable bit is set to 1, and only one outstanding request is active in the system at a time. During this interval, the value in the Default Link field is used to route responses, so that responses are always sent out on the link from which the last request was received. The register is updated as soon as a request is

received, so reads of this register from the fabric return the link ID of the link on which the read command arrived. Reads from the CPU on the local node cause this field to get loaded with 11b.

00b = LDT0
01b = LDT1
10b = LDT2
11b = CPU on same node

Cold Reset Detect (ColdRstDet)—Bit 4. This bit may be used to distinguish between a cold versus a warm reset event by setting the bit to 1 before an initialization event is generated. This bit is cleared by a cold reset but not by a warm reset.

BIOS Reset Detect (BiosRstDet)—Bit 5. This bit may be used to distinguish between a reset event generated by the BIOS versus a reset event generated for any other reason by setting the bit to 1 before initiating a BIOS-generated reset event. This bit is cleared by a cold reset but not by a warm reset.

INIT Detect (InitDet)—Bit 6. This bit may be used to distinguish between an INIT and a warm/cold reset by setting the bit to 1 before an initialization event is generated. This bit is cleared by a warm or cold reset but not by an INIT.

3.3.11 LDT_i Capabilities Register

These registers define the capabilities of the LDT links. They also contain a capabilities pointer that points to the next item in the linked capabilities list.

LDT0, LDT1, LDT2 Capabilities Registers

Function 0: Offset 80h, A0h, C0h

31	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	18	17	16	15	8	7	0
CapType		DropOnUninit	InbndEocErr	ActAsSlave	reserved	HostHide	ChainSide	DevNum	DblEnded	WarmReset	CapPtr			CapID	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–29	CapType	Capability Type	R	001b
28	DropOnUnInit	Drop on Uninitialized Link	R	0
27	InbndEocErr	Inbound End-of-Chain Error	R	0
26	ActAsSlave	Act As Slave	R	0
25	reserved		R	0
24	HostHide	Host Hide	R	1
23	ChainSide	Chain Side	R	0
22–18	DevNum	Device Number	R	0
17	DblEnded	Double Ended	R	0
16	WarmReset	Warm Reset	R	1

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
15–8	CapPtr	Capability Pointer	R	
7–0	CapID	Capability ID (Always Reads 08h)	R	08h

Field Descriptions

Capability ID (CapID)—Bits 7–0. A capability ID of 08h indicates HyperTransport technology capability.

Capability Pointer (CapPtr)—Bits 15–8. Contains a pointer to the next capability in the list. Depending on the specific HyperTransport link configuration physically present on the processor, this will be either A0h (LDT1), C0h (LDT2), or 00h, if it is the last one.

Warm Reset (WarmReset)—Bit 16. Allows a reset sequence initiated by the HyperTransport technology control register to be either warm or cold. Since resets initiated through the HyperTransport control register are not supported, this field is read-only 1.

Double Ended (DblEnded)—Bit 17. Indicates that there is another bridge at the far end of the noncoherent HyperTransport chain. Since double-hosted chains are not supported, this field is read-only 0.

Device Number (DevNum)—Bits 22–18. The device number of configuration accesses which Northbridge responds to when accessed from the noncoherent HyperTransport technology chain. Since double-hosted chains are not supported, this field is read-only 0.

Chain Side (ChainSide)—Bit 23. This bit indicates which side of the host bridge is being accessed. Since double-hosted chains are not supported, this bit is read-only 0.

Host Hide (HostHide)—Bit 24. This bit causes the memory system configuration space to be inaccessible from the noncoherent HyperTransport technology chain. Since double-hosted chains are not supported, this bit is read-only 1.

Act As Slave (ActAsSlave)—Bit 26. Since this function is not currently implemented, this bit is read-only 0.

Inbound End-of-Chain Error (InbndEocErr)—Bit 27. Since this function is not currently implemented, this bit is read-only 0.

Drop on Uninitialized Link (DropOnUnInit)—Bit 28. Since this function is not currently implemented, this bit is read-only 0.

Capability Type (CapType)—Bits 31–29. The code 001b designates a host interface HyperTransport technology capability.

3.3.12 LDT/Link Control Registers

These registers control LDT link operation and log link errors.

LDT0, LDT1, LDT2 Link Control Registers

Function 0: Offset 84h, A4h, C4h

31	30	28	27	26	24	23	22	20	19	18	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
DwFcOutEn	WidthOut	DwFcInEn	WidthIn	DwFcOut	MaxWidthOut	DwFcIn	MaxWidthIn	reserved	ExtCTL	LdtStopTriEn	IsocEn	reserved	CrcErr	TransOff	RcvOff	InitComplete	LinkFail	CrcForceErr	CrcStartTest	CrcFloodEn	reserved						

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31	DwFcOutEn	Doubleword Flow Control Out Enable	R	0
30–28	WidthOut	Link Width Out	R/W	0
27	DwFcInEn	Doubleword Flow Control In Enable	R	0
26–24	WidthIn	Link Width In	R/W	0
23	DwFcOut	Doubleword Flow Control Out	R	0
22–20	MaxWidthOut	Max Link Width Out	R	001b
19	DwFcIn	Doubleword Flow Control In	R	0
18–16	MaxWidthIn	Max Link Width In	R	001b
15	reserved		R	0
14	ExtCTL	Extended CTL Time	R/W	0
13	LdtStopTriEn	HyperTransport Stop Tristate Enable	R/W	0
12	IsocEn	Isochronous Enable	R	0
11–10	reserved		R	0
9–8	CrcErr	CRC_Error	R/W	0
7	TransOff	Transmitter Off	R/W	0
6	RcvOff	Receiver Off	R/W	0
5	InitComplete	Initialization Complete	R	0
4	LinkFail	Link Failure	R/W	0
3	CrcForceErr	CRC Force Error	R/W	0
2	CrcStartTest	CRC Start Test	R	0
1	CrcFloodEn	CRC Flood Enable	R/W	0
0	reserved		R	0

Field Descriptions

CRC Flood Enable (CrcFloodEn)—Bit 1. If cleared to 0, this bit prevents CRC errors both from generating sync packets and causing the system to come down, and from setting the LinkFail bit. However, CRC checking logic still runs on all lanes enabled by LinkWidthIn, and detected errors still set the CRC Error bits to 1. Its reset value is 0.

- 0 = Do not generate sync packets on CRC error (default)
- 1 = Generate sync packets on CRC error

CRC Start Test (CrcStartTest)—Bit 2. Since this function is not currently implemented, this bit is read-only 0.

CRC Force Error (CrcForceErr)—Bit 3. When this bit is set, a bad CRC is generated on all transmitting lanes as enabled by LinkWidthOut. The covered data is not affected. This bit is readable and writable by software and resets to 0.

- 0 = Do not generate a bad CRC (default)
- 1 = Generate a bad CRC

Link Failure (LinkFail)—Bit 4. The LinkFail bit is set to 1 if a failure has been detected on the link or if the link is not connected. This bit is persistent through warm reset and is cleared to 0 on a cold reset. LinkFail is set to 1 by hardware in the event of a link error that results in a sync flood. It can be cleared by software by writing a 1.

- 0 = No link failure detected
- 1 = Link failure detected

Initialization Complete (InitComplete)—Bit 5. This read-only bit is reset to 0, and set to 1 by hardware when low-level link initialization is successfully complete. If there is no device on the other end of the link, or if that device is unable to properly perform the low-level link initialization protocol, the bit is not set to 1. Software must not attempt to generate any packets across the link until this bit is set to 1. CRC checking in the hardware does not begin until initialization is complete.

- 0 = Initialization not complete
- 1 = Initialization is complete

Receiver Off (RcvOff)—Bit 6. This bit disables the receiver from accepting any further packets. This bit resets to 0, and is set by software writing a 1 to the bit. This bit cannot be cleared by software—a write of 0 to this bit position has no effect. If the HyperTransport link is not connected, then this bit is set by hardware.

- 0 = Receiver on
- 1 = Receiver off

Transmitter Off (TransOff)—Bit 7. This bit provides a mechanism to shut off a link transmitter for power savings or EMI reduction. When set to 1, no output signals toggle on the link. This bit resets to 0, and is set by software writing a 1 to the bit. This bit cannot be cleared by software—a write of 0 to this bit position has no effect. If the HyperTransport link is not connected, then this bit is set by hardware.

- 0 = Transmitter on
- 1 = Transmitter off

CRC_Error (CrcErr)—Bits 9–8. These bits are set to 1 by hardware when a CRC error is detected on an incoming link. Errors are detected and reported on a per byte lane basis where bit 8 corresponds to the least significant byte lane. Two bits are required to cover the maximum HyperTransport link width of 16 bits. Error bits for unimplemented (as specified by MaxWidthIn) or unused byte lanes return 0 when read.

These bits are persistent through warm reset and are reset to 0 at power-on reset. They are readable from software and are individually cleared to 0 by software by writing a 1.

00b = No error

Bit [0] = 1 Error on Byte Lane 0

Bit [1] = 1 Error on Byte Lane 1

Isochronous Enable (IsocEn)—Bit 12. Since this function is not currently implemented, this bit is read-only 0.

HyperTransport Stop Tristate Enable (LdtStopTriEn)—Bit 13. This bit controls whether the transmitter tristates the link during the disconnected state of an LDTSTOP_L sequence. When the bit is set the transmitter tristates the link. When the bit is clear, it continues to drive the link. The bit is cleared by cold reset and persistent through warm reset.

0 = Driven during disconnect of an LDTSTOP_L

1 = Tristated during disconnect of an LDTSTOP_L

Extended CTL Time (ExtCTL)—Bit 14. When this bit is set, CTL will be asserted for 50μs instead of 16 bit times during the link initialization sequence. This bit should be set if extended CTL is required by the device at the other end of the HyperTransport link, as indicated by the Extended CTL Required bit in the Feature Capability register. The bit is cleared by cold reset and persistent through warm reset.

Max Link Width In (MaxWidthIn)—Bits 18–16. This field contains three bits that indicate the physical width of the incoming side of the HyperTransport link implemented by this device. For the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors, this field is set to 000 or 001 to indicate an 8-bit or 16-bit link.

Doubleword Flow Control In (DwFcIn)—Bit 19. This bit is read-only 0 to indicate that this link does not support doubleword flow control.

Max Link Width Out (MaxWidthOut)—Bits 22–20. This field contains three bits that indicate the physical width of the outgoing side of the HyperTransport link implemented by this device. It is read-only. For the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors, this field is set to 000 or 001 to indicate an 8-bit or 16-bit link.

Doubleword Flow Control Out (DwFcOut)—Bit 23. This bit is read-only 0 to indicate that this link does not support doubleword flow control.

Link Width In (WidthIn)—Bits 26–24. This field is similar to the WidthOut field, except that it controls the utilized width of the incoming side of the links implemented by this device.

The hardware will only allow values to be programmed into this field which are consistent with the width capabilities of the link as specified by MaxWidthIn. Attempts to write values inconsistent with the capabilities will result in this field not being updated

Doubleword Flow Control In Enable (DwFcInEn)—Bit 27. Since this function is not currently implemented, this bit is read-only 0.

Link Width Out (WidthOut)—Bits 30–28. This field controls the utilized width (which may not exceed the physical width) of the outgoing side of the HyperTransport link. Software can read/write this field, and it persists through warm reset. After cold reset, this field is initialized by

hardware based on the results of the link width negotiation sequence described in the HyperTransport technology specification. Based on sizing the devices at both ends of the link, software may then write a different value into the register. The chain must pass through warm reset or a LDTSTOP_L disconnect sequence for the new width values to be reflected on the link.

The WidthOut CSR in the link transmitter must match the WidthIn CSR in the link receiver of the device on the other side of the link. The LinkWidthIn and LinkWidthOut registers within the same device are not required to have matching values.

The hardware will only allow values to be programmed into this field which are consistent with the width capabilities of the link as specified by MaxWidthOut. Attempts to write values inconsistent with the capabilities will result in this field not being updated

000b = 8-bit
 001b = 16-bit
 010b = reserved
 011b = 32-bit
 100b = 2-bit
 101b = 4-bit
 110b = reserved
 111b = Link physically not connected

Doubleword Flow Control Out Enable (DwFcOutEn)—Bit 31. Since this function is not currently implemented, this bit is read-only 0.

3.3.13 LDTi Frequency/Revision Registers

These registers control the link frequency, specify the link frequency capabilities, and describe the HyperTransport technology specification level to which the specific link conforms.

LDT0, LDT1, LDT2 Frequency/Revision Registers Function 0: Offset 88h, A8h, C8h

31	16	15	12	11	8	7	5	4	0
LnkFreqCap				Error	Freq	MajRev	MinRev		

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	LnkFreqCap	Link Frequency Capability	R	
15–12	Error	Error	R	0
11–8	Freq	Link Frequency	R/W	0
7–5	MajRev	Major Revision	R	001b
4–0	MinRev	Minor Revision	R	00010b

Field Descriptions

Minor Revision (MinRev)—Bits 4–0. Contains the minor revision of the HyperTransport technology specification to which the device conforms.

Major Revision (MajRev)—Bits 7–5. Contains the major revision of the HyperTransport technology specification level to which the device conforms.

Link Frequency (Freq)—Bits 11–8. Specifies the maximum operating frequency of the link's transmitter clock. The encoding of this field is shown below.

The LinkFreq is cleared by cold reset. Software can write a nonzero value to this register, and that value takes effect on the next warm reset or LDTSTOP_L disconnect sequence.

The hardware will only allow values to be programmed into this field which are consistent with the frequency capabilities of the link as specified by LinkFreqCap. Attempts to write values inconsistent with the capabilities will result in this field not being updated.

It is possible to program this field for a higher frequency than the maximum allowed by the processor. Refer to the processor data sheet for the maximum operating frequency allowed for a given processor implementation.

0000b	= 200 MHz
0001b	= reserved
0010b	= 400 MHz
0011b	= reserved
0100b	= 600 MHz
0101b	= 800 MHz
0110b	= 1000 MHz
0111b	= reserved
1000–1110b	= reserved
1111b	= 100 MHz

If a link is not connected, then this field should not be written and should be left in its default state.

Error (Error)—Bits 15–12. This function is not currently implemented.

Link Frequency Capability (LnkFreqCap)—Bits 31–16. Indicates the clock frequency capabilities of the link. Each bit corresponds to one of the 16 possible link frequency encodings.

While the frequency capabilities of different AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors may vary, the 200-MHz and 100-MHz frequencies are always supported.

3.3.14 LDTi Feature Capability Registers

These registers identify features that are supported by the specific link.

LDT0, LDT1, LDT2 Feature Capability Registers**Function 0: Offset 8Ch, ACh, CCh**

31		9	8	7		4	3	2	1	0
reserved									ExtRegSet	reserved
									ExtCTLRqd	CrcTstMode
									LdtStopMode	IsocMode

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–9	reserved		R	0
8	ExtRegSet	Extended Register Set	R	0
7–4	reserved		R	0
3	ExtCTLRqd	Extended CTL Required	R	0
2	CrcTstMode	CRC Test Mode	R	0
1	LdtStopMode	HyperTransport Stop Mode	R	1
0	IsocMode	Isochronous Flow Control Mode	R	0

Field Descriptions

Isochronous Flow Control Mode (IsocMode)—Bit 0. This is a read-only bit that reflects whether isochronous flow control operation is supported. This bit is set to 0, indicating no support for this feature.

HyperTransport Stop Mode (LdtStopMode)—Bit 1. This is a read-only bit that indicates whether the LDTSTOP_L protocol is supported. This bit is set to 1, indicating support for this feature.

CRC Test Mode (CrcTstMode)—Bit 2. This is a read-only bit that indicates whether CRC test mode is supported. This bit is set to 0, indicating no support for this feature.

Extended CTL Required (ExtCTLRqd)—Bit 3. This is a read-only bit that indicates whether extended CTL is required. This bit is set to 0, indicating that extended CTL is not required.

Extended Register Set (ExtRegSet)—Bit 8. This is a read-only bit that indicates whether the Enumeration Scratchpad, Error Handling and Memory Base/Limit Upper registers are supported. This bit is set to 0, indicating no support for this feature.

3.3.15 LDT_i Buffer Count Registers

These registers specify the number of command and data buffers for each virtual channel available for use by the transmitter at the other end of the specific link. See “XBAR Flow Control Buffers” on page 109 for more information on command and data buffers.

Note: The reset values for each of the LDT_n Buffer Count registers depend on the link connection type (coherent HyperTransport or noncoherent HyperTransport technology). Because hardware attempts to choose optimal settings, this register should not, in general, need to be changed.

LDT0, LDT1, LDT2 Buffer Count Registers

Function 0: Offset 90h, B0h, D0h

31	27	26	24	23	22	20	19	18	16	15	12	11	8	7	4	3	0
reserved	RspD	reserved	PReqD	reserved	ReqD	Probe	Rsp	PReq	Req								

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Coherent HyperTransport Reset	Noncoherent HyperTransport Reset
31–27	reserved		R	0	0
26–24	RspD	Response Data Buffer Count	R/W	100b	010b
23	reserved		R	0	0
22–20	PReqD	Posted Request Data Buffer Count	R/W	001b	101b
19	reserved		R	0	0
18–16	ReqD	Request Data Buffer Count	R/W	011b	001b
15–12	Probe	Probe Buffer Count	R/W	5h	0h
11–8	Rsp	Response Buffer Count	R/W	6h	4h
7–4	PReq	Posted Request Buffer Count	R/W	1h	5h
3–0	Req	Request Buffer Count	R/W	3h	6h

Field Descriptions

Request Buffer Count (Req)—Bits 3–0. Defines the number of request command buffers available for use by the transmitter at the other end of the link. See the register layout for the default reset settings for coherent and noncoherent HyperTransport technology links.

Posted Request Buffer Count (PReq)—Bits 7–4. Defines the number of Posted request command buffers available for use by the transmitter at the other end of the link. See the register layout for the default reset settings for coherent and noncoherent HyperTransport technology links.

Response Buffer Count (Rsp)—Bits 11–8. Defines the number of response buffers available for use by the transmitter at the other end of the link. See the register layout for the default reset settings for coherent and noncoherent HyperTransport technology links.

Probe Buffer Count (Probe)—Bits 15–12. Defines the number of probe buffers available for use by the transmitter at the other end of the link. This field must be 0 for a noncoherent HyperTransport link. See the register layout for the default reset settings for coherent and noncoherent HyperTransport technology links.

Request Data Buffer Count (ReqD)—Bits 18–16. Defines the number of request data buffers available for use by the transmitter at the other end of the link. See the register layout for the default reset settings for coherent and noncoherent HyperTransport technology links.

Posted Request Data Buffer Count (PReqD)—Bits 22–20. Defines the number of posted request data buffers available for use by the transmitter at the other end of the link. See the register

layout for the default reset settings for coherent and noncoherent HyperTransport technology links.

Response Data Buffer Count (RspD)—Bits 26–24. Defines the number of response data buffers available for use by the transmitter at the other end of the link. See the register layout for the default reset settings for coherent and noncoherent HyperTransport technology links.

3.3.16 LDT/ Bus Number Registers

If the specific link (LDT0, LDT1, or LDT2) is noncoherent HyperTransport technology, this register specifies the bus numbers downstream (behind) the host bridge. If the link is coherent HyperTransport technology, this register has no meaning.

LDT0, LDT1, LDT2 Bus Number Registers

Function 0: Offset 94h, B4h, D4h

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0	
reserved				SubBusNum		SecBusNum		PriBusNum

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	reserved		R	0
23–16	SubBusNum	Subordinate Bus Number	R/W	0
15–8	SecBusNum	Secondary Bus Number	R/W	0
7–0	PriBusNum	Primary Bus Number	R	0

Field Descriptions

Primary Bus Number (PriBusNum)—Bits 7–0. Defines the primary bus number. Because the primary bus is the coherent HyperTransport technology fabric, this field always reads 0.

Secondary Bus Number (SecBusNum)—Bits 15–8. Defines the secondary bus number.

The Secondary Bus Number register is used to record the bus number of the bus segment to which the secondary interface of the host bridge is connected. Configuration software programs the value in this register. If this link contains the HyperTransport I/O hub, the secondary bus number must be programmed to 0.

Subordinate Bus Number (SubBusNum)—Bits 23–16. Defines the subordinate bus number.

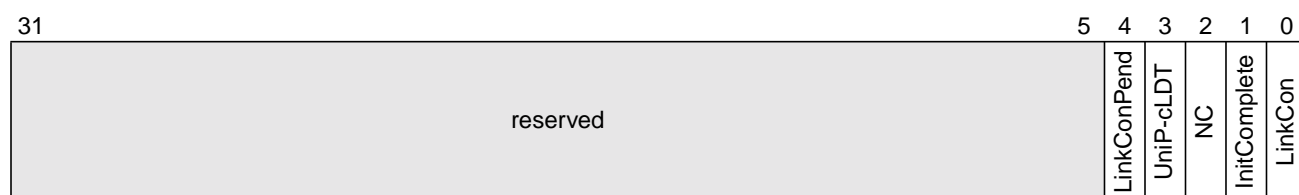
The Subordinate Bus Number register is used to record the bus number of the highest numbered bus segment that is behind (or subordinate to) the host bridge. Configuration software programs the value in this register.

3.3.17 LDT/ Type Registers

These registers designate the type of HyperTransport link attached to the specific link. The bits are set by hardware after link initialization.

LDT0, LDT1, LDT2 Type Registers

Function 0: Offset 98h, B8h, D8h



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–5	reserved		R	0
4	LinkConPend	Link Connect Pending	R	
3	UniP-cLDT	UniP-cLDT	R	
2	NC	Non Coherent	R	
1	InitComplete	Initialization Complete	R	
0	LinkCon	Link Connected	R	

Field Descriptions

Link Connected (LinkCon)—Bit 0. Indicates that the link is connected. It is valid once the LinkConPend bit is clear.

- 0 = Not connected
- 1 = Connected

Initialization Complete (InitComplete)—Bit 1. Set to 1 to indicate that the initialization of the link has completed. (It is a duplicate of Bit 5 in HyperTransport Link Control). The NC and UniP-cLDT bits are invalid until link initialization is complete.

- 0 = Initialization not complete
- 1 = Initialization is complete.

Non Coherent (NC)—Bit 2. Defines the link type (coherent versus noncoherent).

- 0 = Coherent HyperTransport technology
- 1 = Noncoherent HyperTransport technology

UniP-cLDT (UniP-cLDT)—Bit 3. Further qualifies the NC link type bit. A 1 indicates that this link is a uniprocessor coherent HyperTransport link connected to an external Northbridge.

- 0 = Normal coherent HyperTransport or noncoherent HyperTransport link
- 1 = Uniprocessor coherent HyperTransport link to external Northbridge

Link Connect Pending (LinkConPend)—Bit 4. Qualifies the LinkCon bit and is set to 1 when hardware is attempting to determine whether a link is connected or not.

- 0 = Link connection determination complete
- 1 = Link connection still being determined

3.4 Function 1—Address Map

The address map defines the address spaces assigned to DRAM, memory-mapped I/O, PCI I/O, and configuration accesses and also specifies destination information for each to facilitate routing of each access to the appropriate target. Table 3 lists each Function 1 configuration register.

Table 3. Function 1 Configuration Registers

Offset	Register Name				Reset	Access	Description
00h	Device ID		Vendor ID (AMD)		1101_1022h	RO	page 29
04h	Status ¹		Command		0000_0000h	RO	
08h	Base Class Code	Subclass Code	Program Interface	Revision ID	0600_0000h	RO	page 55
0Ch	BIST	Header Type	Latency Timer	Cache Line Size	0080_0000	RO	page 56
10h	Base Address 0				0000_0000h	RO	
14h	Base Address 1				0000_0000h	RO	
18h	Base Address 2				0000_0000h	RO	
1Ch	Base Address 3				0000_0000h	RO	
20h	Base Address 4				0000_0000h	RO	
24h	Base Address 5				0000_0000h	RO	
28h	Card Bus CIS Pointer				0000_0000h	RO	
2Ch	Sub-System ID		Sub-System Vendor ID		0000_0000h	RO	
30h	ROM Base Address				0000_0000h	RO	
34h	Capabilities				0000_0000h	RO	
38h	reserved				0000_0000h	RO	
3Ch	Max Latency	Min GNT	Int Pin	Int Line	0000_0000h	RO	
40h	DRAM Base 0					RW	page 57
44h	DRAM Limit 0					RW	page 58
48h	DRAM Base 1					RW	page 57
4Ch	DRAM Limit 1					RW	page 58
50h	DRAM Base 2					RW	page 57
54h	DRAM Limit 2					RW	page 58
58h	DRAM Base 3					RW	page 57
5Ch	DRAM Limit 3					RW	page 58
Notes:							
1. The unimplemented registers in the standard PCI configuration space are implemented as read-only and return 0 if read.							
2. Reads and writes to unimplemented registers in the extended PCI configuration space will result in unpredictable behavior.							

Table 3. Function 1 Configuration Registers (Continued)

Offset	Register Name	Reset	Access	Description
60h	DRAM Base 4		RW	page 57
64h	DRAM Limit 4		RW	page 58
68h	DRAM Base 5		RW	page 57
6Ch	DRAM Limit 5		RW	page 58
70h	DRAM Base 6		RW	page 57
74h	DRAM Limit 6		RW	page 58
78h	DRAM Base 7		RW	page 57
7Ch	DRAM Limit 7		RW	page 58
80h	Memory-Mapped I/O Base 0		RW	page 60
84h	Memory-Mapped I/O Limit 0		RW	page 61
88h	Memory-Mapped I/O Base 1		RW	page 60
8Ch	Memory-Mapped I/O Limit 1		RW	page 61
90h	Memory-Mapped I/O Base 2		RW	page 60
94h	Memory-Mapped I/O Limit 2		RW	page 61
98h	Memory-Mapped I/O Base 3		RW	page 60
9Ch	Memory-Mapped I/O Limit 3		RW	page 61
A0h	Memory-Mapped I/O Base 4		RW	page 60
A4h	Memory-Mapped I/O Limit 4		RW	page 61
A8h	Memory-Mapped I/O Base 5		RW	page 60
ACH	Memory-Mapped I/O Limit 5		RW	page 61
B0h	Memory-Mapped I/O Base 6		RW	page 60
B4h	Memory-Mapped I/O Limit 6		RW	page 61
B8h	Memory-Mapped I/O Base 7		RW	page 60
BCh	Memory-Mapped I/O Limit 7		RW	page 61
C0h	PCI I/O Base 0		RW	page 62
C4h	PCI I/O Limit 0		RW	page 63
C8h	PCI I/O Base 1		RW	page 62
CCh	PCI I/O Limit 1		RW	page 63
D0h	PCI I/O Base 2		RW	page 62
D4h	PCI I/O Limit 2		RW	page 63
D8h	PCI I/O Base 3		RW	page 62
DCh	PCI I/O Limit 3		RW	page 63

Notes:

1. The unimplemented registers in the standard PCI configuration space are implemented as read-only and return 0 if read.
2. Reads and writes to unimplemented registers in the extended PCI configuration space will result in unpredictable behavior.

Table 3. Function 1 Configuration Registers (Continued)

Offset	Register Name	Reset	Access	Description
E0h	Configuration Base and Limit 0		RW	page 64
E4h	Configuration Base and Limit 1		RW	page 64
E8h	Configuration Base and Limit 2		RW	page 64
ECh	Configuration Base and Limit 3		RW	page 64
Notes: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The unimplemented registers in the standard PCI configuration space are implemented as read-only and return 0 if read. 2. Reads and writes to unimplemented registers in the extended PCI configuration space will result in unpredictable behavior. 				

3.4.1 Device/Vendor ID Register

This register specifies the device and vendor IDs for the Function 1 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Device/Vendor ID Register

Function 1: Offset 00h

31	16	15	0
Device ID		Vendor ID	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	DevID	Device ID	R	1101h
15–0	VenID	Vendor ID	R	1022h

Field Descriptions

Vendor ID (VenID)—Bits 15–0. This read-only value is defined as 1022h for AMD.

Device ID (DevID)—Bits 31–16. This read-only value is defined as 1101h for the HyperTransport technology configuration function.

3.4.2 Class Code/Revision ID Register

This register specifies the class code and revision for the Function 1 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Class Code/Revision ID Register

Function 1: Offset 08h

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
Base Class Code			Subclass Code		Programming Interface		Revision ID

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	BCC	Base Class Code	R	06h
23–16	SCC	Subclass Code	R	00h
15–8	PI	Programming Interface	R	00h
7–0	RevID	Revision ID	R	00h

Field Descriptions

Revision ID (RevID)—Bits 7–0.

Programming Interface (PI)—Bits 15–8. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

Sub Class Code (SCC)—Bits 23–16. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

Base Class Code (BCC)—Bits 31–24. This read-only value is defined as 06h for a host bridge device.

3.4.3 Header Type Register

This register specifies the header type for the Function 1 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Header Type Register

Function 1: Offset 0Ch

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0	
BIST				HType		LatTimer		CLS

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	BIST	BIST	R	00h
23–16	HType	Header Type	R	80h
15–8	LatTimer	Latency Timer	R	00h
7–0	CLS	Cache Line Size	R	00h

Field Descriptions

CacheLineSize (CLS)—Bits 7–0. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

LatencyTimer (LatTimer)—Bits 15–8. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

HeaderType (HType)—Bits 23–16. This read-only value is defined as 80h to indicate that multiple functions are present in the configuration header and that the header layout corresponds to a device header as opposed to a bridge header. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

BIST—Bits 31–24. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

3.4.4 DRAM Address Map

These registers define sections of the memory address map for which accesses should be routed to DRAM. DRAM regions must not overlap each other. For addresses within the specified range of a base/limit pair, requests are routed to the memory controller on the node specified by the destination Node ID.

Addresses are considered to be within the defined range if they are greater than or equal to the base and less than or equal to the limit. For the purposes of this comparison, the lower (unspecified) bits of the base are assumed to be 0s and the lower (unspecified) bits of the limit are assumed to be 1s.

An address that maps to both DRAM and memory-mapped I/O will be routed to MMIO.

Programming of the DRAM address maps must be consistent with the Top Of Memory and Memory Type Range registers (see Chapter 12, “Processor Configuration Registers”). In particular, accesses from the CPU can only hit in the DRAM address maps if the corresponding CPU memory type is of type DRAM. For accesses from I/O devices, the lookup is based on address only.

Each base/limit set of DRAM address maps is associated with a particular Node ID (see “Node ID Register” on page 34). The DRAM Base/Limit 0 registers specify the DRAM attached to node 0. Similarly, DRAM on nodes 1–7 is described by base/limit registers 1–7. Note that the destination NodeId field must still be written to ensure correct operation.

3.4.4.1 DRAM Base *i* Registers

DRAM Base 0–7 Registers Function 1: Offset 40h, 48h, 50h, 58h, 60h, 68h, 70h, 78h

31	16	15	11	10	8	7	2	1	0
DRAMBase <i>i</i>					reserved		IntlvEn	reserved	
								WE	RE

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	DRAMBase <i>i</i>	DRAM Base Address <i>i</i> Bits 39–24	R/W	X
15–11	reserved		R	0
10–8	IntlvEn	Interleave Enable	R/W	X
7–2	reserved		R	0
1	WE	Write Enable	R/W	0
0	RE	Read Enable	R/W	0

“X” in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Read Enable (RE)—Bit 0. This bit enables reads to the defined address space.

0 = Disabled

1 = Enabled

Write Enable (WE)—Bit 1. This bit enables writes to the defined address space.

0 = Disabled

1 = Enabled

Interleave Enable (IntlvEn)—Bits 10–8. This field enables interleaving on a 4-Kbyte boundary between memory on different nodes. The bits are encoded as follows:

000b = No interleave

001b = Interleave on A[12] (2 nodes)

010b = reserved

011b = Interleave on A[12] and A[13] (4 nodes)

100b = reserved

101b = reserved

110b = reserved

111b = Interleave on A[12] and A[13] and A[14] (8 nodes)

DRAM Base Address *i* Bits 39–24 (DRAMBase_{*i*})—Bits 31–16. This field defines the upper address bits of a 40-bit address that defines the start of DRAM region *i* (where *i* = 0, 1, . . . 7).

3.4.4.2 DRAM Limit *i* Registers

DRAM Limit 0–7 Registers Function 1: Offset 44h, 4Ch, 54h, 5Ch, 64h, 6Ch, 74h, 7Ch

31	16	15	11	10	8	7	3	2	0
DRAMLimit <i>i</i>			reserved		IntlvSel		reserved		DstNode

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	DRAMLimit _{<i>i</i>}	DRAM Limit Address <i>i</i> (39–24)	R/W	X
15–11	reserved		R	0
10–8	IntlvSel	Interleave Select	R/W	X
7–3	reserved		R	0
2–0	DstNode	Destination Node ID	R/W	X

"X" in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Destination Node ID (DstNode)—Bits 2–0. This field specifies the node that a packet is sent to if it is within the address range. This field must correspond with the number of the register pair.

The bits are encoded as follows:

000b = Node 0 (register set 0)

001b = Node 1 (register set 1)

...

111b = Node 7 (register set 7)

Interleave Select (IntlvSel)—Bits 10–8. This field specifies the values of address bits A[14:12] to use with the Interleave Enable field (IntlvEn[2:0]) to determine which 4-Kbyte blocks are routed to this region (See Figure 1).

IntlvSel[0] corresponds to A[12]

IntlvSel[1] corresponds to A[13]

IntlvSel[2] corresponds to A[14]

DRAM Limit Address i (39–24) (DRAMLimit $_i$)—Bits 31–16. This field defines the upper address bits of a 40-bit address that defines the end of DRAM region n (where $i = 0, 1, \dots, 7$).

<p>Node 0</p> <p>IntlvEn[2:0] = 011</p> <p>IntlvSel[2:0] = 000</p> <p>A[13:12] = 00</p>	<p>Node 1</p> <p>IntlvEn[2:0] = 011</p> <p>IntlvSel[2:0] = 001</p> <p>A[13:12] = 01</p>
<p>Node 2</p> <p>IntlvEn[2:0] = 011</p> <p>IntlvSel[2:0] = 010</p> <p>A[13:12] = 10</p>	<p>Node 3</p> <p>IntlvEn[2:0] = 011</p> <p>IntlvSel[2:0] = 011</p> <p>A[13:12] = 11</p>

Figure 1. Interleave Example (IntlvEn Relation to IntlvSel)

3.4.5 Memory-Mapped I/O Address Map Registers

These registers define sections of the memory address map for which accesses should be routed to memory-mapped I/O. MMIO regions must not overlap each other. For addresses within the specified range of a base/limit pair, requests are routed to the noncoherent HyperTransport link specified by the destination Node ID and destination Link ID.

Addresses are considered to be within the defined range if they are greater than or equal to the base and less than or equal to the limit. For the purposes of this comparison, the lower (unspecified) bits of the base are assumed to be 0s and the lower (unspecified) bits of the limit are assumed to be 1s.

An address that maps to both DRAM and memory-mapped I/O is routed to MMIO.

Programming of the MMIO address maps must be consistent with the Top Of Memory and Memory Type Range registers (see Chapter 12, “Processor Configuration Registers”). In particular, accesses from the CPU can only hit in the MMIO address maps if the corresponding CPU memory type is of type IO. For accesses from I/O devices, the lookup is based on address only.

3.4.5.1 Memory-Mapped I/O Base *i* Registers

Memory-Mapped I/O Base 0–7 Registers

Function 1: Offset 80h, 88h, 90h, 98h,
A0h, A8h, B0h, B8h

31		8	7	4	3	2	1	0
MMIOBase <i>i</i>								<div>reserved</div> <div>Lock</div> <div>CpuDis</div> <div>WE</div> <div>RE</div>

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–8	MMIOBase <i>i</i>	Memory-Mapped I/O Base Address <i>i</i> (39–16)	R/W	X
7–4	reserved		R	0
3	Lock	Lock	R/W	X
2	CpuDis	CPU Disable	R/W	X
1	WE	Write Enable	R/W	0
0	RE	Read Enable	R/W	0

“X” in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Read Enable (RE)—Bit 0. This bit enables reads to the defined address space.

0 = Disabled
1 = Enabled

Write Enable (WE)—Bit 1. This bit enables writes to the defined address space.

0 = Disabled
1 = Enabled

CPU Disable (CpuDis)—Bit 2. When set, this bit causes this MMIO range to apply to I/O requests only, not to CPU requests.

Lock (Lock)—Bit 3. Setting this bit, along with either the WE or RE bits, makes the base/limit registers read-only.

Memory-Mapped I/O Base Address *i* (39–16) (MMIOBase*i*)—Bit 31–8. This field defines the upper address bits of a 40-bit address that defines the start of memory-mapped I/O region *n* (where *n* = 0, 1, . . . 7).

3.4.5.2 Memory-Mapped I/O Limit *i* Registers

Memory-Mapped I/O Limit *i* Registers

Function 1: Offset 84h, 8Ch, 94h, 9Ch,
A4h, ACh, B4h, BCh



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–8	MMIOLimit <i>i</i>	Memory-Mapped I/O Limit Address <i>i</i>	R/W	X
7	NP	Non-Posted	R/W	X
6	reserved		R	0
5–4	DstLink	Destination Link ID	R/W	X
3	reserved		R	0
2–0	DstNode	Destination Node ID	R/W	X

"X" in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Destination Node ID (DstNode)—Bits 2–0. This field specifies the node that a packet is sent to if it is within the address range. The bits are encoded as follows:

000b = Node 0
001b = Node 1
...
111b = Node 7

Destination Link ID (DstLink)—Bits 5–4. This field specifies the HyperTransport link number to send the packet to once the packet reaches the destination node.

00b = Link 0
01b = Link 1
10b = Link 2
11b = reserved

Non-Posted (NP)—Bit 7. When set to 1, this bit forces CPU writes to this memory-mapped I/O region to be non-posted. This may be used to force writes to be non-posted for MMIO regions which map to the legacy ISA/LPC bus, or in conjunction with the DsNpReqLmt field in the HyperTransport Transaction Control register (page 36) in order to allow downstream CPU requests to be counted and thereby limited to a specified number. This latter use of the NP bit may be used to avoid loop deadlock in systems that implement a reflection region in an I/O device that reflects downstream accesses back upstream. See the *HyperTransport™ I/O Link Specification* summary of deadlock scenarios for more information.

0 = CPU writes may be posted
1 = CPU writes must be non-posted

Memory-Mapped I/O Limit Address i (39–16) (MMIOLimit i)—Bits 31–8. This field defines the upper address bits of a 40-bit address that defines the end of memory-mapped I/O region n (where $n = 0, 1, \dots, 7$).

3.4.6 PCI I/O Address Map Registers

These registers define sections of the PCI I/O address map for which accesses should be routed to each noncoherent HyperTransport technology chain. PCI I/O regions must not overlap each other. For PCI I/O addresses within the specified range of a base/limit pair, requests are routed to the noncoherent HyperTransport link specified by the destination Node ID and destination Link ID.

Addresses are considered to be within the defined range if they are greater than or equal to the base and less than or equal to the limit. For the purposes of this comparison, the lower (unspecified) bits of the base are assumed to be 0s and the lower (unspecified) bits of the limit are assumed to be 1s.

PCI I/O accesses are generated from x86 IN/OUT instructions.

3.4.6.1 PCI I/O Base i Registers

PCI I/O Base 0–3 Registers

Function 1: Offset C0h, C8h, D0h, D8h

31	25	24	12	11	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
reserved			PCIIOBase <i>i</i>			reserved			IE	VE	reserved	WE	RE

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–25	reserved		R	0
24–12	PCIIOBase i	PCI I/O Base Address i	R/W	X
11–6	reserved		R	0
5	IE	ISA Enable	R/W	X
4	VE	VGA Enable	R/W	X
3–2	reserved		R	0
1	WE	Write Enable	R/W	0
0	RE	Read Enable	R/W	0

"X" in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Read Enable (RE)—Bit 0. This bit enables reads to the defined address space.

0 = Disabled
1 = Enabled

Write Enable (WE)—Bit 1. This bit enables writes to the defined address space.

0 = Disabled
1 = Enabled

VGA Enable (VE)—Bit 4. Forces addresses in the first 64 Kbytes of PCI I/O space and where A[9:0] is in the range 3B0–3BBh or 3C0–3DFh to match against this base/limit pair independent of the base/limit addresses (see the *PCI-to-PCI Bridge Architecture* specification for a description of this function). A WE or RE bit must also be set to enable this feature.

The MMIO 000A_0000h to 000B_FFFFh matching function normally associated with the VGA enable bit in PCI is NOT included in the VE bit. To enable this behavior, an MMIO register pair must be used.

ISA Enable (IE)—Bit 5. Blocks addresses in the first 64 Kbytes of PCI I/O space and in the last 768 bytes in each 1-Kbyte block from matching against this base/limit pair (see the *PCI-to-PCI Bridge Architecture* specification for a description of this function). A WE or RE bit must also be set to enable this feature.

PCI I/O Base Address *i* (PCIIOBase*i*)—Bits 24–12. This field defines the start of PCI I/O region *n* (where *n* = 0, 1, 2,3).

3.4.6.2 PCI I/O Limit *i* Registers

PCI I/O Limit 0–3 Registers

Function 1: Offset C4h, CCh, D4h, DCh

31	25	24	12	11	6	5	4	3	2	0
reserved					reserved			DstLink	reserved	DstNode

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–25	reserved		R	0
24–12	PCIIOLimit <i>i</i>	PCI I/O Limit Address <i>i</i>	R/W	X
11–6	reserved		R	0
5–4	DstLink	Destination Link ID	R/W	X
3	reserved		R	0
2–0	DstNode	Destination Node ID	R/W	X

“X” in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Destination Node ID (DstNode)—Bits 2–0. This field specifies the node to which a packet is sent if it is within the address range. The bits are encoded as follows:

000b = Node 0
001b = Node 1
...
111b = Node 7

Destination Link ID (DstLink)—Bits 5–4. This field specifies the link to send the packet to once the packet has reached the destination node.

00b = Link 0
01b = Link 1
10b = Link 2
11b = reserved

PCI I/O Limit Address i (PCI I/O Limit $_i$)—Bits 24–12. This field defines the end of PCI I/O region

3.4.7 Configuration Map Registers

These registers define sections of the configuration bus number map for which configuration accesses should be routed to each noncoherent HyperTransport technology chain. Configuration regions must not overlap each other. For configuration accesses with bus numbers within the specified range of a base/limit pair, requests are routed to the noncoherent HyperTransport link specified by the destination Node ID and destination Link ID.

Bus numbers are considered to be within the defined range if they are greater than or equal to the base and less than or equal to the limit.

In device number compare mode (see DevCmpEn bit), the base/limit fields are interpreted as device number base/limit values for Bus 0 configuration accesses. This may be used to support configurations where Bus 0 is split between two independent noncoherent HyperTransport technology chains.

Configuration accesses to Bus 0, device 24–31, are assumed to be targeting coherent HyperTransport technology devices and are routed to the corresponding coherent HyperTransport node irrespective of the values in these registers (see Chapter 3, “Memory System Configuration”). Note that the range of device numbers affected may be modified based on the number of nodes present (see “HyperTransport™ Transaction Control Register” on page 36).

Config Base and Limit 0–3 Registers

Function 1: Offset E0h, E4h, E8h, ECh

31	24	23	16	15	10	9	8	7	6	4	3	2	1	0		
BusNumLimit <i>i</i>				BusNumBase <i>i</i>				reserved		DstLink	reserved	DstNode	reserved	DevCmpEn	WE	RE

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	BusNumLimit $_i$	Bus Number Limit i	R/W	X
23–16	BusNumBase $_i$	Bus Number Base i	R/W	X
15–10	reserved		R	0
9–8	DstLink	Destination Link ID	R/W	X
7	reserved		R	0
6–4	DstNode	Destination Node ID	R/W	X
3	reserved		R	0
2	DevCmpEn	Device Number Compare Enable	R/W	X
1	WE	Write Enable	R/W	0

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
0	RE	Read Enable	R/W	0

"X" in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Read Enable (RE)—Bit 0. This bit enables reads to the defined address space.

0 = Disabled
1 = Enabled

Write Enable (WE)—Bit 1. This bit enables writes to the defined address space.

0 = Disabled
1 = Enabled

Device Number Compare Enable (DevCmpEn)—Bit 2. When this bit is set, this register defines a device number range rather than a bus number range. To match, configuration cycles must be to bus number 0 and have device numbers between BusNumBase and BusNumLimit. This is used to enable multiple noncoherent HyperTransport chains to be configured as Bus 0.

Destination Node ID (DstNode)—Bits 6–4. This field specifies the node that a packet is sent to if it is within the address range. The bits are encoded as follows:

000b = Node 0
001b = Node 1
...
111b = Node 7

Destination Link ID (DstLink)—Bits 9–8. This field specifies the link to send the packet to once it has reached the destination node and unit.

00b = Link 0
01b = Link 1
10b = Link 2
11b = reserved

Bus Number Base i (BusNumBase i)—Bits 23–16. This field defines the lowest bus number in configuration region i (where $i = 0, 1, 2, 3$).

Bus Number Limit i (BusNumLimit i)—Bits 31–24. This bit field defines the highest bus number in configuration region i (where $i = 0, 1, 2, 3$).

3.5 Function 2—DRAM Controller

Function 2 configuration registers are listed in Table 4.

Table 4. Function 2 Configuration Registers

Offset	Register Name				Reset	Access	Description
00h	Device ID		Vendor ID (AMD)		1102_1022h	RO	page 67
04h	Status ¹		Command		0000_0000h	RO	
08h	Base Class Code	Subclass Code	Program Interface	Revision ID	0600_0000h	RO	page 68
0Ch	BIST	Header Type	Latency Timer	Cache Line Size	0080_0000h	RO	page 68
10h	Base Address 0				0000_0000h	RO	
14h	Base Address 1				0000_0000h	RO	
18h	Base Address 2				0000_0000h	RO	
1Ch	Base Address 3				0000_0000h	RO	
20h	Base Address 4				0000_0000h	RO	
24h	Base Address 5				0000_0000h	RO	
28h	Card Bus CIS Pointer				0000_0000h	RO	
2Ch	Sub-System ID		Sub-System Vendor ID		0000_0000h	RO	
30h	ROM Base Address				0000_0000h	RO	
34h	Capabilities				0000_0000h	RO	
38h	reserved				0000_0000h	RO	
3Ch	Max Latency	Min GNT	Int Pin	Int Line	0000_0000h	RO	
40h	DRAM CS Base 0				0000_0000h	RW	page 69
44h	DRAM CS Base 1				0000_0000h	RW	page 69
48h	DRAM CS Base 2				0000_0000h	RW	page 69
4Ch	DRAM CS Base 3				0000_0000h	RW	page 69
50h	DRAM CS Base 4				0000_0000h	RW	page 69
54h	DRAM CS Base 5				0000_0000h	RW	page 69
58h	DRAM CS Base 6				0000_0000h	RW	page 69
5Ch	DRAM CS Base 7				0000_0000h	RW	page 69
60h	DRAM CS Mask 0				0000_0000h	RW	page 72
64h	DRAM CS Mask 1				0000_0000h	RW	page 72
68h	DRAM CS Mask 2				0000_0000h	RW	page 72
6Ch	DRAM CS Mask 3				0000_0000h	RW	page 72
Notes:							
1. The unimplemented registers in the standard PCI configuration space are implemented as read-only and return 0 if read.							
2. Reads and writes to unimplemented registers in the extended PCI configuration space will result in unpredictable behavior.							

Table 4. Function 2 Configuration Registers (Continued)

Offset	Register Name	Reset	Access	Description
70h	DRAM CS Mask 4	0000_0000h	RW	page 72
74h	DRAM CS Mask 5	0000_0000h	RW	page 72
78h	DRAM CS Mask 6	0000_0000h	RW	page 72
7Ch	DRAM CS Mask 7	0000_0000h	RW	page 72
80h	DRAM Bank Address Mapping	0000_0000h	RW	page 72
88h	DRAM Timing Low	0000_0000h	RW	page 76
8Ch	DRAM Timing High	0000_0000h	RW	page 78
90h	DRAM Config Low	0000_0000h	RW	page 80
94h	DRAM Config High	0000_0000h	RW	page 83
98h	DRAM Delay Line	0000_0000h	RW	page 86
Notes: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The unimplemented registers in the standard PCI configuration space are implemented as read-only and return 0 if read. 2. Reads and writes to unimplemented registers in the extended PCI configuration space will result in unpredictable behavior. 				

3.5.1 Device/Vendor ID Register

This register specifies the device and vendor IDs for the Function 2 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Device/Vendor ID Register

Function 2: Offset 00h

31	16	15	0
DevID		VenID	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	DevID	Device ID	R	1102h
15–0	VenID	Vendor ID	R	1022h

Field Descriptions

Vendor ID (VenID)—Bits 15–0. This read-only value is defined as 1022h for AMD.

Device ID (DevID)—Bits 31–16. This read-only value is defined as 1102h for the HyperTransport technology configuration function.

3.5.2 Class Code/Revision ID Register

This register specifies the class code and revision for the Function 2 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Class Code/Revision ID Register

Function 2: Offset 08h

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0	
BCC				SCC		PI		RevID

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	BCC	Base Class Code	R	06h
23–16	SCC	Subclass Code	R	00h
15–8	PI	Programming Interface	R	00h
7–0	RevID	Revision ID	R	00h

Field Descriptions

Revision ID (RevID)—Bits 7–0.

Programming Interface (PI)—Bits 15–8. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

Sub Class Code (SCC)—Bits 23–16. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

Base Class Code (BCC)—Bits 31–24. This read-only value is defined as 06h for a host bridge device.

3.5.3 Header Type Register

This register specifies the header type for the Function 2 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Header Type Register

Function 2: Offset 0Ch

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0	
BIST				HType		LatTimer		CLS

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	BIST	BIST	R	00h
23–16	HType	Header Type	R	80h
15–8	LatTimer	Latency Timer	R	00h
7–0	CLS	Cache Line Size	R	00h

Field Descriptions

CacheLineSize (CLS)—Bits 7–0. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

LatencyTimer (LatTimer)—Bits 15–8. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

HeaderType (Htype)—Bits 23–16. This read-only value is defined as 80h to indicate that multiple functions are present in the configuration header and that the header layout corresponds to a device header as opposed to a bridge header. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

BIST—Bits 31–24. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

3.5.4 DRAM CS Base Address Registers

These registers are used to decode an address into a selected DRAM chip select. These 32-bit registers are programmed based on data in the Serial Presence Detect (SPD) ROM on each DIMM. The smallest DIMM supported is 32 Mbyte (using single-sided 64Mbyte x16 SDRAMs). The largest DIMM supported is 2 Gbyte (using double-sided 512Mbyte x4 SDRAMs).

***Note:** Function 1 address map registers define to which node to route a DRAM request. Function 2 address map registers define what DRAM chip select to access on that particular node.*

Each Chip Select (CS) has a BaseAddrReg and a BaseMaskReg. The base address can point to a 32-Mbyte block of memory. The address mask is used to qualify the base address, such that it points to a larger hole in memory for chip select ranges greater than 32 Mbytes.

Address mask is also defined for lower address bits. A BIOS algorithm can use lower order address bits to determine the chip select bank. The hardware supports the use of lower order address bits to create the chip select, if the memory system is composed of a single type and size DRAM, and if the number of chip selects is a power of two. The result of using the lower order address bits to create the chip select is memory interleaving. It allows that a switch between DIMMs occurs before a page conflict within a DIMM occurs. The one cycle turnaround saves having to close/open new pages.

It is important that the BIOS assign the largest DIMM chip-select range to the lowest address. As addresses increase, the chip select size remains constant or decreases. This is necessary to keep DIMM chip select banks on aligned address boundaries as chip-select banks with different depths are added. The masking scheme does not work otherwise.

BaseAddrReg[n] always refers to CS[n]. So, if only DIMM2 and DIMM3 are occupied and DIMM2 is connected to CS[5:4] and DIMM3 is connected to CS[7:6], then bit 0 of BaseAddrReg[7-4] is set to 1 to enable these chip-select banks.

The chip selects are formed as follows, using the field names from the DRAM CS Base Address Registers and DRAM CS Mask Registers, where

“,” means “concatenate”

“/” means “not”

“==” means “equals”

“&” means “and”

ChipSelect[i] is true if:

```
BE[i] &
( { InputAddr[35:34], (InputAddr[33:25] & /AddrMask[i][33:25]),
  ( InputAddr[19:13] & /AddrMask[i][19:13]) } ==
  { BaseAddr[i][35:34], (BaseAddr[i][33:25] & /AddrMask[i][33:25]),
    ( BaseAddr[i][19:13] & /AddrMask[i][19:13]) } ) );
```

There are eight DRAM CS Base Address registers. DRAM CS Base 0 reflects the base address for chip select 0, and so on. DIMM0 is associated with CS0 and CS1, DIMM1 is associated with CS2 and CS3, and so on.

Table 5. DRAM CS Base Address Registers

Register	Chip Selects	Memory Module D[127:64] ¹	Memory Module D[63:0]
DRAM CS Base 0	CS0	Extended DIMM0	DIMM0
DRAM CS Base 1	CS1	Extended DIMM0	DIMM0
DRAM CS Base 2	CS2	Extended DIMM1	DIMM1
DRAM CS Base 3	CS3	Extended DIMM1	DIMM1
DRAM CS Base 4	CS4	Extended DIMM2	DIMM2
DRAM CS Base 5	CS5	Extended DIMM2	DIMM2
DRAM CS Base 6	CS6	Extended DIMM3	DIMM3
DRAM CS Base 7	CS7	Extended DIMM3	DIMM3
Notes: 1. This column only applies to the AMD Opteron™ processor configured for a 128-bit DRAM interface.			

DRAM CS Base Address Registers

**Function 2: Offset 40h, 44h, 48h, 4Ch,
50h, 54h, 58h, 5Ch**

31	21 20	16 15	9 8	1 0
BaseAddrHi	reserved	BaseAddrLo	reserved	BE

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–21	BaseAddrHi	Base Address (35–25)	R/W	0
20–16	reserved		R	0
15–9	BaseAddrLo	Base Address (19–13)	R/W	0
8–1	reserved		R	0
0	CSBE	Chip-Select Bank Enable	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Chip-Select Bank Enable (CSBE)—Bit 0. This bit enables access to the defined address space.

0 = Disabled

1 = Enabled

Base Address (19–13) (BaseAddrLo)—Bits 15–9. This field is only used in optimized case (interleaving mode) when all chip select banks are the same size and type and the number of chip selects is a power of two. In this case, the memory is interleaved differently to avoid page conflicts.

If contiguous addresses from address 0 are accessed, the controller would first access a row (e.g., row 0) in bank 0, device 0. As the address increases, the controller would access different columns in the following order:

row 0/bank 0/device 0 and then
row 0/bank 1/device 0 and then
row 0/bank 2/device 0 and then
row 0/bank 3/device 0 and then
row 0/bank 0/device 1.

The difference is that a new device is accessed before accessing a new row in the old device, delaying or avoiding a page conflict.

Thus, a device no longer has a contiguous region of memory assigned to it. Memory is interleaved between either pairs of DIMMs, or groups of four DIMM banks or a single large group of eight DIMM banks.

Base Address (35–25) (BaseAddrHi)—Bits 31–21. This field defines the top 11 address bits of a 40-bit address that define the memory address space. These bits decode 32-Mbyte blocks of memory. In the non-interleaving mode (BaseAddrLo has a value of 0), physical addresses map to DRAM addresses in the following way:

Col—Lowest order physical address bits

Bank—Second lowest order physical address bits (page miss is better than page conflict)

Row—Second highest order physical address bits (page conflict before accessing new chip)

Device (CS)—Highest order physical address bits

In the unoptimized case, contiguous addresses from 0 would first access a row (e.g., row 0) in bank 0, device 0. As the address increases, the next access is to a different column and eventually a different device, e.g.:

row 0/bank 0/device 0 and then
row 0/bank 1/device 0 and then
row 0/bank 2/device 0 and then
row 0/bank 3/device 0 and then
row 1/bank 0/device 0

Memory controller accesses all rows and banks in a single device before accessing a new device.

3.5.5 DRAM CS Mask Registers

The purpose of this register is to exclude the corresponding address bits from the comparison with the DRAM Base address register.

DRAM CS Mask Registers Function 2: Offset 60h, 64h, 68h, 6Ch, 70h, 74h, 78h, 7Ch

31	30	29	21	20	16	15	9	8	0
reserved	AddrMaskHi				reserved	AddrMaskLo		reserved	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–30	reserved		R	0
29–21	AddrMaskHi	Address Mask (33–25)	R/W	0
20–16	reserved		R	0
15–9	AddrMaskLo	Address Mask (19–13)	R/W	0
8–0	reserved		R	0

Field Descriptions

Address Mask (19–13) (AddrMaskLo)—Bits 15–9. This field specifies the addresses to be excluded for the optimized case described in the Base Address bit definitions.

Address Mask (33–25) (AddrMaskHi)—Bits 29–21. This field defines the top Address Mask bits. The bits with an address mask of 1 are excluded from the address comparison. This allows the memory block size to be larger than 32 Mbytes. If Address Mask bit 25 is set to 1, the memory block size is 64 Mbytes.

3.5.6 DRAM Bank Address Mapping Register

The DIMM may have one or two chip-select banks, but it always has support for up to two chip-select banks. The address mode covers the whole DIMM, regardless of whether there is one or two chip-select banks.

DRAM CS Address Mapping Register

Function 2: Offset 80h

31	15	14	12	11	10	8	7	6	4	3	2	0
reserved			CS7/6		reserved	CS5/4		reserved	CS3/2		reserved	CS1/0

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–15	reserved		R	0
14–12	CS7/6	CS7/6	R/W	0
11	reserved		R	0

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
10–8	CS5/4	CS5/4	R/W	0
7	reserved		R	0
6–4	CS3/2	CS3/2	R/W	0
3	reserved		R	0
2–0	CS1/0	CS1/0	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Chip Select 1/0 (CS1/0)—Bits 2–0. This field specifies the memory module size. The bits are encoded as shown in CS7/6.

Chip Select 3/2 (CS3/2)—Bits 6–4. This field specifies the memory module size. The bits are encoded as shown in CS7/6.

Chip Select 5/4 (CS5/4)—Bits 10–8. This field specifies the memory module size. The bits are encoded as shown in CS7/6.

Chip Select 7/6 (CS7/6)—Bits 14–12. This field specifies the memory module size. This field is programmed the same regardless of whether the DRAM interface is 64-bits or 128-bits wide. This field describes the type of DIMMs that compose the chip select.

Chip Select Bank Address Mode Encoding:

000b = 32 Mbyte (Rows =12 & Col=8)

001b = 64 Mbyte (Rows =12 & Col=9)

010b = 128 Mbyte (Rows =13 & Col=9) | (Rows=12 & Col=10)

011b = 256 Mbyte (Rows =13 & Col=10) | (Rows=12 & Col=11)

100b = 512 Mbyte (Rows =13 & Col=11) | (Rows=14 & Col=10)

101b = 1 Gbyte (Rows =14 & Col=11) | (Rows=13 & Col=12)

110b = 2 Gbyte (Rows =14 & Col=12)

111b = reserved

Table 6 on page 74 shows the address line mapping for the unoptimized case of processors with a 64-bit DRAM interface. The optimized case substitutes addresses as follows.

For optimized memory interleaving (as specified in the DRAM base registers, function 2, starting at offset 40) when all DIMM chip-select ranges are the same size and type and the number of chip selects is a power of two, the following is valid for 64-bit interfaces:

- 32-Mbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[27:25] in place of InputAddr[15:13] when AddrMask[15:13]=BaseAddr[15:13]=000b and AddrMask[27:25]=BaseAddr[27:25]=111b.
- 64-Mbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[28:26] in place of InputAddr[16:14] when AddrMask[16:14]=BaseAddr[16:14]=000b and AddrMask[28:26]=BaseAddr[28:26]=111b.

- 128-Mbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[29:27] in place of InputAddr[16:14] when AddrMask[16:14]=BaseAddr[16:14]=000b and AddrMask[29:27]=BaseAddr[29:27]=111b.
- 256-Mbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[30:28] in place of InputAddr[17:15] when AddrMask[17:15]=BaseAddr[17:15]=000b and AddrMask[30:28]=BaseAddr[30:28]=111b.
- 512-Mbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[31:29] in place of InputAddr[17:15] when AddrMask[17:15]=BaseAddr[17:15]=000b and AddrMask[31:29]=BaseAddr[31:29]=111b.
- 1-Gbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[32:30] in place of InputAddr[18:16] when AddrMask[18:16]=BaseAddr[18:16]=000b and AddrMask[32:30]=BaseAddr[32:30]=111b.
- 2-Gbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[33:31] in place of InputAddr[18:16] when AddrMask[18:16]=BaseAddr[18:16]=000b and AddrMask[33:31]=BaseAddr[33:31]=111b.

The following is valid for 128-bit interfaces:

- 2*32-Mbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[28:26] in place of InputAddr[16:14] when AddrMask[16:14]=BaseAddr[16:14]=000b and AddrMask[28:26]=BaseAddr[28:26]=111b.
- 2*64-Mbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[29:27] in place of InputAddr[17:15] when AddrMask[17:15]=BaseAddr[17:15]=000b and AddrMask[29:27]=BaseAddr[29:27]=111b.
- 2*128-Mbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[30:28] in place of InputAddr[17:15] when AddrMask[17:15]=BaseAddr[17:15]=000b and AddrMask[30:28]=BaseAddr[30:28]=111b.
- 2*256-Mbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[31:29] in place of InputAddr[18:16] when AddrMask[18:16]=BaseAddr[18:16]=000b and AddrMask[31:29]=BaseAddr[31:29]=111b.
- 2*512-Mbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[32:30] in place of InputAddr[18:16] when AddrMask[18:16]=BaseAddr[18:16]=000b and AddrMask[32:30]=BaseAddr[32:30]=111b.
- 2*1-Gbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[33:31] in place of InputAddr[19:17] when AddrMask[19:17]=BaseAddr[19:17]=000b and AddrMask[33:31]=BaseAddr[33:31]=111b.
- 2*2-Gbyte chip selects: mux InputAddr[34:32] in place of InputAddr[19:17] when AddrMask[19:17]=BaseAddr[19:17]=000b and AddrMask[34:32]=BaseAddr[34:32]=111b.

Note: Only the LSB is replaced if there are two DIMM chip-select banks, the two LSBs are replaced if there are four DIMM chip-select banks, and all three bits are replaced if there are eight DIMM chip-select banks.

Table 6. Mapping Host Address Lines to Memory Address Lines (64-Bit Interface)

64-Bit Interface to Memory

Reg 80h CSn[2:0]		B1	B0	A1 3	A1 2	A1 1	A1 0	A9	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0
64Mb x16, 32MB	Row Col	12 12	11 11	X X	X X	18 X	17 PC	16 X	15 X	14 10	13 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4	19 3

Table 6. Mapping Host Address Lines to Memory Address Lines (64-Bit Interface)
64-Bit Interface to Memory

Reg 80h CSn[2:0]		B1	B0	A1 3	A1 2	A1 1	A1 0	A9	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0
128Mb x16/ 64Mb x8, 64MB	Row Col	12 12	13 13	X X	X X	18 X	17 PC	16 X	15 11	14 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4	19 3
64Mb x4/ 256Mb x16/ 128Mb x8, 128MB	Row Col	12 12	13 13	X X	26 X	18 X	17 PC	16 26	15 11	14 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4	19 3
128Mb x4/ 512Mb x16/ 256Mb x8, 256MB	Row Col	14 14	13 13	X X	27 X	18 27	17 PC	16 12	15 11	26 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4	19 3
256Mb x4/ 512Mb x8/ 1Gb x16, 512MB	Row Col	14 14	13 13	28 X	27 X	18 28	17 PC	16 12	15 11	26 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4	19 3
512Mb x4/ 1Gb x8, 1024MB	Row Col	14 14	15 15	28 X	27 28	18 13	17 PC	16 12	29 11	26 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4	19 3
1Gb x4	Row Col	14 14	15 15	28 X	27 30	18 13	17 PC	16 12	29 11	26 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4	19 3

Table 7. Mapping Host Address Lines to Memory Address Lines (128-Bit Interface)
128-Bit Interface to Memory

Reg 80h CSn[2:0]		B1	B0	A1 3	A1 2	A1 1	A1 0	A9	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0
64Mb x16, 32MB	Row Col	13 13	12 12	X X	X X	19 X	18 PC	17 X	16 X	15 11	14 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4
128Mb x16/ 64Mb x8, 64MB	Row Col	13 13	14 14	X X	X X	19 X	18 PC	17 X	16 12	15 11	26 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4

Table 7. Mapping Host Address Lines to Memory Address Lines (128-Bit Interface)
128-Bit Interface to Memory

Reg 80h CSn[2:0]		B1	B0	A1 3	A1 2	A1 1	A1 0	A9	A8	A7	A6	A5	A4	A3	A2	A1	A0
64Mb x4/ 256Mb x16/ 128Mb x8, 128MB	Row Col	13 13	14 14	X X	27 X	19 X	18 PC	17 27	16 12	15 11	26 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4
128Mb x4/ 512Mb x16/ 256Mb x8, 256MB	Row Col	15 15	14 14	X X	28 X	19 28	18 PC	17 13	16 12	27 11	26 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4
256Mb x4/ 512Mb x8/ 1Gb x16, 512MB	Row Col	15 15	14 14	29 X	28 X	19 29	18 PC	17 13	16 12	27 11	26 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4
512Mb x4/ 1Gb x8, 1024MB	Row Col	15 15	16 16	29 X	28 29	19 14	18 PC	17 13	30 12	27 11	26 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4
1Gb x4	Row Col	15 15	16 16	29 X	28 31	19 14	18 PC	17 13	30 12	27 11	26 10	25 9	24 8	23 7	22 6	21 5	20 4

3.5.7 DRAM Timing Low Register

This register contains timing parameters specified in a DRAM data sheet.

DRAM Timing Low Register
Function 2: Offset 88h

31	29	28	27	26	24	23	20	19	18	16	15	14	12	11	8	7	4	3	2	0
reserved	Twr	reserved	Trp	Tras	reserved	Trrd	reserved	Trcd	Trfc	Trc	reserved	Tcl								

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–29	reserved		R	0
28	Twr	Write Recovery Time	R/W	0
27	reserved		R	0
26–24	Trp	Row Precharge Time	R/W	0
23–20	Tras	Minimum RAS# Active Time	R/W	0
19	reserved		R	0
18–16	Trrd	Active-to-active (RAS#-to-RAS#) Delay	R/W	0

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
15	reserved		R	0
14–12	Trcd	RAS#-active to CAS#-read/write Delay	R/W	0
11–8	Trfc	Row Refresh Cycle Time	R/W	0
7–4	Trc	Row Cycle Time	R/W	0
3	reserved		R	0
2–0	Tcl	CAS# Latency	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

CAS# Latency (Tcl)—Bits 2–0. Specifies the CAS#-to-read-data-valid.

000b = reserved
 001b = CL=2
 010b = CL=3
 011b = reserved
 100b = reserved
 101b = CL=2.5
 110b = reserved
 111b = reserved

Row Cycle Time (Trc)—Bits 7–4. RAS#-active to RAS#-active or auto refresh of the same bank. Typically ~70 ns. These bits are encoded as follows (only 7–13 are valid; all others are reserved):

0000b = 7 bus clocks
 0001b = 8 bus clocks
 ...
 1110b = 21 bus clocks
 1111b = 22 bus clocks

Row Refresh Cycle Time (Trfc)—Bits 11–8. Auto-refresh-active to RAS#-active or RAS# auto-refresh.

0000b = 9 bus clocks
 0001b = 10 bus clocks
 ...
 1110b = 23 bus clocks
 1111b = 24 bus clocks

RAS#-active to CAS#-read/write Delay (Trcd)—Bits 14–12. Specifies the RAS#-active to CAS#-read/write delay to the same bank.

000b = reserved
 001b = reserved
 010b = 2 bus clocks
 011b = 3 bus clocks
 100b = 4 bus clocks

101b = 5 bus clocks
110b = 6 bus clocks
111b = reserved

Active-to-active (RAS#-to-RAS#) Delay (Trrd)—Bits 18–16. Specifies the active-to-active delay (RAS#-to-RAS#) of different banks.

000b = reserved
001b = reserved
010b = 2 bus clocks
011b = 3 bus clocks
100b = 4 bus clocks
101b = reserved
110b = reserved
111b = reserved

Minimum RAS# Active Time (Tras)—Bits 23–20. Specifies the minimum RAS# active time.

0000b to 0100b = reserved
0101b = 5 bus clocks
...
1111b = 15 bus clocks

Row Precharge Time (Trp)—Bits 26–24. Specifies the Row precharge Time. (Precharge-to-Active or Auto-Refresh of the same bank.

000b = reserved
001b = reserved
010b = 2 bus clocks
011b = 3 bus clocks
100b = 4 bus clocks
101b = 5 bus clocks
110b = 6 bus clocks
111b = reserved

Write Recovery Time (Twr)—Bit 28. Measures when the last write datum is safely registered by the DRAM. It measures from the last data to precharge (writes can go back-to-back).

0 = 2 bus clocks
1 = 3 bus clocks

3.5.8 DRAM Timing High Register

This register contains the normal timing parameters specified in a DRAM data sheet.

DRAM Timing High Register

Function 2: Offset 8Ch

31	23	22	20	19	13	12	8	7	6	4	3	1	0
reserved				Twcl	reserved			Tref	reserved	Trwf	reserved	Twtr	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–23	reserved		R	0
22–20	Twcl	Write CAS Latency	R/W	0
19–13	reserved		R	0
12–8	Tref	Refresh Rate	R/W	0
7	reserved		R	0
6–4	Trwt	Read-to-Write Delay	R/W	0
3–1	reserved		R	0
0	Twtr	Write-to-Read Delay	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Write-to-Read Delay (Twtr)—Bit 0. This bit specifies the write-to-read delay. It is measured from the rising edge following the last non-masked data strobe to the rising edge of the next Read command.

0 = 1 bus Clocks

1 = 2 bus Clocks

Read-to-Write Delay (Trwt)—Bits 6–4. Specifies the read-to-write delay.

This is not a DRAM-specified timing parameter, but must be considered due to routing latencies on the clock forwarded bus. It is counted from the first address bus slot that was not associated with part of the read burst. These bits are encoded as follows:

000b = 1 bus clocks

001b = 2 bus clocks

010b = 3 bus clocks

011b = 4 bus clocks

100b = 5 bus clocks

101b = 6 bus clocks

110b = reserved

111b = reserved

Refresh Rate (Tref)—Bits 12–8. Specifies the refresh rate of the DIMM requiring the most frequent refresh. These bits are encoded as follows:

00000b = 100 MHz 4K rows

00001b = 133 MHz 4K rows

00010b = 166 MHz 4K rows

00011b = 200 MHz 4K rows

01000b = 100 MHz 8K/16K rows
01001b = 133 MHz 8K/16K rows
01010b = 166 MHz 8K/16K rows
01011b = 200 MHz 8K/16K rows

Write CAS Latency (Twcl)—Bits 22–20. Specifies the write CAS latency. Unbuffered DIMMs should be programmed as 0 and registered DIMMs as 1. These bits are encoded as follows:

000b = 1 Mem clock after CAS#
001b = 2 Mem clocks after CAS#

3.5.9 DRAM Configuration Registers

The following registers contain all the bits to configure the DRAMs for proper operation.

3.5.9.1 DRAM Config Low Register

This register controls drive strength, refresh, and initialization.

DRAM Config Low Register

Function 2: Offset 90h

31	28	27	25	24	23	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	4	3	2	1	0
reserved	BypMax	DisInRcvrs	x4DIMMS	32ByteEn	UnBuffDimm	DimmEcEn	128/64	RdWrQByp	SR_S	ESR	MemClrStatus	DramEnable	reserved	DramInit	reserved	DisDqsHys	QFC_EN	D_DRV	DLL_Dis					

10

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–28	reserved		R	0
27–25	BypMax	Bypass Max	R/W	0
24	DisInRcvrs	Disable DRAM Receivers	R/W	0
23–20	x4DIMMS	x4DIMMS	R/W	0
19	32ByteEn	Enable 32-Byte Granularity	R/W	0
18	UnBuffDimm	Unbuffered DIMMs	R/W	0
17	DimmEcEn	DIMM ECC Enable	R/W	0
16	128/64	128-Bit/64-Bit	R/W	0
15–14	RdWrQByp	Read/Write Queue Bypass Count	R/W	0
13	SR_S	Self-Refresh Status	R/W	0
12	ESR	Exit Self-Refresh	R/W	0
11	MemClrStatus	Memory Clear Status	R	0
10	DramEnable	DRAM Enable	R	0
9	reserved	SBZ	R	0
8	DramInit	DramInit	R/W	0
7–4	reserved		R	0
3	DisDqsHys	Disable DQS Hysteresis	R/W	0

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
2	QFC_EN	QFC_EN Enable	R/W	0
1	D_DRV	D_DRV	R/W	0
0	DLL_Dis	DLL Disable	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

DLL Disable (DLL_Dis)—Bit 0. Disables the Digital Locked Loop that controls relationship between the memory Data and the memory strobes (DQS).

0 = Enabled (default)
1 = Disabled

D_DRV (D_DRV)—Bit 1. Controls the drive strength of the DRAM control lines. This bit is required by the DRAM in the Extended Memory Register Set (EMRS) command. It applies to all outputs.

0 = Normal Drive (default)
1 = Weak Drive (beware)

QFC_EN Enable (QFC_EN)—Bit 2. Causes the corresponding enable bit to be set in the (external) DRAM extended mode register. The QFC signal is an optional DRAM output control used to isolate module loads (DIMMs) from the system memory bus by means of FET switches when the given module is not being accessed.

0 = Disabled (default)
1 = Enabled

Disable DQS Hysteresis (DisDqsHys)—Bit 3. Disables DQS input filtering when set to 1. It is required that BIOS (1) set this bit high prior to initializing DRAM (through bit 8, DramInit) and (2), in a subsequent access to this register, clear this bit; the write that clears this bit may be concurrent with the write that sets DramInit or it may be prior to the write that sets DramInit.

DramInit (DramInit)—Bit 8. Set by the BIOS to initiate the DRAM initialization sequence. It is cleared by the DRAM controller when the initialization completes. Bits 3–0 and TcI must be properly programmed before (or at same time as) the bit is set to 1. See bit 3 of this register, DisDqsHys, for BIOS programming requirements related to DramInit.

0 = Initialization done or not started (default)

DRAM Enable (DramEn)—Bit 10. When set, this bit indicates that DRAM is enabled. This bit is set by hardware at the completion of DRAM initialization or on an exit from self refresh. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

Memory Clear Status (MemClrStatus)—Bit 11. When set, this bit indicates that the memory clear function is complete. It is only cleared by reset. BIOS should not write or read the DRAM until this bit is set by hardware. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

Exit Self-Refresh (ESR)—Bit 12. BIOS sets either the DramInit bit (bit 8) or the Exit Self-Refresh bit (bit 12) after reset, depending on whether the part is coming out of Suspend-to-RAM mode or not (bit 12 is set when coming out of suspend-to-RAM mode). After this bit is set, it reads back as a 1 until the process of exiting self refresh is complete, at which point it reads back as a 0.

Self-Refresh Status (SR_S)—Bit 13. When asserted, indicates that the DRAMs are in self-refresh mode. When it deasserts, indicates that the memory controller is ready to process requests again. This bit may be polled until the DRAMs exit the self-refresh state. This bit cannot accurately reflect that the DRAM is in self-refresh when resuming from suspend-to-RAM (STR) because the processor loses power in the STR state. Therefore, this bit must be set, along with bit 12, to properly exit suspend-to-RAM mode.

0 = Normal operation (default)

1 = Self-refresh mode active

Read/Write Queue Bypass Count (RdWrQByp)—Bits 15–14. Specifies the number of times the oldest operation in the DCI read/write queue can be bypassed before the arbiter is overridden and the oldest operation is chosen.

00b = 2

01b = 4

10b = 8

11b = 16

128-Bit/64-Bit (128/64)—Bit 16. Indicates a 128-bit interface to DRAM.

0 = 64-bit interface to DRAM

1 = 128-bit interface to DRAM

DIMM ECC Enable (DimmEcEn)—Bit 17. When DimmEcEn is set to 1, it indicates that all enabled DIMMs have support for ECC check bit storage.

0 = Some DIMMs do not have ECC bits

1 = All DIMMs have ECC bits

Unbuffered DIMMs (UnBuffDimm)—Bit 18. When asserted, the DRAM controller is only connected to unbuffered DIMMs. In this case the controller drives address/control 3/4 MEMCLK earlier than the clock to account for the address flight time. If deasserted, the controller drives address/control 1/2 MEMCLK earlier than clock.

0 = Buffered DIMMs

1 = Unbuffered DIMMs

Enable 32-Byte Granularity (32ByteEn)—Bit 19. When asserted, indicates that the burst counter should be chosen to optimize data bus bandwidth for 32-byte accesses (except when the bus width is 128 bits. This bit, along with bit 16, produces the following truth table.

Bit 19	Bit 16	
0	0	8-beat bursts (64 bytes)

Bit 19	Bit 16	
0	1	4-beat bursts (64 bytes)
1	0	4-beat bursts (32 bytes)
1	1	4-beat bursts (64 bytes)

x4DIMMS[3:0]—Bits 23–20. Indicates whether each of the four DIMMs are x4 or not.

0 = DIMM is not x4

1 = x4 DIMM present

Disable DRAM Receivers (DisInRcvrs)—Bit 24. When the memory controller is disabled, this bit is asserted and all DRAM receivers are disabled. The inputs/bidirectional DRAM pins can be left unconnected.

0 = Receivers enabled

1 = Receivers disabled

Bypass Max (BypMax)—Bits 27–25. Specifies the number of times the oldest entry in DCQ can be bypassed in arbitration before the arbiter's choice is vetoed. When programmed to all 0s, this feature is disabled, and the choice of the arbiter is always respected.

3.5.9.2 DRAM Config High Register

DRAM Config High Register

Function 2: Offset 94h

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	20	19	18	16	15	12	11	8	7	4	3	0
reser ved	MC3_EN	MC2_EN	MC1_EN	MC0_EN	MCR	reser ved			MemClk	DCC_EN	ILD_Lmt		reserved		RdPreamble		reserved		AsyncLat		

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–30	reserved		R	0
29	MC3_EN	Memory Clock 3 Enabled	R/W	0
28	MC2_EN	Memory Clock 2 Enabled	R/W	0
27	MC1_EN	Memory Clock 1 Enabled	R/W	0
26	MC0_EN	Memory Clock 0 Enabled	R/W	0
25	MCR	Memory Clock Ratio Valid	R/W	0
24–23	reserved		R	0
22–20	MemClk	DRAM MEMCLK Frequency	R/W	0
19	DCC_EN	Dynamic Idle Cycle Center Enable	R/W	0
18–16	ILD_Lmt	Idle Cycle Limit	R/W	0
15–12	reserved		R	0
11–8	RdPreamble	Read Preamble	R/W	0
7–4	reserved		R	0
3–0	AsyncLat	Maximum Asynchronous Latency	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Maximum Asynchronous Latency (AsyncLat)—Bits 3–0. This field should be loaded with a 4-bit value equal to the maximum asynchronous latency in the DRAM read round-trip loop.

0000b = 0 ns

...

1111b = 15 ns

Read Preamble (RdPreamble)—Bits 11–8. The time prior to the max-read DQS-return when the DQS receiver should be turned on. This is specified in units of 0.5 ns. The controller needs to know when to enable its DQS receiver in anticipation of the DRAM DQS driver turning on for a read. The controller will disable its DQS receiver until the read preamble time and then enable its DQS receiver while the DRAM asserts DQS.

0000b = 2.0 ns

0001b = 2.5 ns

0010b = 3.0 ns

0011b = 3.5 ns

0100b = 4.0 ns

0101b = 4.5 ns

0110b = 5.0 ns

0111b = 5.5 ns

1000b = 6.0 ns

1001b = 6.5 ns

1010b = 7.0 ns

1011b = 7.5 ns

1100b = 8.0 ns

1101b = 8.5 ns

1110b = 9.0 ns

1111b = 9.5 ns

Idle Cycle Limit (ILD_lmt)—Bits 18–16. Specifies the number of MemCLKs before forcibly closing (precharging) an open page. If DCC_EN (Function2, Offset 94h) has a value of 0, the static counters are loaded with the ILD_lmt and decremented each clock. If DCC_EN (Function2, Offset 94h) has a value of 1, the dynamic counters are loaded with the ILD_lmt and modified as follows:

Increment—When a Page Miss (PM) page hits on an invalid entry in the Page Table. The presumption is that in the past, that page table entry was occupied by the very same page that has a Page Miss. Had the old page been kept open longer, it would have been a Page Hit. Increment the Idle Cycle Limit count to increase the probability of getting a future Page Hit.

Decrement—When a Page Conflict (PC) arrives and hits on an idle entry (obviously an open page). This Page Conflict can be avoided if the open page is closed earlier. Decrement the Idle Cycle Limit count to increase the probability of avoiding a future Page Conflict.

000b = 0 cycles

001b = 4 cycles

010b = 8 cycles
 011b = 16 cycles
 100b = 32 cycles
 101b = 64 cycles
 110b = 128 cycles
 111b = 256 cycles

Dynamic Idle Cycle Center Enable (DCC_EN)—Bit 19. When set to 1, indicates that each entry in the page table dynamically adjusts the idle cycle limit based on Page Conflict/Page Miss (PC/PM) traffic.

DRAM MEMCLK Frequency (MemClk)—Bits 22–20. Specifies the DRAM MEMCLK frequency in MHz. It is possible to program this field for a higher frequency than the maximum allowed by the processor. Refer to the processor data sheet for the maximum operating frequency allowed for a given processor implementation.

000b = 100 MHz
 001b = reserved
 010b = 133 MHz
 011b = reserved
 100b = reserved
 101b = 166 MHz
 110b = reserved
 111b = 200 MHz

Memory Clock Ratio Valid (MCR)—Bit 25. Indicates to the controller to drive MEMCLK. The following fields need to be programmed before this bit is set: MemClk (Function2, Offset 94h), MCi_EN (Function2, Offset 94h), UnBuffDimm (Function2, Offset 90h), and 128/64 (Function2, Offset 90h). This bit is also set after the Base Address registers have been configured. This allows the system to know if a CS is occupied before clocks start toggling. (The intent is to not drive clocks to unoccupied slots to reduce the potential for EMI.)

0 = Disable MemCLKs (default)
 1 = Enable MemCLKs

Memory Clock 0 Enabled (MC0_EN)—Bit 26. The MC0_EN bit is set to 1 to enable operation of the MEMCLK signals to DIMM0.

0 = Disabled (default)
 1 = Enabled

Memory Clock 1 Enabled (MC1_EN)—Bit 27. The MC1_EN bit is set to 1 to enable operation of the MEMCLK signals to DIMM1.

0 = Disabled (default)
 1 = Enabled

Memory Clock 2 Enabled (MC2_EN)—Bit 28. The MC2_EN bit is set to 1 to enable operation of the MEMCLK signals to DIMM2.

0 = Disabled (default)

1 = Enabled

Memory Clock 3 Enabled (MC3_EN)—Bit 29. The MC3_EN bit is set to 1 to enable operation of the MEMCLK signals to DIMM3.

0 = Disabled (default)

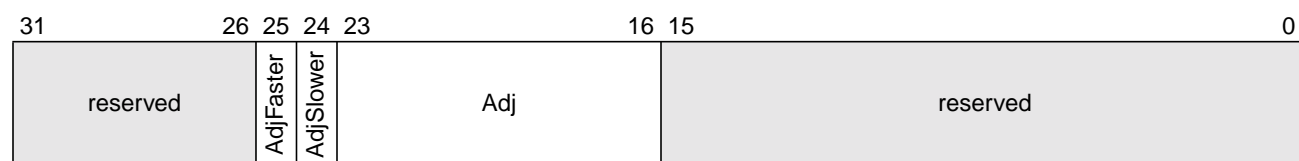
1 = Enabled

3.5.10 DRAM Delay Line Register

The DRAM Delay Line register is used to adjust the skew of the input DQS strobe relative to the data.

DRAM Delay Line Register

Function 2: Offset 98h



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–26	reserved		R	0
25	AdjFaster	Adjust Faster	R/W	0
24	AdjSlower	Adjust Slower	R/W	0
23–16	Adj	Delay Line Adjust	R/W	0
15–0	reserved		R	0

Field Descriptions

Delay Line Adjust (Adj)—Bits 23–16. Adjusts the DLL derived PDL delay by one or more delay stages in either the faster or slower direction.

Adjust Slower (AdjSlower)—Bit 24. Indicates that the value in Adj is used to increase the PDL delay.

Adjust Faster (AdjFaster)—Bit 25. Indicates that the value in Adj is used to decrease the PDL delay.

.

3.6 Function 3—Miscellaneous Control

This function is a collection of the remaining memory system configuration registers. As listed in Table 8, Function 3 includes the following registers:

- Machine check architecture for Northbridge errors
- DRAM scrubber

- Buffer counts for Northbridge flow control
- Power management
- GART
- Clocking/FIFO control
- Thermtrip status
- Northbridge capabilities

Table 8. Function 3 Configuration Registers

Offset	Register Name				Reset	Access	Description
00h	Device ID		Vendor ID (AMD)		1103_1022h	RO	page 88
04h	Status ¹		Command		0000_0000h	RO	
08h	Base Class Code	Subclass Code	Program Interface	Revision ID	0600_0000h	RO	page 89
0Ch	BIST	Header Type	Latency Timer	Cache Line Size	0080_0000h	RO	page 89
10h	Base Address 0				0000_0000h	RO	
14h	Base Address 1				0000_0000h	RO	
18h	Base Address 2				0000_0000h	RO	
1Ch	Base Address 3				0000_0000h	RO	
20h	Base Address 4				0000_0000h	RO	
24h	Base Address 5				0000_0000h	RO	
28h	Card Bus CIS Pointer				0000_0000h	RO	
2Ch	Sub System ID		Sub system Vendor ID		0000_0000h	RO	
30h	ROM Base Address				0000_0000h	RO	
34h	Capabilities				0000_0000h	RO	
38h	reserved				0000_0000h	RO	
3Ch	Max Latency	Min GNT	Int Pin	Int Line	0000_0000h	RO	
40h	MCA Northbridge Control				0000_0000h	RW	page 91
44h	MCA Northbridge Configuration				0000_0000h	RW	page 91
48h	MCA Northbridge Status Low				page 96	RW	page 96
4Ch	MCA Northbridge Status High				page 99	RW	page 99
50h	MCA Northbridge Address Low				page 102	RW	page 102
Notes:							
1. The unimplemented registers in the standard PCI configuration space are implemented as read-only and return 0 if read.							
2. Reads and writes to unimplemented registers in the extended PCI configuration space will result in unpredictable behavior.							

Table 8. Function 3 Configuration Registers (Continued)

Offset	Register Name	Reset	Access	Description
54h	MCA Northbridge Address High	page 102	RW	page 102
58h	Scrub Control	0000_0000h	RW	page 106
5Ch	DRAM Scrub Address Low	page 108	RW	page 108
60h	DRAM Scrub Address High	page 108	RW	page 108
70h	SRI-to-XBAR Buffer Counts	5102_0111h	RW	page 111
74h	XBAR-to-SRI Buffer Counts	5000_8011h	RW	page 113
78h	MCT-to-XBAR Buffer Counts	0800_3800h	RW	page 112
7Ch	Free List Buffer Counts	0000_221Bh	RW	page 113
80h	Power Management Control Low	0000_0000h	RW	page 116
84h	Power Management Control High	0000_0000h	RW	page 117
90h	GART Aperture Control	0000_0000h	RW	page 118
94h	GART Aperture Base	page 119	RW	page 119
98h	GART Table Base	page 119	RW	page 119
9Ch	GART Cache Control	0000_0000h	RW	page 120
D4h	Clock Power/Timing Low	page 121	RW	page 121
D8h	Clock Power/Timing High	page 123	RW	page 123
DCh	HyperTransport™ Read Pointer Optimization	page 124	RW	page 124
E4h	Thermtrip Status	0000_0000h	RO	page 125
E8h	Northbridge Capabilities	0000_0000h	RO	page 126
Notes: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The unimplemented registers in the standard PCI configuration space are implemented as read-only and return 0 if read. 2. Reads and writes to unimplemented registers in the extended PCI configuration space will result in unpredictable behavior. 				

3.6.1 Device/Vendor ID Register

This register specifies the device and vendor IDs for the Function 3 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Device/Vendor ID Register

Function 3: Offset 00h

31	16	15	0
DevID		VenID	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	DevID	Device ID	R	1103h
15–0	VenID	Vendor ID	R	1022h

Field Descriptions

Vendor ID (VenID)—Bits 15–0. This read-only value is defined as 1022h for AMD.

Device ID (DevID)—Bits 31–16. This read-only value is defined as 1103h for the HyperTransport technology configuration function.

3.6.2 Class Code/Revision ID Register

This register specifies the class code and revision for the Function 3 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Class Code/Revision ID Register

Function 3: Offset 08h

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
BCC		SCC		PI		RevID	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	BCC	Base Class Code	R	06h
23–16	SCC	Subclass Code	R	00h
15–8	PI	Programming Interface	R	00h
7–0	RevID	Revision ID	R	00h

Field Descriptions

Revision ID (RevID)—Bits 7–0.

Programming Interface (PI)—Bits 15–8. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

Sub Class Code (SCC)—Bits 23–16. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

Base Class Code (BCC)—Bits 31–24. This read-only value is defined as 06h for a host bridge device.

3.6.3 Header Type Register

This register specifies the header type for the Function 3 registers and is part of the standard PCI configuration header.

Header Type Register

Function 3: Offset 0Ch

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0	
BIST				HType		LatTimer		CLS

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	BIST	BIST	R	00h
23–16	HType	Header Type	R	80h
15–8	LatTimer	Latency Timer	R	00h
7–0	CLS	Cache Line Size	R	00h

Field Descriptions

CacheLineSize (CLS)—Bits 7–0. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

LatencyTimer (LatTimer)—Bits 15–8. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

HeaderType (Htype)—Bits 23–16. This read-only value is defined as 80h to indicate that multiple functions are present in the configuration header and that the header layout corresponds to a device header as opposed to a bridge header. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

BIST—Bits 31–24. This read-only value is defined as 00h.

3.6.4 Machine Check Architecture (MCA) Registers

These registers are used to configure the Machine Check Architecture (MCA) functions of the on-chip Northbridge (NB) hardware and to provide a method for the Northbridge hardware to report errors in a means compatible with MCA. All of the Northbridge MCA registers, except for the MCA NB Configuration register, are accessible through the MCA-defined MSR method, as well as through PCI configuration space. The MCA NB Configuration register is accessible only through PCI configuration space.

The MCA NB Control register provides a means of enabling MCA reporting of each error for which the Northbridge checks. Note that the global MCA error enables must also be set through the global MCA MSRs. The error enables in this register only affect error reporting through MCA. Actions which the Northbridge may take in addition to MCA reporting are enabled through the MCA NB Configuration register.

The MCA NB Status registers and MCA NB Address registers provide status and address information regarding an error which the Northbridge has logged. These error-logging registers are persistent through a warm reset allowing software to identify an error source that was severe enough to result in system-wide initialization.

3.6.4.1 MCA NB Control Register

MCA NB Control Register

Function 3: Offset 40h

31	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0			
reserved					WchDogTmrEn	AtomicRMWEn	GartTbIWkEn	TgtAbrtEn	MstrAbrtEn	SyncPkt2En	SyncPkt1En	SyncPkt0En	CrcErr2En	CrcErr1En	CrcErr0En	UnCorrEccEn	CorrEccEn

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–13	reserved		R	0
12	WchDogTmrEn	Watchdog Timer Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
11	AtomicRMWEn	Atomic Read-Modify-Write Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
10	GartTblWkEn	GART Table Walk Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
9	TgtAbtEn	Target Abort Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
8	MstrAbtEn	Master Abort Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
7	SyncPkt2En	HyperTransport Link 2 Sync Packet Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
6	SyncPkt1En	HyperTransport Link 1 Sync Packet Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
5	SyncPkt0En	HyperTransport Link 0 Sync Packet Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
4	CrcErr2En	HyperTransport Link 2 CRC Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
3	CrcErr1En	HyperTransport Link 1 CRC Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
2	CrcErr0En	HyperTransport Link 0 CRC Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
1	UnCorrEccEn	Uncorrectable ECC Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0
0	CorrEccEn	Correctable ECC Error Reporting Enable	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Correctable ECC Error Reporting Enable (CorrEccEn)—Bit 0. Enables MCA reporting of correctable ECC errors which are detected in the Northbridge. Since correctable errors do not result in an MCA exception the effect of this bit is limited to the setting of the error enable bit in the MCA NB Status High register.

Uncorrectable ECC Error Reporting Enable (UnCorrEccEn)—Bit 1. Enables MCA reporting of uncorrectable ECC errors which are detected in the Northbridge. Note that in some cases data may be forwarded to the CPU core prior to checking ECC in which case the check takes place in one of the other error reporting banks.

HyperTransport Link 0 CRC Error Reporting Enable (CrcErr0En)—Bit 2. Enables MCA reporting of CRC errors detected on HyperTransport link 0. The Northbridge will flood its outgoing HyperTransport links with sync packets after detecting a CRC error on an incoming link independent of the state of this bit.

HyperTransport Link 1 CRC Error Reporting Enable (CrcErr1En)—Bit 3. Enables MCA reporting of CRC errors detected on HyperTransport link 1. The Northbridge will flood its outgoing HyperTransport links with sync packets after detecting a CRC error on an incoming link independent of the state of this bit.

HyperTransport Link 2 CRC Error Reporting Enable (CrcErr2En)—Bit 4. Enables MCA reporting of CRC errors detected on HyperTransport link 2. The Northbridge will flood its outgoing HyperTransport links with sync packets after detecting a CRC error on an incoming link independent of the state of this bit.

HyperTransport Link 0 Sync Packet Error Reporting Enable (SyncPkt0En)—Bit 5. Enables MCA reporting of HyperTransport sync error packets detected on HyperTransport link 0. The Northbridge will flood its outgoing HyperTransport links with sync packets after detecting a sync packet on an incoming link independent of the state of this bit.

HyperTransport Link 1 Sync Packet Error Reporting Enable (SyncPkt1En)—Bit 6. Enables MCA reporting of HyperTransport sync error packets detected on HyperTransport link 1. The Northbridge will flood its outgoing HyperTransport links with sync packets after detecting a sync packet on an incoming link independent of the state of this bit.

HyperTransport Link 2 Sync Packet Error Reporting Enable (SyncPkt2En)—Bit 7. Enables MCA reporting of HyperTransport sync error packets detected on HyperTransport link 2. The Northbridge will flood its outgoing HyperTransport links with sync packets after detecting a sync packet on an incoming link independent of the state of this bit.

Master Abort Error Reporting Enable (MstrAbtEn)—Bit 8. Enables MCA reporting of master aborts (HyperTransport packets that return an error status with the Non Existent Address bit set). The Northbridge will return an error response back to the requestor with any associated data all 1s independent of the state of this bit.

Target Abort Error Reporting Enable (TgtAbtEn)—Bit 9. Enables MCA reporting of target aborts (HyperTransport technology packets that return an error status with the Non Existent Address bit clear). The Northbridge will return an error response back to the requestor with any associated data all 1s independent of the state of this bit.

GART Table Walk Error Reporting Enable (GartTblWkEn)—Bit 10. Enables MCA reporting of GART cache table walks which encounter a GART PTE entry which is invalid.

Atomic Read-Modify-Write Error Reporting Enable (AtomicRMWEn)—Bit 11. Enables MCA reporting of atomic read-modify-write (RMW) HyperTransport technology commands received from a noncoherent HyperTransport link which do not target DRAM. Atomic RMW commands to memory-mapped I/O are not supported in HyperTransport technology. An atomic RMW command that targets MMIO results in a HyperTransport error response being generated back to the requesting I/O device. The generation of the HyperTransport error response is not affected by this bit.

Watchdog Timer Error Reporting Enable (WchDogTmrEn)—Bit 12. Enables MCA reporting of watchdog timer errors. The watchdog timer checks for Northbridge system accesses for which

a response is expected and where no response is received. See the MCA NB Configuration register for information regarding configuration of the watchdog timer duration. Note that this bit does not affect operation of the watchdog timer in terms of its ability to complete an access that would otherwise cause a system hang. This bit only affects whether such errors are reported through MCA.

3.6.4.2 MCA NB Configuration Register

MCA NB Configuration Register

Function 3: Offset 44h

31	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
reserved						DisPciCfgCpuErrRsp	IoRdDatErrEn	ChipKillEccEn	EccEn	SyncOnAnyErrEn	SyncOnWdogEn	reserved	GenCrcErrByte1	GenCrcErrByte0	LdtLinkSel	WdogTmrBaseSel	WdogTmrCntSel	WdogTmrDis	IoErrDis	CpuErrDis	IoMstAbortDis	SyncPktPropDis	SyncPktGenDis	SyncOnUcEccEn	CpuRdDatErrEn	CpuEccErrEn

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–26	reserved		R	0
25	DisPciCfgCpuErrRsp	PCI configuration CPU Error Response Disable	R/W	0
24	IoRdDatErrEn	I/O Read Data Error Log Enable	R/W	0
23	ChipKillEccEn	Chip-Kill ECC Mode Enable	R/W	0
22	EccEn	ECC Enable	R/W	0
21	SyncOnAnyErrEn	Sync Flood On Any Error Enable	R/W	0
20	SyncOnWdogEn	Sync Flood on Watchdog Timer Error Enable	R/W	0
19–18	reserved		R	0
17	GenCrcErrByte1	Generate CRC Error on Byte Lane 1	R/W	0
16	GenCrcErrByte0	Generate CRC Error on Byte Lane 0	R/W	0
15–14	LdtLinkSel	HyperTransport Link Select for CRC Error Generation	R/W	0
13–12	WdogTmrBaseSel	Watchdog Timer Time Base Select	R/W	0
11–9	WdogTmrCntSel	Watchdog Timer Count Select	R/W	0
8	WdogTmrDis	Watchdog Timer Disable	R/W	0
7	IoErrDis	I/O Error Response Disable	R/W	0
6	CpuErrDis	CPU Error Response Disable	R/W	0
5	IoMstAbortDis	I/O Master Abort Error Response Disable	R/W	0
4	SyncPktPropDis	Sync Packet Propagation Disable	R/W	0
3	SyncPktGenDis	Sync Packet Generation Disable	R/W	0
2	SyncOnUcEccEn	Sync Flood on Uncorrectable ECC Error Enable	R/W	0
1	CpuRdDatErrEn	CPU Read Data Error Log Enable	R/W	0
0	CpuEccErrEn	CPU ECC Error Log Enable	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

CPU ECC Error Log Enable (CpuEccErrEn)—Bit 0. Enables reporting of ECC errors for data destined for the CPU on this node. This bit should be clear if ECC error logging is enabled for the remaining error reporting blocks in the CPU. Logging the same error in more than one block may cause a single error event to be treated as a multiple error event and cause the CPU to enter shutdown.

CPU Read Data Error Log Enable (CpuRdDatErrEn)—Bit 1. Enables reporting of read data errors (master aborts and target aborts) for data destined for the CPU on this node. This bit should be clear if read data error logging is enabled for the remaining error reporting blocks in the CPU. Logging the same error in more than one block may cause a single error event to be treated as a multiple error event and cause the CPU to enter shutdown.

Sync Flood on Uncorrectable ECC Error Enable (SyncOnUcEccEn)—Bit 2. Enables flooding of all HyperTransport links with sync packets on detection of an uncorrectable ECC error.

Sync Packet Generation Disable (SyncPktGenDis)—Bit 3. Disables flooding of all outgoing HyperTransport links with sync packets when a CRC error is detected on an incoming link. By default, sync packet generation for CRC errors is controlled through the HyperTransport technology LDTn Link Control registers (see page 43).

Sync Packet Propagation Disable (SyncPktPropDis)—Bit 4. Disables flooding of all outgoing HyperTransport links with sync packets when a sync packet is detected on an incoming link. Sync packets are propagated by default.

I/O Master Abort Error Response Disable (IoMstAbortDis)—Bit 5. Disables setting the NXA bit in HyperTransport response packets to I/O devices on detection of a master abort HyperTransport technology error condition.

CPU Error Response Disable (CpuErrDis)—Bit 6. Disables generation of a read data error response to the CPU core on detection of a target or master abort HyperTransport technology error condition.

I/O Error Response Disable (IoErrDis)—Bit 7. Disables setting the Error bit in HyperTransport response packets to I/O devices on detection of a target or master abort HyperTransport technology error condition.

Watchdog Timer Disable (WdogTmrDis)—Bit 8. Disables the watchdog timer. The watchdog timer is enabled by default and checks for Northbridge system accesses for which a response is expected and where no response is received. If such a condition is detected the outstanding access is completed by generating an error response back to the requestor. An MCA error may also be generated if enabled in the MCA NB Control register.

Watchdog Timer Count Select (WdogTmrCntSel)—Bit 11–9. Selects the count used by the watchdog timer. The counter selected by WdogTmrCntSel determines the maximum count value in the time base selected by WdogTmrBaseSel.
000b = 4095 (default)

001b = 2047
 010b = 1023
 011b = 511
 100b = 255
 101b = 127
 110b = 63
 111b = 31

Watchdog Timer Time Base Select (WdogTmrBaseSel)—Bit 13–12. Selects the time base used by the watchdog timer. The counter selected by WdogTmrCntSel determines the maximum count value in the time base selected by WdogTmrBaseSel.

00b = 1 ms (default)
 01b = 1 μ s
 10b = 5 ns
 11b = reserved

HyperTransport Link Select for CRC Error Generation (LdtLinkSel)—Bit 15–14. Selects the HyperTransport link to be used for CRC error injection through GenCrcErrByte1/GenCrcErrByte0.

00b = HyperTransport link 0
 01b = HyperTransport link 1
 10b = HyperTransport link 2
 11b = undefined

Generate CRC Error on Byte Lane 0 (GenCrcErrByte0)—Bit 16. Causes a CRC error to be injected on Byte Lane 0 of the HyperTransport link specified by LdtLinkSel. The data carried by the link is unaffected. This bit is cleared after the error has been generated.

Generate CRC Error on Byte Lane 1 (GenCrcErrByte1)—Bit 17. Causes a CRC error to be injected on Byte Lane 1 of the HyperTransport link specified by LdtLinkSel. The data carried by the link is unaffected. This bit is cleared after the error has been generated.

Sync Flood on Watchdog Timer Error Enable (SyncOnWdogEn)—Bit 20. Enables flooding of all HyperTransport links with sync packets on detection of a watchdog timer error.

Sync Flood On Any Error Enable (SyncOnAnyErrEn)—Bit 21. Enables flooding of all HyperTransport links with sync packets on detection of any MCA error that is uncorrectable.

ECC Enable (EccEn)—Bit 22. Enables ECC check/correct mode. This bit must be set in order for any ECC checking/correcting to be enabled for any block on the processor. If set, ECC will be checked and correctable errors will be corrected irrespective of whether machine check ECC reporting is enabled.

The hardware will only allow values to be programmed into this field which are consistent with the ECC capabilities of the device as specified in the Northbridge Capabilities register (page 126). Attempts to write values inconsistent with the capabilities will result in this field not being updated.

Chip-Kill ECC Mode Enable (ChipKillEccEn)—Bit 23. Enables chip-kill ECC mode. Setting this bit causes ECC checking to be based on a 128/16 data/check basis rather than the more usual 64/8 method. Chip-kill ECC can only be enabled in 128-bit DRAM data width mode. It allows correction of an error affecting a single x4 DRAM chip rather than the single bit correction capability available in standard 64/8 ECC checking.

The hardware will only allow values to be programmed into this field which are consistent with the ECC capabilities of the device as specified in the Northbridge Capabilities register (page 126). Attempts to write values inconsistent with the capabilities will result in this field not being updated.

I/O Read Data Error Log Enable (IoRdDatErrEn)—Bit 24. Enables reporting of read data errors (master aborts and target aborts) for data destined for I/O devices. If this bit is clear (default state), master and target aborts for transactions from I/O devices are not logged by MCA (although error responses may still be generated to the requesting I/O device).

PCI Configuration CPU Error Response Disable (DisPciCfgCpuErrRsp)—Bit 25. Disables master abort and target abort reporting through the CPU error-reporting banks for PCI configuration accesses. It is recommended that this bit be set in order to avoid MCA exceptions being generated from master aborts for PCI configuration accesses (which can be common during device enumeration).

3.6.4.3 MCA NB Status Low Register

MCA NB Status Low Register

Function 3: Offset 48h

31	24	23	20	19	16	15	0
Syndrome[15:8]				reserved		ErrorCodeExt	ErrorCode

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	Syndrome[15:8]	Syndrome Bits 15–8 for Chip Kill ECC Mode	R/W	X
23–20	reserved		R	0
19–16	ErrorCodeExt	Extended Error Code	R/W	X
15–0	ErrorCode	Error Code	R/W	X

"X" in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Error Code (ErrorCode)—Bits 15–0. Logs an error code when an error is detected. See Table 16 on page 98 for the error codes. Table 9 on page 97 describes the possible error code formats.

Extended Error Code (ErrorCodeExt)—Bits 19–16. Logs an extended error code when an error is detected. See Table 16 on page 98 for the extended error codes.

Syndrome Bits 15–8 for Chip Kill ECC Mode (Syndrome[15–8])—Bits 31–24. Logs the upper eight syndrome bits when an ECC error is detected. Only valid for ECC errors in Chip-Kill ECC mode.

Table 9. Error Code Field Formats

Error Value	Error Type	Description
0000 0000 0001 TTLL	TLB errors	Errors in the GART TLB cache. TT = Transaction Type (Table 10 on page 97) LL = Cache Level (Table 11 on page 97)
0000 0001 RRRR TTLL	Memory errors	Errors in the cache hierarchy (not applicable for Northbridge errors) RRRR = Memory Transaction Type (Table 12 on page 97) TT = Transaction Type (Table 10 on page 97) LL = Cache Level (Table 11 on page 97)
0000 1PPT RRRR IILL	Bus errors	General bus errors including errors in the HyperTransport™ link or DRAM. PP = Participation Processor (Table 13 on page 98) T = Time-out (Table 14 on page 98) RRRR = Memory Transaction Type (Table 12 on page 97) II = Memory or I/O (Table 15 on page 98) LL = Cache Level (Table 11 on page 97)

Table 10. Transaction Type Bits (TT)

00b	Instruction
01b	Data
10b	Generic
11b	reserved

Table 11. Cache Level Bits (LL)

00b	Level 0 (L0)
01b	Level 1 (L1)
10b	Level 2 (L2)
11b	Generic (LG)

Table 12. Memory Transaction Type Bits (RRRR)

0000b	Generic error (GEN)
0001b	Generic read (RD)
0010b	Generic write (WR)

Table 12. Memory Transaction Type Bits (RRRR) (Continued)

0011b	Data read
0100b	Data write
0101b	Instruction fetch
0110b	Prefetch
0111b	Evict
1000b	Snoop (probe)

Table 13. Participation Processor Bits (PP)

00b	Local node originated the request (SRC)
01b	Local node responded to the request (RES)
10b	Local node observed error as 3rd party (OBS)
11b	Generic

Table 14. Time-Out Bit (T)

0	Request did not time out
1	Request timed out (TIMOUT)

Table 15. Memory or I/O Bits (II)

00b	Memory access (MEM)
01b	reserved
10b	I/O access
11b	Generic (GEN)

Table 16 on page 98 lists the errors reported by the Northbridge, along with the error codes for each error. The error code fields are defined in the table above. See the NB Control register for more information on errors detected by the Northbridge.

Table 16. Northbridge Error Codes

Error Type	Extended Error Code	Error Code						
		Type	PP	T	RRRR	II	LL	TT
ECC error	0000	BUS	SRC/RSP	0	RD/WR	MEM	LG	-
CRC error	0001	BUS	OBS	0	GEN	GEN	GEN	-
Sync error	0010	BUS	OBS	0	GEN	GEN	GEN	-
Mst Abort	0011	BUS	SRC/OBS	0	RD/WR	MEM/IO	GEN	-
Tgt Abort	0100	BUS	SRC/OBS	0	RD/WR	MEM/IO	GEN	-

Table 16. Northbridge Error Codes

Error Type	Extended Error Code	Error Code						
		Type	PP	T	RRRR	II	LL	TT
GART error	0101	TLB	-	-	-	-	GEN	GEN
RMW error	0110	BUS	OBS	0	GEN	IO	GEN	-
Wdog error	0111	BUS	GEN	1	GEN	GEN	GEN	-
ChipKill ECC error	1000	BUS	SRC/RSP	0	RD/WR	MEM	LG	-

3.6.4.4 MCA NB Status High Register

MCA NB Status High Register

Function 3: Offset 4Ch

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22		15	14	13	12		9	8	7	6		4	3	2	1	0
ErrValid	ErrOver	ErrUnCorr	ErrEn	ErrMiscVal	ErrAddrVal	PCC	reserved	ECC_Synd (7–0)				CorrECC	UnCorrECC	reserved			ErrScrub	reserved	LDTLink		reserved	ErrCPU1		ErrCPU0	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31	ErrValid	Error Valid	R/W	X
30	ErrOver	Error Overflow	R/W	X
29	ErrUnCorr	Error Uncorrected	R/W	X
28	ErrEn	Error Enable	R/W	X
27	ErrMiscVal	Miscellaneous Error Register Valid	R	X
26	ErrAddrVal	Error Address Valid	R/W	X
25	PCC	Processor Context Corrupt	R/W	X
24–23	reserved		R	0
22–15	ECC_Synd (7–0)	Syndrome Bits (7–0) for ECC Errors	R/W	X
14	CorrECC	Correctable ECC Error	R/W	X
13	UnCorrECC	Uncorrectable ECC Error	R/W	X
12–9	reserved		R	0
8	ErrScrub	Error Found by DRAM Scrubber	R/W	X
7	reserved		R	0
6–4	LDTLink	HyperTransport Link Number	R/W	X
3–2	reserved		R	0
1	ErrCPU1	Error Associated with CPU 1	R/W	X
0	ErrCPU0	Error Associated with CPU 0	R/W	X

“X” in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Error Associated with CPU 0 (ErrCPU0)—Bit 0. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the error was associated with CPU 0.

Error Associated with CPU 1 (ErrCPU1)—Bit 1. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the error was associated with CPU 1.

HyperTransport Link Number (LDTLink[2:0])—Bits 6–4. For errors associated with a HyperTransport link (e.g., CRC errors), this field indicates which link was associated with the error.

LDTLink[0] = Error associated with HyperTransport link 0

LDTLink[1] = Error associated with HyperTransport link 1

LDTLink[2] = Error associated with HyperTransport link 2

Error Found by DRAM Scrubber (ErrScrub)—Bit 8. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the error was found by the DRAM scrubber.

Uncorrectable ECC Error (UnCorrECC)—Bit 13. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the error was an uncorrectable ECC error.

Correctable ECC Error (CorrECC)—Bit 14. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the error was a correctable ECC error.

Syndrome Bits 7–0 for ECC Errors (ECC_Synd[7:0])—Bits 22–15. Logs the lower eight syndrome bits when an ECC error is detected.

Processor Context Corrupt (PCC)—Bit 25. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the state of the processor may be corrupted by the error condition. Reliable restarting might not be possible.

0 = Processor not corrupted

1 = Processor may be corrupted

Error Address Valid (ErrAddrVal)—Bit 26. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the address saved in the address register is the address where the error occurred (i.e. it validates the address in the address register).

0 = Address register not valid

1 = Address register valid

Miscellaneous Error Register Valid (ErrMiscVal)—Bit 27. If set to 1, this bit indicates whether the Miscellaneous Error register contains valid information for this error. This bit is read-only 0, since the Miscellaneous Error register is not implemented.

Error Enable (ErrEn)—Bit 28. If set to 1, this bit indicates that MCA error reporting is enabled for this error in the MCA Control register.

0 = Error checking not enabled

1 = Error checking enabled

Error Uncorrected (ErrUnCorr)—Bit 29. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the error was not corrected by hardware.

0 = Error corrected

1 = Error not corrected

Error Overflow (ErrOver)—Bit 30. Set to 1 if the Northbridge detects an error with the valid bit of this register already set. Enabled errors are written over disabled errors, uncorrectable errors are written over correctable errors. Uncorrectable errors are not overwritten.

0 = No error overflow

1 = Error overflow

Error Valid (ErrValid)—Bit 31. If set to 1, this bit indicates that a valid error has been detected. This bit should be cleared to 0 by software after the register is read.

0 = No valid error detected

1 = Valid error detected

Table 17 lists the errors reported by Northbridge along with the status bits logged for each error. The status bits are defined in the table above. See the Northbridge Control register for more information on errors detected by Northbridge.

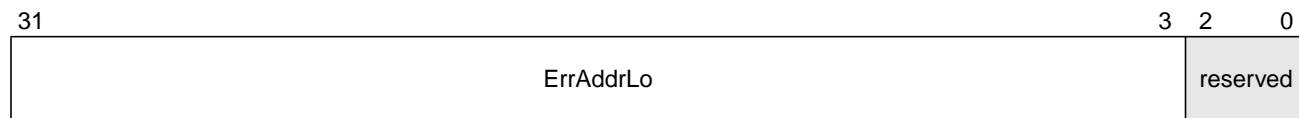
Table 17. Northbridge Error Status Bit Settings

Error Type	ErrUnCorr	ErrAddr Val	PCC	ECC_Synd Valid	Corr ECC	UnCorr ECC	Err Scrub	LDTLink Valid	Err CPU
ECC error	If multi-bit	1	If multi-bit and src CPU	1	If single-bit	If multi-bit	1/0	0	1/0
CRC error	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0
Sync error	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	1	0
Mst Abort	1	1	If src CPU	0	0	0	0	1	1/0
Tgt Abort	1	1	If src CPU	0	0	0	0	1	1/0
GART error	1	1	If src CPU	0	0	0	0	0	1/0
RMW error	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0
Wdog error	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	X
ChipKill ECC error	If multi-chip	1	If multi-chip and src CPU	1	If single-chip	If multi-chip	1/0	0	1/0

3.6.4.5 MCA NB Address Low Register

MCA NB Address Low Register

Function 3: Offset 50h



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–3	ErrAddrLo	Error Address Bits 31–3	R/W	X
2–0	reserved		R	0

"X" in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Error Address Bits 31–3 (ErrAddrLo)—Bits 31–3. This field specifies bits 31–3 of the address associated with a machine check error.

3.6.4.6 MCA NB Address High Register

MCA NB Address High Register

Function 3: Offset 54h



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–8	reserved		R	0
7–0	ErrAddrHi	Error Address Bits 39–32	R/W	X

"X" in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

Error Address Bits 39–32 (ErrAddrHi)—Bits 7–0. This field specifies bits 39–32 of the address associated with a machine check error.

3.6.4.7 Watchdog Timer Errors

For watchdog timer errors the ErrAddrHi and ErrAddrLo fields in the MCA NB Address High/Low registers log information regarding the hardware state of the request for which the response timed out.

MCA NB Address Low Register for Watchdog Timer Error

Function 3: Offset 50h

Revision B and earlier revisions.

31	30	29	28	27	25	24	23	22	20	19	18	17	15	14	12	11	9	8	3	2	0
WaitLock	WaitPW	WaitCpuDat	WaitDatMove		DstNode		DstUnit		SrcNode		SrcUnit		SrcPtr		NextAction		OpType		LdtCmd		reserved

Revision C.

31	30	29	28	27	25	24	23	22	20	19	18	17	15	14	12	11	9	8	3	2	0
WaitCode	WaitPW	reserved	DstNode		DstUnit		SrcNode		SrcUnit		SrcPtr		NextAction		OpType		LdtCmd			reserved	

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
Bits [31:28] in revision B and earlier revisions.				
31	WaitLock	Wait For Bus Lock		
30	WaitPW	Wait For Posted Write		
29	WaitCpuDat	Wait For CPU Write Data		
28	WaitDatMove	Wait For Data Movement		
Bits [31:28] in revision C.				
31-30	WaitCode	Wait Code (Bits 1-0 of WaitCode)		
29	WaitPW	Wait For Posted Write		
28	reserved			
27-25	DstNode	Destination Node ID		
24-23	DstUnit	Destination Unit ID		
22-20	SrcNode	Source Node ID		
19-18	SrcUnit	Source Unit ID		
17-15	SrcPtr	Source Pointer		
14-12	NextAction	Next Action		
11-9	OpType	Operation Type		
8-3	LdtCmd	HyperTransport Command		
2-0	reserved			

Field Descriptions

HyperTransport Command (LdtCmd)—Bit 8–3. The initial command (in HyperTransport technology format) for the stalled operation.

Operation Type (OpType)—Bit 11–9. Indicates what type of operation is stalled.

000b = Normal operation (i.e., none of the other types listed)

001b = Bus lock

010b = Local APIC access

- 011b = Interrupt request
- 100b = System management request
- 101b = Interrupt broadcast
- 110b = Stop grant
- 111b = SMI ack

Next Action (NextAction)—Bit 14–12. Indicates what the stalled operation would have done next had it not become stalled.

- 000b = Complete
- 001b = reserved
- 010b = Send request
- 011b = Send second request (if any)
- 100b = Send final response back to requestor
- 101b = Send initial response (if any) back to requestor
- 110b = Send final response to mem controller
- 111b = Send initial response (if any) to mem controller

Source Pointer (SrcPtr)—Bit 17–15. Source pointer of the stalled operation.

- 000b = Host bridge on local node
- 001b = CPU on local node
- 010b = Mem controller on local node
- 101b = HyperTransport link 0
- 110b = HyperTransport link 1
- 111b = HyperTransport link 2

Source Unit ID (SrcUnit)—Bit 19–18. Source Unit ID of the stalled operation.

Source Node ID (SrcNode)—Bit 22–20. Source Node ID of the stalled operation.

Destination Unit ID (DstUnit)—Bit 24–23. Destination Unit ID of the stalled operation.

Destination Node ID (DstNode)—Bit 27–25. Destination Node ID of the stalled operation.

Bits [31:28] in revision B and earlier revisions:

Wait For Data Movement (WaitDatMove)—Bit 28. When set, indicates that the stalled operation is waiting for read or write data to be moved.

Wait For CPU Write Data (WaitCpuDat)—Bit 29. When set, indicates that the stalled operation is waiting for write data from the CPU.

Wait For Posted Write (WaitPW)—Bit 30. When set, indicates that a response for the stalled operation is waiting for one or more prior posted writes to complete.

Wait For Bus Lock (WaitLock)—Bit 31. When set, indicates that the stalled operation is waiting for a bus lock to complete.

Bits [31:28] in revision C:

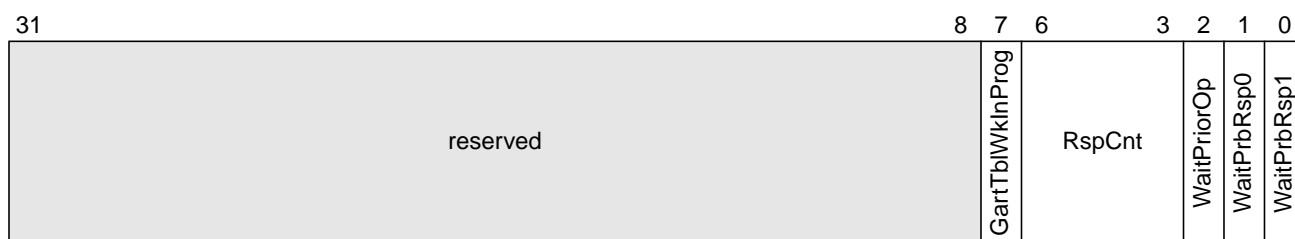
Wait For Posted Write (WaitPW)—Bit 29. When set, indicates that a response for the stalled operation is waiting for one or more prior posted writes to complete.

Wait Code (WaitCode)—Bit 31-30. WaitCode is a 5 bit field; WaitCode[1:0] is in Function 3 Offset 50h; WaitCode[4:2] is in Function 3, Offset 54h. WaitCode encodings are implementation specific. They describe the reason the hardware is waiting. All zeros mean that there is not a waiting condition. Revision B and earlier revision fields: WaitDatMove, WaitCpuDat, WaitLock (Function 3, Offset 50h), WaitPrbRsp0, WaitPrbRsp1, and WaitPriorOp (Function 3, Offset 50h) are replaced with a code in the revision C field WaitCode (Function 3, Offset 50h, 54h).

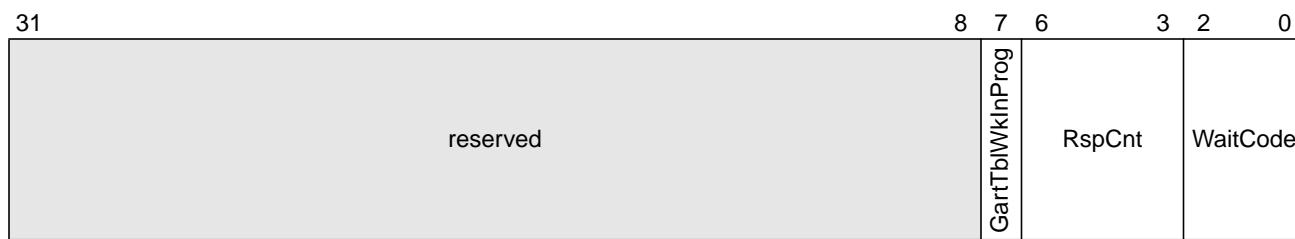
MCA NB Address High Register for Watchdog Timer Error

Function 3: Offset 54h

Revision B and earlier revisions.



Revision C.



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–8	reserved			
7	GartTbWkInProg	GART Table Walk In Progress (Bit 39 of ErrAddr)		
6–3	RspCnt	System Response Count (Bits 38–35 of ErrAddr)		
Bits [2:0] in revision B and earlier revisions.				
2	WaitPriorOp	Wait For Prior Operation (Bit 34 of ErrAddr)		
1	WaitPrbRsp0	Wait For CPU0 Probe Response (Bit 33 of ErrAddr)		
0	WaitPrbRsp1	Wait For CPU1 Probe Response (Bit 32 of ErrAddr)		
Bits [2:0] in revision C.				
2-0	WaitCode	Wait Code (Bits 4-2 of WaitCode)		

Field Descriptions

Bits [2:0] in revision B and earlier revisions:

Wait For CPU1 Probe Response (WaitPrbRsp1)—Bit 0 (Bit 32 of ErrAddr). When set, indicates that the stalled operation is waiting on a probe response from CPU1.

Wait For CPU0 Probe Response (WaitPrbRsp0)—Bit 1 (Bit 33 of ErrAddr). When set, indicates that the stalled operation is waiting on a probe response from CPU0.

Wait For Prior Operation (WaitPriorOp)—Bit 2 (Bit 34 of ErrAddr). When set, indicates that the stalled operation is waiting for a prior operation to release system resources.

Bits [2:0] in revision C:

Wait Code (WaitCode)—Bit 2-0. See WaitCode definition in MCA NB Address Low Register for Watchdog Timer Error (Function 3, Offset 50h).

System Response Count (RspCnt)—Bits 6–3 (Bits 38–35 of ErrAddr). Number of outstanding system responses for which the stalled operation is waiting.

GART Table Walk In Progress (GartTblWkInProg)—Bit 7 (Bit 39 of ErrAddr). Indicates that a GART table walk was in progress at the time the error was logged.

3.6.5 Scrub Control Register

This register specifies the scrub rate for ECC scrubbing of DRAM, the L2 cache and the DCACHE. The scrub rate is specified in terms of the duration between successive scrub events. A value of 0 is used to disable scrubbing.

Each scrub event corresponds to:

- 64 bytes for the DRAM scrubber
- 64 bits for the data cache scrubber
- One single L2 cache line tag address for the L2 scrubber

Note that the addresses must be set up for each scrubber before the scrubber is enabled.

Scrub Control Register

Function 3: Offset 58h

31	21	20	16	15	13	12	8	7	5	4	0
reserved				DcacheScrub		reserved	L2Scrub		reserved	DramScrub	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–21	reserved		R	0
20–16	DcacheScrub	Data Cache Scrub Rate	R/W	0
15–13	reserved		R	0
12–8	L2Scrub	L2 Cache Scrub Rate	R/W	0
7–5	reserved		R	0
4–0	DramScrub	DRAM Scrub Rate	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

DRAM Scrub Rate (DramScrub)—Bits 4–0. Specifies the scrub rate for the DRAM. See Table 18.

L2 Cache Scrub Rate (L2Scrub)—Bits 12–8. Specifies the scrub rate for the L2 cache. See Table 18.

Data Cache Scrub Rate (DcacheScrub)—Bits 20–16. Specifies the scrub rate for the data cache. See Table 18.

Table 18. Scrub Rate Control Values

Scrub Rate Code	Scrub Rate	Scrub Rate Code	Scrub Rate
00000b	Do not scrub	01100b	81.9 μ s
00001b	40.0 ns	01101b	163.8 μ s
00010b	80.0 ns	01110b	327.7 μ s
00011b	160.0 ns	01111b	655.4 μ s
00100b	320.0 ns	10000b	1.31 ms
00101b	640.0 ns	10001b	2.62 ms
00110b	1.28 μ s	10010b	5.24 ms
00111b	2.56 μ s	10011b	10.49 ms
01000b	5.12 μ s	10100b	20.97 ms
01001b	10.2 μ s	10101b	42.00 ms
01010b	20.5 μ s	10110b	84.00 ms
01011b	41.0 μ s	All others	reserved

3.6.6 DRAM Scrub Address Registers

These registers specify the next address to be scrubbed by the DRAM scrubber. They should be loaded with the DRAM base address (see “DRAM Address Map” on page 57) prior to enabling the scrubber and they should be loaded after MemClrStatus bit (Function2, Offset 90h) is set. They are then updated by the scrubber hardware as it scrubs successive 64-byte blocks of DRAM. Once the scrubber reaches the DRAM limit address for the node in question (see “DRAM Address Map” on page 57), it automatically wraps to the DRAM base address.

The address specified by these registers must be normalized to the system address and should always be between the base and limit address for the node in question, defined through the DRAM address maps (see “DRAM Address Map” on page 57).

In addition to DRAM scrubbing of successive locations, the DRAM scrubber has a redirect mode for scrubbing DRAM locations encountered during normal operation. When a DRAM read is generated by any agent other than the DRAM scrubber, correctable ECC errors are corrected as the data is passed to the requestor. However the data in DRAM is not corrected. In scrubber redirect mode, correctable errors encountered during normal DRAM read accesses redirect the scrubber to the

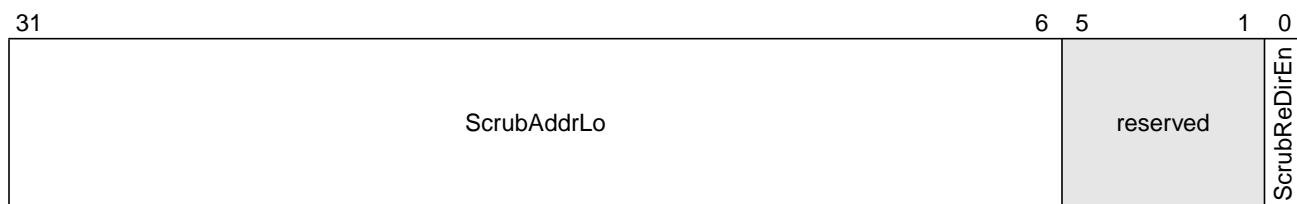
location of the error. After the scrubber corrects the location in DRAM, it resumes scrubbing from where it left off. Note that normal scrubbing and scrubber redirection can be enabled independently or together.

ECC errors encountered during scrubber activity are logged in the MCA registers (see “Machine Check Architecture Registers” on page 143).

3.6.6.1 DRAM Scrub Address Low Register

DRAM Scrub Address Low Register

Function 3: Offset 5Ch



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–6	ScrubAddrLo	DRAM Scrub Address Bits 31–6	R/W	X
5–1	reserved		R	0
0	ScrubReDirEn	DRAM Scrubber Redirect Enable	R/W	0

“X” in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

DRAM Scrubber Redirect Enable (ScrubReDirEn)—Bit 0. If this bit is set, the scrubber is redirected to correct errors found during normal operation.

DRAM Scrub Address Bits 31–6 (ScrubAddrLo)—Bits 31–6. This field specifies the low address bits 31–6 of the next 64-byte block to be scrubbed.

3.6.6.2 DRAM Scrub Address High Register

DRAM Scrub Address High Register

Function 3: Offset 60h



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–8	reserved		R	0
7–0	ScrubAddrHi	DRAM Scrub Address Bits 39–32	R/W	X

“X” in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

DRAM Scrub Address Bits 39–32 (ScrubAddrHi)—Bits 7–0. This field specifies the high address bits 39–32 of the next 64-byte block to be scrubbed.

3.6.7 XBAR Flow Control Buffers

The Northbridge interfaces with the CPU core, DRAM controller, and, through three HyperTransport links, to external chips.

The major Northbridge blocks are: System Request Interface (SRI), Memory Controller (MCT), and Cross Bar (XBAR). SRI interfaces with the CPU core and connects coherent HyperTransport links and noncoherent HyperTransport links. MCT maintains cache coherency and interfaces with the DRAM. XBAR is a five port switch which routes the command packets between SRI, MCT, and the three HyperTransport links. Not all HyperTransport links have to be active.

The number of buffers available for each link at the XBAR input is shown in Table 19.

Table 19. XBAR Input Buffers

Link	Number of Command Buffers	Number of Data Buffers
HyperTransport™ Link 0-2	16 x 3	8 x 3
SRI	10	5
MCT	12	8
Total	70	37

XBAR command and data buffers are independent. There are 70 command buffers available, but a maximum of 64 can be used at any given time. Number of used data buffers is not restricted. The default allocation of command buffers when all HyperTransport links are present is shown in Table 20.

Table 20. Default XBAR Command Buffer Allocation

Link	Number of Command Buffers
HyperTransport™ Link 0-2	15 x 3
SRI	8
MCT	11
Total	64

The HyperTransport™ I/O Link Specification defines four virtual channels: requests, posted requests, responses, and probes. The default virtual channel command buffer allocation is shown in Table 21. At least one command buffer should be allocated to each used virtual channel to avoid deadlock. Command buffers do not need to be allocated for a virtual channel that is not used by a link. For

example, MCT does not initiate any requests, so there is no need to allocate request or posted request command buffers for an MCT link. A link should not send transactions through a virtual channel that does not have at least one command buffer allocated.

Default allocation of SRI buffers can be found in “SRI-to-XBAR Buffer Count Register” on page 111 and “Free List Buffer Count Register” on page 113. In the SRI-to-Xbar Buffer Count Register (Function 3, Offset 70h), the virtual channels are subdivided into upstream (coherent HyperTransport) and downstream (noncoherent HyperTransport) directions, since SRI must send packets into both coherent HyperTransport and noncoherent HyperTransport links. Some buffers are allocated to a free list pool to use the available resources more efficiently. The buffers in the free list pool are shared by packets in multiple virtual channels. By default, no more than one buffer is allocated to a virtual channel and the rest are allocated to the free list pool in the Free List Buffer Count Register (Function 3, Offset 7Ch). Any buffer increase to SRI can be added to the free list or allocated directly to a virtual channel. The total count allocated through the Free List Buffer Count Register and the SRI-to-Xbar Buffer Count Register cannot exceed 10.

Table 21. Default Virtual Channel Command Buffer Allocation

Link	Request	Posted Request	Response	Probe	Number of Command Buffers
Coherent HyperTransport™ Links	3	1	6	5	15
Non-coherent HyperTransport™ Links	6	5	4	0	15
SRI	2	3	3	0	8
MCT	0	0	8	3	11

Software can reallocate buffers by modifying buffer count registers (Function 0, Offsets 90h, B0h, D0h, Function 3, Offsets 70h, 78h, 7Ch). The new buffer counts take effect after a warm reset. Since hardware attempts to choose optimal settings, in general, these registers should not be changed.

The following information should be used for buffer reallocation:

1. Number of allocated command buffers for each link should not be greater than the number of available command buffers for that link (see Table 19). Sum of allocated command buffers for three HyperTransport links, SRI, and MCT should not be greater than 64.
2. If one HyperTransport link is not present, then other links can use all available buffers for each of them (MCT and HyperTransport links can use one additional buffer, and SRI can use two additional buffers).
3. If all links are present, some buffers from a noncoherent HyperTransport link can be reallocated to coherent HyperTransport links. Table 22 shows command buffer allocation after two response buffers from noncoherent HyperTransport link 0 are reallocated to coherent HyperTransport links 1 and 2.

Table 22. An Example of a Non Default Virtual Channel Command Buffer Allocation

Link	Request	Posted Request	Response	Probe	Number of Command Buffers
HyperTransport™ Link 0	6	5	2	0	13
HyperTransport™ Link 1	3	1	7	5	16
HyperTransport™ Link 2	3	1	7	5	16
SRI	2	3	3	0	8
MCT	0	0	8	3	11

4. If there are no noncoherent HyperTransport links, one ore more response buffers can be reallocated from MCT to HyperTransport links.

5. In a multiprocessor system, number of coherent HyperTransport response buffers should be increased first. The default buffer allocation is sufficient for a uniprocessor system.

3.6.7.1 SRI-to-XBAR Buffer Count Register

SRI-to-XBAR Buffer Count Register

Function 3: Offset 70h

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15			10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
DPReq	DReq		reserved	URspD		reserved	DispRefReq	reserved	ReqD		reserved					URsp		reserved	UPReq		reserved	UReq							

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–30	DPreq	Downstream Posted Request Buffer Count	R/W	01b
29–28	DReq	Downstream Request Buffer Count	R/W	01b
27–26	reserved		R	0
25–24	URspD	Upstream Response Data Buffer Count	R/W	01b
23–22	reserved		R	0
21:20	DispRefReq	Display Refresh Request Buffer Count	R/W	0
19–18	reserved		R	0
17–16	ReqD	Request Data Buffer Count	R/W	10b
15–10	reserved		R	0
9–8	URsp	Upstream Response Buffer Count	R/W	01b
7–6	reserved		R	0
5–4	UPReq	Upstream Posted Request Buffer Count	R/W	01b
3–2	reserved		R	0
1–0	UReq	Upstream Request Buffer Count	R/W	01b

Field Descriptions

Upstream Request Buffer Count (UReq)—Bits 1–0. This field defines the number of upstream request buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI.

Upstream Posted Request Buffer Count (UPReq)—Bits 5–4. This field defines the number of upstream posted request buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI.

Upstream Response Buffer Count (URsp)—Bits 9–8. This field defines the number of upstream response buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI.

Request Data Buffer Count (ReqD)—Bits 17–16. This field defines the number of request data buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI.

Display Refresh Request Buffer Count (DispRefReq)—Bits 21–20. This field defines the number of display refresh request buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

Upstream Response Data Buffer Count (URspD)—Bits 25–24. This field defines the number of upstream response data buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI.

Downstream Request Buffer Count (DReq)—Bits 29–28. This field defines the number of downstream request buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI.

Downstream Posted Request Buffer Count (DPReq)—Bits 31–30. This field defines the number of downstream posted request buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI.

3.6.7.2 MCT-to-XBAR Buffer Count Register

MCT-to-XBAR Buffer Count Register

Function 3: Offset 78h

31	28	27	24	23	15	14	12	11	8	7	0
reserved				RspD				reserved			

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–28	reserved		R	0
27–24	RspD	Response Data Buffer Count	R/W	8h
23–15	reserved		R	0
14–12	Prb	Probe Buffer Count	R/W	011b
11–8	Rsp	Response Buffer Count	R/W	8h
7–0	reserved		R	0

Field Descriptions

Response Buffer Count (Rsp)—Bits 11–8. This field defines the number of response buffers available in the XBAR for use by the MCT.

Probe Buffer Count (Prb)—Bits 14–12. This field defines the number of probe buffers available in the XBAR for use by the MCT.

Response Data Buffer Count (RspD)—Bits 27–24. This field defines the number of response data buffers available in the XBAR for use by the MCT.

3.6.7.3 Free List Buffer Count Register

Free List Buffer Count Register

Function 3: Offset 7Ch

31					14	13	12	11	10		8	7	6	5	4	3	0
reserved										FRspD	reserved	FRsp	reserved	FReq	FreeCmd		

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–14	reserved		R	0
13–12	FRspD	SRI to XBAR Free Response Data Buffer Count	R/W	10b
11	reserved		R	0
10–8	FRsp	SRI to XBAR Free Response Buffer Count	R/W	010b
7–6	reserved		R	0
5–4	FReq	SRI to XBAR Free Request Buffer Count	R/W	01b
3–0	FreeCmd	SRI Free Command Buffer Count	R/W	Bh

Field Descriptions

SRI Free Command Buffer Count (FreeCmd)—Bits 3–0. This field defines the number of free list request or posted request buffers available in the SRI for use by the XBAR or CPU.

SRI to XBAR Free Request Buffer Count (FReq)—Bits 5–4. This field defines the number of free list request buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI.

SRI to XBAR Free Response Buffer Count (FRsp)—Bits 10–8. This field defines the number of free list response buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI.

SRI to XBAR Free Response Data Buffer Count (FRspD)—Bits 13–12. This field defines the number of free list response data buffers available in the XBAR for use by the SRI.

3.6.8 XBAR-to-SRI Buffer Count Register

The Cross Bar Switch to System Request Interface (XBAR-to-SRI) Buffer Count register specifies the number of command buffers for each virtual channel available in the SRI for use by the XBAR. These buffers store commands for traffic routed to the SRI by the XBAR. The buffer counts take effect on the next warm reset.

Since the XBAR must route packets in both the coherent HyperTransport technology fabric and down the noncoherent HyperTransport chains, the usual virtual channels are further subdivided into

upstream (from noncoherent HyperTransport) and downstream (to noncoherent HyperTransport) directions. In order to make more efficient use of the available resources, some of the buffers are allocated onto a free list pool in which case these buffers can be used by packets issued in either direction. See “Free List Buffer Count Register” on page 113. Any increase in the number of fixed allocated buffers in the XBAR-to-SRI Buffer Count register must be compensated by a corresponding reduction of the number of free list buffers specified in the Free List Buffer Count register.

When modifying buffer counts care must be taken to allocate a minimum number of buffers to each virtual channel to avoid deadlock. Requests and Posted requests in both directions require at least one buffer and Probes require at least two buffers to avoid deadlock. Since hardware attempts to choose optimal settings, this register should not in general need to be changed.

Note: When the Probe Buffer Count is changed, care must be taken to avoid generation of system management events from the time the new value is written into this register until it takes effect (on the next warm reset).

XBAR-to-SRI Buffer Count Register

Function 3: Offset 74h

31	30	29	28	27	23	22	20	19	16	15	12	11	7	6	4	3	2	0
DPreq	DReq	reserved				DispRefReq	reserved				Prb	reserved				UPReq	reserved	UReq

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–30	DPreq	Downstream Posted Request Buffer Count	R/W	01b
29–28	DReq	Downstream Request Buffer Count	R/W	01b
27–23	reserved		R	0
22:20	DispRefReq	Display Refresh Request Buffer Count	R/W	0
19–16	reserved		R	0
15–12	Prb	Probe Buffer Count	R/W	8h
11–7	reserved		R	0
6–4	UPReq	Upstream Posted Request Buffer Count	R/W	001b
3	reserved		R	0
2–0	UReq	Upstream Request Buffer Count	R/W	001b

Field Descriptions

Upstream Request Buffer Count (UReq)—Bits 2–0. This field defines the number of upstream request buffers available in the SRI for use by the XBAR.

Upstream Posted Request Buffer Count (UPReq)—Bits 6–4. This field defines the number of upstream posted request buffers available in the SRI for use by the XBAR.

Probe Buffer Count (Prb)—Bits 15–12. This field defines the number of probe buffers available in the SRI for use by the XBAR.

Display Refresh Request Buffer Count (DispRefReq)—Bits 22–20. This field defines the number of display refresh request buffers available in the SRI for use by the XBAR. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

Downstream Request Buffer Count (DReq)—Bits 29–28. This field defines the number of downstream request buffers available in the SRI for use by the XBAR.

Downstream Posted Request Buffer Count (DPReq)—Bits 31–30. This field defines the number of downstream posted request buffers available in the SRI for use by the XBAR.

3.6.9 Display Refresh Flow Control Buffers

The Northbridge has a separate logical path from HyperTransport links to the system memory for display refresh requests. This is necessary to support the bandwidth and latency requirements of display refresh requests in systems where the display-refresh frame buffer is located in the system memory.

A HyperTransport packet is defined as a display-refresh request packet when the read request has isochronous bit, PassPW bit, and RspPassPW bit set, and coherent bit and SeqID cleared. All display-refresh requests are marked as high priority requests and will have higher priority than other requests. In order to accomplish a dedicated logical path to system memory a minimum number of buffers have to be allocated in various queues.

DispRefReq (Function 3, Offset 70h) and DispRefReq (Function 3, Offset 74h) need to be set to allocate the buffers for display refresh requests. At least one buffer should be allocated for display refresh requests to avoid deadlock. Usually more than one buffer may be required to support the necessary bandwidth. The buffer count written to the registers takes effect after a warm reset. See “SRI-to-XBAR Buffer Count Register” on page 111 and “XBAR-to-SRI Buffer Count Register” on page 113 for more information on setting these registers.

3.6.10 Power Management Control Registers

These registers specify the processor response to STPCLK and HALT power management events. Each STPCLK request received contains a 3-bit System Management Action Field (SMAF) which is used as an index into the Power Management Control Low/High registers to select a Power Management Mode (PMM) value to use for the duration of the STPCLK event. A SMAF value of 000 selects PMM0, a SMAF value of 001 selects PMM1, and so on. HALT is hardwired to use PMM7.

3.6.10.1 Power Management Mode (PMM) Value

The PMM value contains the following fields:

Bit	Name	Function	R/W
6–4	ClkSel	Clock Divisor Select	R/W
3	reserved		R

Bit	Name	Function	R/W
2	FidVidEn	FID/VID Change Enable	R/W
1	NBLowPwrEn	Northbridge Low Power Enable	R/W
0	CPULowPwrEn	CPU Low Power Enable	R/W

PMM Value Field Descriptions

Clock Divisor Select (ClkSel)—Bits 6–4. This field specifies the divisor to use when ramping down the CPU clock or the Northbridge clock.

000b = Divide by 8	100b = Divide by 128
001b = Divide by 16	101b = Divide by 256
010b = Divide by 32	110b = Divide by 512
011b = Divide by 64	111b = reserved

FID/VID Change Enable (FidVidEn)—Bit 2. Enables a change in Frequency ID (FID) and/or Voltage ID (VID). The CPU and the Northbridge clocks must also be ramped down (see NBLowPwrEn and CPULowPwrEn).

0 = FID/VID change disabled
1 = FID/VID change enabled

Northbridge Low Power Enable (NBLowPwrEn)—Bit 1. Causes the Northbridge clock to ramp down according to the clock divisor specified in ClkSel and puts the DRAM in self-refresh mode. The CPU clock must also be ramped down (see CPULowPwrEn)

0 = Northbridge low power disabled
1 = Northbridge low power enabled

CPU Low Power Enable (CPULowPwrEn)—Bit 0. Causes the CPU clock to ramp down according to the clock divisor specified in ClkSel.

0 = CPU low power disabled
1 = CPU low power enabled

3.6.10.2 Power Management Control Low Register

Power Management Control Low Register

Function 3: Offset 80h

31	30	24	23	22	16	15	14	8	7	6	0
reserved			reserved			reserved			reserved		
		PMM3					PMM1				PMM0

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31	reserved		R	0
30–24	PMM3	Power Management Mode 3	R/W	0
23	reserved		R	0
22–16	PMM2	Power Management Mode 2	R/W	0

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
15	reserved		R	0
14–8	PMM1	Power Management Mode 1	R/W	0
7	reserved		R	0
6–0	PMM0	Power Management Mode 0	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Power Management Mode 0 (PMM0)—Bits 6–0. See “Power Management Mode (PMM) Value” on page 115 for a description of these bits.

Power Management Mode 1 (PMM1)—Bits 14–8. See “Power Management Mode (PMM) Value” on page 115 for a description of these bits.

Power Management Mode 2 (PMM2)—Bits 22–16. See “Power Management Mode (PMM) Value” on page 115 for a description of these bits.

Power Management Mode 3 (PMM3)—Bits 30–24. See “Power Management Mode (PMM) Value” on page 115 for a description of these bits.

3.6.10.3 Power Management Control High Register

Power Management Control High Register

Function 3: Offset 84h

31	30	24	23	22	16	15	14	8	7	6	0
reserved		reserved			reserved			reserved			
	PMM7		PMM6			PMM5			PMM4		

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31	reserved		R	0
30–24	PMM7	Power Management Mode 7	R/W	0
23	reserved		R	0
22–16	PMM6	Power Management Mode 6	R/W	0
15	reserved		R	0
14–8	PMM5	Power Management Mode 5	R/W	0
7	reserved		R	0
6–0	PMM4	Power Management Mode 4	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Power Management Mode 4 (PMM4)—Bits 6–0. See “Power Management Mode (PMM) Value” on page 115 for a description of these bits.

Power Management Mode 5 (PMM5)—Bits 14–8. See “Power Management Mode (PMM) Value” on page 115 for a description of these bits.

Power Management Mode 6 (PMM6)—Bits 22–16. See “Power Management Mode (PMM) Value” on page 115 for a description of these bits.

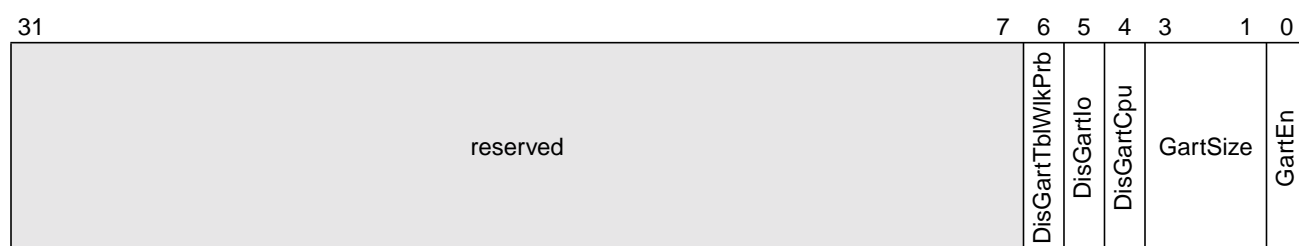
Power Management Mode 7 (PMM7)—Bits 30–24. See “Power Management Mode (PMM) Value” on page 115 for a description of these bits.

3.6.11 GART Aperture Control Register

This register contains the aperture size and enable for the graphics aperture relocation table (GART) mechanism.

GART Aperture Control Register

Function 3: Offset 90h



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–7	reserved		R	0
6	DisGartTblWikPrb	Disable GART Table Walk Probes	R/W	0
5	DisGartI/O	Disable GART I/O Accesses	R/W	0
4	DisGartCpu	Disable GART CPU Accesses	R/W	0
3–1	GartSize	GART Size	R/W	0
0	GartEn	GART Enable	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

GART Enable (GartEn)—Bit 0. Enables GART address translation for accesses falling within the GART aperture.

GART Size (GartSize)—Bits 3–1. Defines the virtual address space to be allocated to the GART.

- 000b = 32 Mbytes
- 001b = 64 Mbytes
- 010b = 128 Mbytes
- 011b = 256 Mbytes
- 100b = 512 Mbytes
- 101b = 1 Gbyte
- 110b = 2 Gbyte
- 111b = reserved

Disable GART CPU Accesses (DisGartCpu)—Bit 4. Disables requests from CPUs from accessing the GART.

Disable GART I/O Accesses (DisGartIo)—Bit 5. Disables requests from I/O devices from accessing the GART.

Disable GART Table Walk Probes (DisGartTblWlkPrb)—Bit 6. Disables generation of probes for GART table walks. This bit may be set to improve performance in cases where the GART table entries are in address space which is marked uncacheable in processor MTRRs or page tables. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

3.6.12 GART Aperture Base Register

This register contains the base address of the aperture for the graphics aperture relocation table (GART). The GART aperture base along with the GART aperture size define the GART aperture address window.

GART Aperture Base Register

Function 3: Offset 94h

31	15	14	0
reserved			GartAperBaseAddr[39:25]

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–15	reserved		R	0
14–0	GartAperBaseAddr[39:25]	GART Aperture Base Address Bits 39–25	R/W	X

“X” in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

GART Aperture Base Address Bits 39–25 (GartAperBaseAddr[39:25])—Bits 14–0. These bits are used to compare to the incoming addresses to determine if they are in the aperture range. They are active based on the aperture size. The remaining address bits are assumed to be 0.

[39:25] = 32 Mbytes

[39:26] = 64 Mbytes

[39:27] = 128 Mbytes

[39:28] = 256 Mbytes

[39:29] = 512 Mbytes

[39:30] = 1 Gbytes

[39:31] = 2 Gbytes

3.6.13 GART Table Base Register

This register contains the base address of the translation table for the graphics aperture relocation table (GART). The GART table base points to the base address of a table of 32-bit GART page table

entries (PTEs) that contain the physical addresses to use for an incoming address that falls within the GART aperture.

GART Table Base Register

Function 3: Offset 98h

31	4	3	0
GartTblBaseAddr[39:12]			reserved

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–4	GartTblBaseAddr[39:12]	GART Table Base Address Bits 39–12	R/W	X
3–0	reserved		R	0

“X” in the Reset column indicates that the field initializes to an undefined state after reset.

Field Descriptions

GART Table Base Address Bits 39–12 (GartTblBaseAddr[39:12])—Bits 31–4. These bits point to the base of the table of GART PTEs to be used for GART address translation. Table 23 shows the organization of each 32-bit PTE in the GART table.

Table 23. GART PTE Organization

Bits	Description
0	Valid
1	Coherent
3–2	reserved
11–4	PhysAddr[39:32]
31–12	PhysAddr[31:12]

3.6.14 GART Cache Control Register

This register controls the GART cache, which is used to cache the most recently translated GART aperture accesses. The GART cache is enabled automatically whenever the GART aperture is enabled.

GART Cache Control Register

Function 3: Offset 9Ch

31	2	1	0
reserved			GartPteErr InvGart

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–2	reserved		R	0
1	GartPteErr	GART PTE Error	R/WC	0
0	InvGart	Invalidate GART	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Invalidate GART (InvGart)—Bit 0. Setting this bit causes the GART cache to be invalidated. This bit is cleared by hardware when the invalidation is complete.

GART PTE Error (GartPteErr)—Bit 1. This bit is set when an invalid PTE is encountered during a table walk. Cleared by writing a 1.

3.6.15 Clock Power/Timing Low Register

This register controls the transition times between various voltage and frequency states. This register is persistent through a warm reset and is initialized to 0 on a cold reset.

Clock Power/Timing Low Register

Function 3: Offset D4h

31	16	15	11	10	8	7	6	4	3	2	0
LCIkPLLLock (19–4)					reserved		ClkRampHyst	reserved	SleepVIDCnt	reserved	GPE

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	LCIkPLLLock	HyperTransport CLK PLL Lock Counter Bits 19–4	R/W	0
15–11	reserved		R	0
10–8	ClkRampHyst	Clock Ramp Hysteresis	R/W	0
7	reserved		R	0
6–4	SleepVIDCnt	Time to Drive Sleep VID	R/W	0
3	reserved		R	0
2–0	GPE	Good Phase Error	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Good Phase Error (GPE)—Bits 2–0. This field defines the BCLK PLL time until good phase error. Counting occurs when at full frequency.

Revision B and earlier revision encodings are:

000b = 16 system clocks

001b = 400 system clocks

010b = 800 system clocks

011b = 1200 system clocks

100b = 1600 system clocks
101b = 2000 system clocks
110b = 2400 system clocks
111b = 4095 system clocks

Revision C encodings are:

000b = reserved
001b = 200 system clocks (1us)
010b = 400 system clocks (2us)
011b = 600 system clocks (3us)
100b = 800 system clocks (4us)
101b = 1600 system clocks (8us)
110b = 3000 system clocks (15us)
111b = 20000 system clocks (100us)

Time to Drive Sleep VID (SleepVIDCnt)—Bits 6–4. This field defines the delay time to Drive Sleep VID. This field indicates when all CPUs have ramped down GCLK/BCLK grids before swapping in the new VID. In a uniprocessor system or a multiprocessor system where each process controls its own voltage regulator, this field can be programmed to 000b. This counter clocks PLL system clocks (5ns).

000b = 0
001b = 200 system clocks
010b = 400 system clocks
011b = 600 system clocks
100b = 800 system clocks
101b = 10000 system clocks
110b = 100000 system clocks
111b = 200000 system clocks

Clock Ramp Hysteresis (ClkRampHyst)—Bits 10-8. A non-zero value in this field enables a hysteresis time which prevents the CPU clock grid from being ramped down after processing a probe. It avoids unnecessary changes of the CPU clock grid when the probe arrival rate is relatively low. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

000b = 0
001b = 125 ns
010b = 250 ns
011b = 375 ns
100b = 500 ns
101b = 750 ns
110b = 1000 ns
111b = 2000 ns

HyperTransport CLK PLL Lock Counter Bits 19–4 (LClkPLLLock)—Bits 31–16. This bit field indicates how long it takes for the slowest HyperTransport technology clock PLL to ramp to its new frequency and lock.

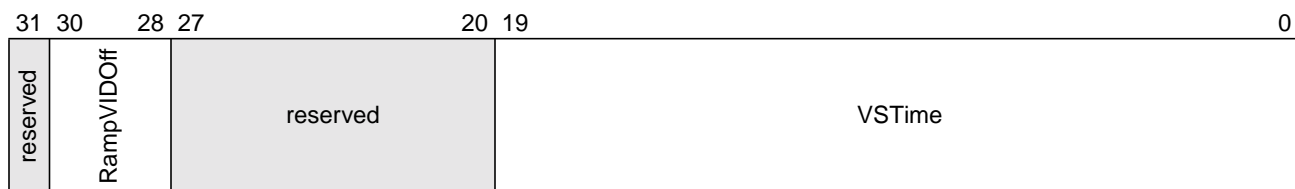
The 16 bits represent the most significant 16 bits of a 20-bit value. The number reflects the number of system bus clocks (5 ns) to wait. It is only necessary to wait a short amount of time in the event the frequency change is one that maintains the VCO frequency. In this case, the PLL will be re-locked quickly.

3.6.16 Clock Power/Timing High Register

This register controls the transition times between various voltage and frequency states. This register is persistent through a warm reset and is initialized to 0 on a cold reset.

Clock Power/Timing High Register

Function 3: Offset D8h



Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31	reserved		R	0
30–28	RampVIDOff	Ramp VID Offset	R/W	0
27–20	reserved		R	0
19–0	VSTime	Voltage Regulator Stabilization Time	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Voltage Regulator Stabilization Time (VSTime)—Bits 19–0. This field indicates when the voltage regulator is stable at the Ramp VID before ramping up the clocks. The count is the number of 5-ns system clock cycles.

Ramp VID Offset (RampVIDOff)—Bits 30–28. Defines the amount of extra voltage required while the PLL is ramping for low power states. This “over-voltage” is applied only until the PLL has phase locked to within specifications.

000b = 0 mV
 001b = 25 mV
 010b = 50 mV
 011b = 75 mV
 100b = 100 mV
 101b = 125 mV
 110b = 150 mV
 111b = 175 mV

3.6.17 HyperTransport™ FIFO Read Pointer Optimization Register

This register allows the separation of read/write pointers in the HyperTransport technology receive/transmit FIFOs to be changed from their default settings. This register is persistent through a warm reset and is initialized to 0 on a cold reset.

HyperTransport™ FIFO Read Pointer Optimization Register Function 3: Offset DCh

31	22	21	20	19	18	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	0
reserved				XmtRdPtrLdt2	reserved	RcvRdPtrLdt2	reserved	XmtRdPtrLdt1	reserved	RcvRdPtrLdt1	reserved	XmtRdPtrLdt0	reserved	RcvRdPtrLdt0	reserved	XmtRdPtrLdt0	reserved	RcvRdPtrLdt0	reserved	RcvRdPtrLdt0

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–22	reserved		R	0
21–20	XmtRdPtrLdt2	Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 2 Transmitter	R/W	0
19	reserved		R	0
18–16	RcvRdPtrLdt2	Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 2 Receiver	R/W	0
15–14	reserved		R	0
13–12	XmtRdPtrLdt1	Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 1 Transmitter	R/W	0
11	reserved		R	0
10–8	RcvRdPtrLdt1	Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 1 Receiver	R/W	0
7–6	reserved		R	0
5–4	XmtRdPtrLdt0	Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 0 Transmitter	R/W	0
3	reserved		R	0
2–0	RcvRdPtrLdt0	Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 0 Receiver	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 0 Receiver (RcvRdPtrLdt0)—Bits 2–0. See RcvRdPtrLdt2 for values.

Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 0 Transmitter (XmtRdPtrLdt0)—Bits 5–4. See XmtRdPtrLdt2 for values.

Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 1 Receiver (RcvRdPtrLdt1)—Bits 10–8. See RcvRdPtrLdt2 for values.

Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 1 Transmitter (XmtRdPtrLdt1)—Bits 13–12. See XmtRdPtrLdt2 for values.

Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 2 Receiver (RcvRdPtrLdt2)—Bits 18–16.

Moves the read pointer for the HyperTransport receive FIFO closer to the write pointer thereby reducing latency through the receiver.

000b = RdPtr assigned by hardware

001b = Move RdPtr closer to WrPtr by 1 HyperTransport clock period

010b = Move RdPtr closer to WrPtr by 2 HyperTransport clock periods

011b = Move RdPtr closer to WrPtr by 3 HyperTransport clock periods

100b = Move RdPtr closer to WrPtr by 4 HyperTransport clock periods

101b = Move RdPtr closer to WrPtr by 5 HyperTransport clock periods

110b = Move RdPtr closer to WrPtr by 6 HyperTransport clock periods

111b = Move RdPtr closer to WrPtr by 7 HyperTransport clock periods

Change Read Pointer For HyperTransport Link 2 Transmitter (XmtRdPtrLdt2)—Bits 21–20.

Moves the read pointer for the HyperTransport technology transmit FIFO closer to the write pointer thereby reducing latency through the transmitter.

00b = RdPtr assigned by hardware

01b = Move RdPtr closer to WrPtr by 1 HyperTransport clock period

10b = Move RdPtr closer to WrPtr by 2 HyperTransport clock periods

11b = Move RdPtr closer to WrPtr by 3 HyperTransport clock periods

3.6.18 Thermtrip Status Register

The Thermtrip Status register provides status information regarding the THERMTRIP thermal sensor.

Thermtrip Status Register

Function 3: Offset E4h

31	30	14	13	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SwThermtp	reserved											
DiodeOffset												
reserved												
ThermtpEn												
reserved												
ThermtpSense												
reserved												
Thermtp												
reserved												

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31	SwThermtp	Software Thermtrip	W	0
30–14	reserved		R	0
13–8	DiodeOffset	Diode Offset	R	
7-6	reserved		R	0
5	ThermtpEn	Thermtrip Enabled	R	
4	reserved		R	0
3	ThermtpSense	Thermtrip Sense	R	
2	reserved		R	0
1	Thermtp	Thermtrip	R	
0	reserved		R	0

Field Descriptions

Thermtrip (Thermtp)—Bit 1. Set to 1 if a temperature sensor trip occurs and was enabled.

Thermtrip Sense (ThermtpSense)—Bit 3. Set to 1 if a temperature sensor trip occurs.

Thermtrip Enabled (ThermtpEn)—Bit 5. Indicates that the thermtrip temperature sensor is enabled. When this bit is set to 1, a THERMTRIP High event will cause the hardware to shut down the PLL, assert the THERMTRIP output pin and set the ThermtpHi bit. The ThermtpSense bit is set for a THERMTRIP High event, irrespective of the state of ThermtpEn.

Diode Offset (DiodeOffset[5:0])—Bits 13–8. Thermal diode offset is used to correct temperature measurement made by an external temperature sensor. The offset is in 1 degree Celsius increments and it should be subtracted from the temperature measurement. The offset correction may be needed for some temperature sensors. Contact the temperature sensor vendor to determine whether the offset correction is needed. The offset reduces the maximum allowable temperature that can be measured by the temperature sensor. Extended range temperature sensors (≥ 163 degrees C) are recommended for that reason. The maximum allowable offset is provided in the appropriate processor data sheet, and the maximum offset can vary for different processors.

Software Thermtrip (SwThermtp)—Bit 31. Writing a 1 to this bit position induces a THERMTRIP event. This bit is write-only and returns 0 when read. This is a diagnostic bit, and it should be used for testing purposes only.

3.6.19 Northbridge Capabilities Register

The Northbridge Capabilities register indicates whether or not this Northbridge is capable of certain behavior.

Northbridge Capabilities Register

Function 3: Offset E8h

31	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
reserved	MemCntCap	reserved	DramFreq	ChipKillEccCap	EccCap	BigMPCap	MPCap	128BitCap		

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
31–9	reserved		R	0
8	MemCntCap	Memory Controller Capable	R	
7	reserved		R	0
6–5	DramFreq	Maximum DRAM Frequency	R	
4	ChipKillEccCap	Chip-Kill ECC Capable	R	
3	EccCap	ECC Capable	R	

Bits	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
2	BigMPCap	Big MP Capable	R	
1	MPCap	MP Capable	R	
0	128BitCap	128-Bit DRAM Capable	R	

Field Descriptions

128-Bit DRAM Capable (128BitCap)—Bit 0. This bit is set to 1 if the Northbridge is capable of supporting a 128-bit DRAM interface.

MP Capable (MPCap)—Bit 1. This bit is set to 1 if the Northbridge is capable of supporting multiprocessor systems.

Big MP Capable (BigMPCap)—Bit 2. This bit is set to 1 if the Northbridge is capable of supporting multiprocessor systems greater than DP.

ECC Capable (EccCap)—Bit 3. This bit is set to 1 if the Northbridge is capable of supporting ECC.

Chip-Kill ECC Capable (ChipKillEccCap)—Bit 4. This bit is set to 1 if the Northbridge is capable of supporting chip-kill ECC.

Maximum DRAM Frequency (DramFreq)—Bit 6–5. Indicates the maximum DRAM frequency supported.

00b = No limit

01b = 166 MHz

10b = 133 MHz

11b = 100 MHz

Memory Controller Capable (MemCntCap)—Bit 8. This bit is set to 1 if the Northbridge is capable of supporting an on-chip memory controller.

4 DRAM Configuration

The DRAM interface controller supports the following programmable features:

- AMD Opteron™ processor 900+ package pin devices (64-bit or 128-bit interface).
- AMD Athlon™ 64 processor 700+ package pin devices (only 64-bit interface); up to three unbuffered DIMMs or up to four registered DIMMs. Refer to the processor data sheet for restrictions with unbuffered 3-DIMM support.
- 100 MHz (DDR200), 133 MHz (DDR266), 166 MHz (DDR333), and 200 MHz (DDR400) devices.
- 4-bit, 8-bit, and 16-bit DRAM devices; systems in which the DIMMs have different widths.
- DIMM sizes from 32 Mbytes (64 Mbit x 16) to 2 Gbytes (1 Gbit x 4)
- Interleaving memory within DIMMs.
- Stacked registered DIMMs and angled DIMMs.
- ECC checking.
- 32-byte and 64-byte burst lengths.
- The DRAM controller may be disabled.
- Statically configurable control over the time a page is allowed to remain open while idle.
- Optional dynamic control of page closure.
- Mode to control the on-chip DLL and programmable delay lines.

The DRAM controller does not make use of every feature that DRAM devices implement. The following list is the set of features *not* supported by the DRAM controller.

- Burst terminate command is not used (nor are bursts terminated by any other means).
- Auto precharge command is not used.
- Active or precharge power down is not supported (self-refresh mode or other processor power down states are used to reduce power).
- Data masking is supported only on Revision C processors and later.
- The two DIMMs making up the 128-bit-wide data bus must be of the same size and configuration.

4.1 Programming Interface

The purpose of this section describes how to program the various DRAM controller registers. There are two principal areas of configuration:

- Configuration state information obtained via the DIMM Serial Presence Detect (SPD) ROMs.
- All other configuration state information.

4.1.1 SPD ROM-Based Configuration

The SPD device is an EEPROM on the DIMM encoded by the DIMM manufacturer. The description of the EEPROM is usually provided on a data sheet for the DIMM itself along with data describing the memory devices used. The data describes configuration and speed characteristics of the DIMM and the SDRAM components mounted on the DIMM. The data sheet also contains the DIMM byte values that are encoded in the SPD on the DIMM.

BIOS acquires the values encoded in the SPD ROM through the I/O hub, which obtains the information through a secondary device connected to the I/O hub through the SMBus. This secondary device communicates with the DIMM by means of the I²C bus.

The SPD ROM provides values for several DRAM timing parameters that are required by the DRAM controller. These parameters are:

- tCL: (CAS latency)
- tRC: Active-to-Active/Auto Refresh command period
- tRFC: Auto-Refresh-to-Active/Auto Refresh command period
- tRCD: Active-to-Read-or-Write delay
- tRRD: Active-Bank-A to-Active-Bank-B delay
- tRAS: Active-to-Precharge delay
- tRP: Precharge time
- tREF: Refresh interval (function of DRAM density)

4.1.1.1 tCL (CAS Latency)

The number of clocks after the read CAS_L that a DRAM returns read data, depends on the frequency of the clock. The value that BIOS ultimately programs into the memory controller is a direct function of the target clock frequency. The following discussion assumes that the target clock frequency is not hardcoded into the BIOS, but is determined by examining the supported CAS latencies at given clock frequencies of each DIMM. A suggested algorithm is as follows:

1. Determine all of the CAS latencies supported by each of the installed DIMMs. This is accomplished by reading byte 18 of the SPD ROM. Typically, all DDR DIMMs will support CAS

latencies of 2 and 2.5. Some DDR DIMMs may support CAS latencies of 3. The DRAM controller is designed to support all of these CAS latencies.

2. Determine the maximum clock frequency at each CAS latency for each DIMM.
 - a. Start with the highest CAS latency from step 1.
 - b. Determine the minimum cycle time supported by reading byte 9 of the SPD.
 - c. Take the highest CAS latency from step 1 and subtract 0.5.
 - d. Determine the minimum cycle time supported for this CAS latency by reading byte 23 of the SPD.
 - e. Take the highest CAS latency from step 1 and subtract 1.
 - f. Determine the minimum cycle time supported for this CAS latency by reading byte 25 of the SPD.
3. Determine which CAS latency and clock frequency combination is best for all DIMMs.

The goal is to program the interface for the highest frequency supported by the slowest DIMM in the system. Find the highest clock frequency supported by the slowest DIMM and check the CAS latencies at that operating frequency for that clock frequency. It is necessary to choose the highest CAS latency supported by all the DIMMs at the target frequency.

The processor also provides silicon fuses that limit the frequency of the DRAM clock. BIOS can read this information from the Northbridge Capabilities register (function 3:offset E8h[6–5]). BIOS needs to assume that the highest supported frequency is given by the slowest DIMM or the MaxDramFreq fuses, whichever is lower.

Other details:

- The SPD ROM allows the manufacturer to specify cycle time granularity of a tenth of a nanosecond. The BIOS should consider this when mapping the cycle time into a supported clock frequency such as 100, 133, 166, and 200 MHz.
- The SPD ROM allows the manufacturer to indicate support for CAS latency 3.5. This is not supported by the DRAM controller and should be discarded.
- There is a possibility that the result of the search yields two choices: a 166 MHz tCL = 3 configuration or a 133 MHz tCL = 2 configuration. The above algorithm would result in selecting the 166 MHz configuration, but it is known through performance analysis that this is not the best choice. So whenever the higher frequency is tCL = 1 greater than the next lowest frequency, BIOS should select the lower frequency. If the difference is only tCL = 0.5 greater than the next lowest frequency, then the higher frequency should be selected.

4.1.1.2 tRCD (RAS-to-CAS Delay)

This parameter is defined in SPD byte 29 and it has 1/4ns granularity. BIOS should read and convert this value into a number of DRAM clocks using the target frequency obtained in “tCL (CAS Latency)” on page 130. Typically, this value is 48h for DDR333, which maps to 18 ns or 3 clocks.

4.1.1.3 tRAS (Active-to-Precharge Delay)

This parameter is defined in SPD byte 30 and it has 1-ns granularity. BIOS should read and convert this value into a number of DRAM clocks using the target frequency obtained in “tCL (CAS Latency)” on page 130. Typically, this value is 2Ah for DDR333, which maps to 42 ns or 7 clocks.

4.1.1.4 tRP (Precharge Command Period)

This parameter is defined in SPD byte 27 and it has 1/4-ns granularity. BIOS should read and convert this value into a number of DRAM clocks using the target frequency obtained in “tCL (CAS Latency)” on page 130. Typically, this value is 48h for DDR333, which maps to 18 ns or 3 clocks.

4.1.1.5 tRC (Active-to-Active/Auto-Refresh Command Period)

This parameter is defined in SPD byte 41 and it has 1-ns granularity. BIOS should read and convert this value into a number of DRAM clocks using the target frequency obtained in “tCL (CAS Latency)” on page 130. Typically, this value is 3Ch for DDR333, which maps to 60 ns or 10 clocks.

Some DIMMs may not include the tRC value in byte 41. In this case, BIOS will read either 00h or FFh from the ROM and it should do the following:

- At 100 MHz, tRC is assumed to be 46h, which maps to 70 ns or 7 clocks.
- At 133 MHz, tRC is assumed to be 41h, which maps to 65 ns or 9 clocks.
- At 166 MHz, tRC is assumed to be 3Ch, which maps to 60 ns or 10 clocks.
- At 200 MHz, tRC is assumed to be 37h, which maps to 55 ns or 11 clocks.

4.1.1.6 tRRD (Active-to-Active of a Different Bank)

This parameter is defined in SPD byte 28 and it has 1/4-ns granularity. BIOS should read this value and convert into a number of DRAM clocks using the target frequency obtained in “tCL (CAS Latency)” on page 130. Typically, this value is 30h for DDR333, which maps to 12 ns or 2 clocks.

4.1.1.7 tRFC (Auto-Refresh-to-Active/Auto-Refresh Command Period)

This parameter is defined in SPD byte 42 and it has 1-ns granularity. BIOS should read and convert this value into a number of DRAM clocks using the target frequency obtained in “tCL (CAS Latency)” on page 130. Typically, this value is 48h for DDR333 DRAMs between 64-Mbit and 512-Mbit and 78h for DDR333 1-Gbit DRAMS.

Some DIMMs may not include the tRFC value in byte 42. In this case, BIOS will read either 00h or FFh from the ROM and it should do the following:

- At 100 MHz, tRFC is assumed to be 50h, which maps to 80 ns or 8 clocks.
- At 133 MHz, tRFC is assumed to be 4Bh, which maps to 75 ns or 10 clocks.

- At 166 MHz, tRFC is assumed to be 48h, which maps to 72 ns or 12 clocks for 512-Mbit devices or smaller. For 1-Gbit devices, it is assumed to be 78h, which maps to 120 ns or 20 clocks.
- At 200 MHz, tRFC is assumed to be 46h, which maps to 70 ns or 14 clocks for 512-Mbit or smaller devices. For 1-Gbit devices, it is assumed to be 78h, which maps to 120 ns or 24 clocks.

4.1.1.8 tREF (Refresh Rate)

The tREF is not an SPD ROM parameter but a field that the DRAM controller requires and that can be obtained from several bytes in the SPD ROM. Typically, the entire DRAM must have every row refreshed at least once every 64 ms. The average time between two row refreshes is thus based on the number of rows in the DRAM and the clock frequency.

The clock frequency was previously derived. The number of rows in the implementation can be read from byte 3 of the ROM. This provides the number of row address bits for each of the two possible chip selects on a DIMM. (Note that each chip-select range of a two chip-select DIMM uses devices that have the same number of rows). A design with 12 row address bits implies 4k rows per internal device chip select. This maps to a refresh every 15.6 μ s on average. There are also 8k (13 row address bits) and 16k (14 row address bits) row devices. By knowing the number of rows and the frequency, the DRAM controller configuration register can be correctly programmed. All 4k row devices require an average refresh interval of 15.6 μ s and all 8k and 16k row devices require a 7.8 μ s average refresh interval.

4.1.1.9 Registered or Unbuffered DIMMs

Byte 21, bit 1, of the ROM indicates whether the DIMM registers the address and commands or not. An AMD Opteron™ processor only supports registered DIMMs and AMD Athlon™ 64 processor can support either. The AMD Athlon™ 64 processor cannot support systems in which the DIMMs are of mixed type.

4.1.1.10 DIMM Chip Select Density

The size of a DIMM module chip-select range can be obtained directly from the SPD ROM.

Byte 5 of the SPD ROM indicates whether the DIMM is composed of one or two chip selects. Byte 31 indicates the size of the chip-select range or ranges on the DIMM (from 32 Mbyte to 2 Gbyte). See the SPD ROM specification for the encoding.

Note: *If the DIMM uses two chip selects, then each chip-select range is the same size.*

4.1.2 DIMM ECC Enable

Byte 11 of the ROM indicates whether the DIMM supports ECC bits. A value of 02h indicates that ECC is supported for all chip-select banks on the DIMM.

4.1.2.1 x4 DIMMs

The DRAM device width is largely inconsequential to the controller except when they are x4 devices. The width of the devices on the DIMM is determined by the value of byte 13 of the ROM. If the DIMM implements two chip-select banks, then each chip-select bank uses devices of the same width. See the SPD ROM specification for the encoding.

4.1.3 Non-SPD ROM-Based Configuration

Many other bit fields are also required by the DRAM controller configuration registers, but these values cannot be obtained from the SPD ROM. In many cases, these values will be hardcoded into the BIOS, but in others they are functions of other bit values. This section describes how BIOS programs each non-SPD related field that is not hardcoded.

4.1.3.1 Twr (Write Recovery)

This is a true DRAM device timing parameter but it is not included in the SPD ROM. Therefore, it will be hardcoded based on the DDR200, DDR266, DDR333, and DDR400 AC specification, as follows:

- DDR200, DDR266: Twr is 2 clocks.
- DDR333, DDR400: Twr is 3 clocks.

4.1.3.2 Trwt

This field ensures read-to-write data-bus turnaround. This field is a function of CAS latency and clock frequency. It is also a function of the asynchronous round-trip loop delay for each of the systems shown in Table 24.

Table 24. Trwt Values

CAS Latency	System	Number of Clocks			
		200 MHz	166 MHz	133 MHz	100 MHz
CL = 2	AMD Opteron™	N/A	3	2	2
	AMD Athlon™ 64 (registered DIMMS)	N/A	2	2	2
	AMD Athlon™ 64 (unbuffered DIMMS)	3	3	3	3
CL = 2.5	AMD Opteron™	N/A	3	3	3
	AMD Athlon™ 64 (registered DIMMS)	N/A	3	3	3
	AMD Athlon™ 64 (unbuffered DIMMS)	4	4	4	4
CL = 3	AMD Opteron™	N/A	4	3	3
	AMD Athlon™ 64 (registered DIMMS)	N/A	3	3	3
	AMD Athlon™ 64 (unbuffered DIMMS)	4	4	4	4

4.1.3.3 Twcl (Write CAS Latency)

If the DIMM is registered, the write CAS latency is two clocks. If the DIMM is unbuffered, then write CAS latency is one clock.

4.1.3.4 Maximum Asynchronous Latency

AsyncLat field should be set to 9 ns for registered DIMM systems with DDR266 8-DIMM configuration, and to 8 ns for all other registered DIMM systems. AsyncLat field should be set to 7 ns for unbuffered systems with 3 DIMMs, and to 6 ns for all other unbuffered DIMM systems.

4.1.3.5 Read Preamble Time

The Read Preamble time is a function of the asynchronous round trip loop latency, the clock frequency, DIMM type and process type.

Table 25. RdPreamble Values

	200 MHz	166 MHz	133 MHz	100 MHz
Registered DIMM slots	N/A	7.5 ns	8 ns	9 ns
Unbuffered 1 or 2 DIMM slots ¹	5 ns	6 ns	7 ns	9 ns
Unbuffered 3 DIMM slots ¹	7 ns	9 ns	11 ns	14 ns
Notes: 1. The values for RdPreamble must be set based on the number of DIMM slots, independent of the number of DIMMs actually populated. This allows the memory controller to compensate for worst-case round-trip delay from DIMMs in the farthest slot.				

4.1.3.6 Memory Clock Enable

DRAM clocks must be enabled via BIOS. There are four clock enable bits which correspond on a one-to-one basis with the DIMMs (i.e., if DIMM0 is populated, memory clock 0 must be enabled).

DRAM clocks are grouped according to the requirements for unbuffered or registered DIMMs. For example, when MC0_EN is set to enable DIMM 0 in an unbuffered DIMMs configuration, the memory controller will drive three clock pairs to DIMM 0. In a registered DIMM configuration a single clock pair is driven to each enabled DIMM.

In DIMM configurations that have two DIMM sockets connected to the same command/address bus (as in SODIMM configurations), but have different clock pairs routed to each of the DIMMs, BIOS must enable both sets of clocks even if the DIMM 0 slot is unpopulated. For example, in an SODIMM configuration with two DIMM slots, BIOS should set both MC0_EN and MC1_EN even if only DIMM 1 is populated. This is required in order to guarantee proper operation.

4.1.4 Base Address and Mask Registers

BIOS sets up the base address and base mask registers after determining the number of populated DIMMs, how many chip-select banks they have, and their sizes. The controller uses these registers to map an address into one of a maximum eight chip selects. A single base address and mask are initialized for each chip select.

The base address and base mask registers are used by BIOS to assign regions of memory to each DIMM. Hardware decodes addresses and determines to which DIMM chip-select range the address maps, as a function of the base address and mask. The base address register allows for a base address as low as 32 Mbyte (the smallest DIMM chip-select bank supported). The base mask qualifies the base address to point to a larger hole in memory for DIMM chip-select ranges greater than 32 Mbyte. The largest DIMM chip-select range supported is 2 Gbyte.

Note: *It is important that BIOS assign the largest DIMM chip-select range to the lowest address. As addresses increase, the chip-select bank size either stays constant or decreases. This is necessary to keep DIMM chip-select banks on aligned address boundaries as chip-select banks with different depths are added. Otherwise, the masking scheme will not work.*

An algorithm will not be reproduced here, but an example is shown for clarification:

- DIMM0 is 2-sided and uses 128Mbit x8 DRAMs (total DIMM0 memory: 256 Mbyte)
- DIMM1 is 2-sided and uses 256Mbit x8 DRAMs (total DIMM1 memory: 512 Mbyte)
- DIMM2 is 2-sided and uses 64Mbit x8 DRAMs (total DIMM2 memory: 128 Mbyte)
- DIMM3 is 2-sided and uses 128Mbyte x8 DRAMs (total DIMM3 memory: 256 Mbyte)

Because two of the DIMMs are the same size, there are two different ways to program the base address and base mask registers. Here is one way:

```
BaseAddrReg[7][31:0] = 0380_0001h // 896-Mbyte base to 1024 Mbytes-1
BaseAddrReg[6][31:0] = 0300_0001h // 768-Mbyte base to 896 Mbytes-1
BaseAddrReg[5][31:0] = 0440_0001h // 1088-Mbyte base to 1152 Mbytes-1
BaseAddrReg[4][31:0] = 0400_0001h // 1024-Mbyte base to 1088 Mbytes-1
BaseAddrReg[3][31:0] = 0100_0001h // 256-Mbyte base to 512 Mbytes-1
BaseAddrReg[2][31:0] = 0000_0001h // 0-Mbyte base to 256 Mbytes-1
BaseAddrReg[1][31:0] = 0280_0001h // 640-Mbyte base to 768 Mbytes-1
BaseAddrReg[0][31:0] = 0200_0001h // 512-Mbit base to 640 Mbytes-1
BaseMaskReg[7][31:0] = 0060_FE00h
BaseMaskReg[6][31:0] = 0060_FE00h
```



```
BaseMaskReg[5][31:0] = 0020_FE00h
```

```
BaseMaskReg[4][31:0] = 0020_FE00h
```

```
BaseMaskReg[3][31:0] = 00E0_FE00h
```

```
BaseMaskReg[2][31:0] = 00E0_FE00h
```

```
BaseMaskReg[1][31:0] = 0060_FE00h
```

```
BaseMaskReg[0][31:0] = 0060_FE00h
```

Two memory interleaving examples are presented.

Example 1. Single 2-sided DIMM with 256MB per side

```
BaseAddrReg[0][31:0]=$0000_0001 // 0MB base
```

```
BaseAddrReg[1][31:0]=$0000_0801 // 0MB+32KB base
```

```
BaseMaskReg[0][31:0]=$01e0_f600 // unmask PA[15], bit 11, mask PA[28], bit 24
```

```
BaseMaskReg[1][31:0]=$01e0_f600 // unmask PA[15], bit 11, mask PA[28], bit 24
```

Example 2. Two 2-sided DIMMs, each chip select with 256MB

```
BaseAddrReg[0][31:0]=$0000_0001 // 0MB base
```

```
BaseAddrReg[1][31:0]=$0000_0801 // 0MB+32KB base
```

```
BaseAddrReg[2][31:0]=$0000_1001 // 0MB+64KB base
```

```
BaseAddrReg[3][31:0]=$0000_1801 // 0MB+96KB base
```

```
BaseMaskReg[0][31:0]=$03e0_e600 // unmask PA[16:15], mask PA[29:28]
```

```
BaseMaskReg[1][31:0]=$03e0_e600 // unmask PA[16:15], mask PA[29:28]
```

```
BaseMaskReg[2][31:0]=$03e0_e600 // unmask PA[16:15], mask PA[29:28]
```

```
BaseMaskReg[3][31:0]=$03e0_e600 // unmask PA[16:15], mask PA[29:28]
```

4.1.4.1 Chip-Select Bank Addressing Register

This register indicates which address map is used (as described in “Function 1—Address Map” on page 53). It is only a function of DIMM chip-select bank size.

4.1.5 DRAM Initialization

Some DRAM configuration fields must be programmed in a specific order. BIOS must set `DramConfigRegLo[8]` last to start DRAM initialization after a cold reset not associated with suspend to RAM mode. BIOS must set `DramConfigRegLo[12]` and `DramConfigRegLo[13]` last to exit self-refresh mode after a cold reset associated with suspend to RAM mode. BIOS should not assert

LDTSTOP_L to change HyperTransport™ link width and frequency while DramConfigRegLo[8] or DramConfigRegLo[12] are set.

For Revision C, BIOS must guarantee a delay between setting DramConfigRegHi[25] and setting DramConfigRegLo[12] and DramConfigRegLo[13] when resuming from suspend to RAM mode. The required delay is 110us for registered DIMMs and 10us for unbuffered DIMMs. Both DIMM types require 10us for memory clock stabilization time. Additional 100us required for registered DIMMs is for DIMM PLL stabilization time.

4.1.6 DRAM Configuration

This section shows in a quick reference format how each DRAM controller configuration register should be programmed.

BaseAddrReg[7:0][31:0] = See “Base Address and Mask Registers” on page 136.

BaseMaskReg[7:0][31:0] = See “Base Address and Mask Registers” on page 136.

BankAddrReg[31:0] = See “Chip-Select Bank Addressing Register” on page 137.

DramTimingRegLo[28] = tWR = See “Twr (Write Recovery)” on page 134.

DramTimingRegLo[26:24] = tRP[2:0] = See “tRP (Precharge Command Period)” on page 132.

DramTimingRegLo[23:20] = tRAS[3:0] = See “tRAS (Active-to-Precharge Delay)” on page 132.

DramTimingRegLo[18:16] = tRRD[2:0] = See “tRRD (Active-to-Active of a Different Bank)” on page 132.

DramTimingRegLo[14:12] = tRCD[2:0] = See “tRCD (RAS-to-CAS Delay)” on page 131.

DramTimingRegLo[11:8] = tRFC[3:0] = See “tRFC (Auto-Refresh-to-Active/Auto-Refresh Command Period)” on page 132.

DramTimingRegLo[7:4] = tRC[3:0] = See “tRC (Active-to-Active/Auto-Refresh Command Period)” on page 132.

DramTimingRegLo[2:0] = tCL[2:0] = See “tCL (CAS Latency)” on page 130.

DramTimingRegHi[22:20] = tWCL[2:0] = See “Twcl (Write CAS Latency)” on page 135.

DramTimingRegHi[12:8] = tREF[4:0] = See “tREF (Refresh Rate)” on page 133.

DramTimingRegHi[6:4] = tRWT[2:0] = See “Trwt” on page 134.

DramTimingRegHi[0] = tWTR = 0h

DramConfigRegLo[27:25] = BypMax[2:0] = 4h

DramConfigRegLo[24] = DisInRcvrs = 0h¹

DramConfigRegLo[23:20] = x4DIMMs[3:0] = See “x4 DIMMs” on page 134.

DramConfigRegLo[19] = 32ByteEn = 0h²

DramConfigRegLo[18] = UnBuffDimm = See “Registered or Unbuffered DIMMs” on page 133.

DramConfigRegLo[17] = DimmEccEn = See “DIMM ECC Enable,”.

DramConfigRegLo[16] = 128/64 = 0h³

DramConfigRegLo[15:14] = RdWrQByP = 2h

DramConfigRegLo[13] = SelfRefStat = 0

DramConfigRegLo[12] = ExitSelfRef = 0h

DramConfigRegLo[8] = DramInit = 1h

DramConfigRegLo[2] = QFCEn = 0h

DramConfigRegLo[1] = DrvEn = 0h

DramConfigRegLo[0] = DllDis = 0h

DramConfigRegHi[29:26] = EnMemClk[3:0] = See “Memory Clock Enable” on page 135.

DramConfigRegHi[25] = MemClkRatioVal = 1h

DramConfigRegHi[22:20] = MemClk[2:0] = See “tCL (CAS Latency)” on page 130.

DramConfigRegHi[19] = DynIdleCtrEn = 1h

DramConfigRegHi[18:16] = IdleCycLimit[2:0] = 3h

DramConfigRegHi[11:8] = RdPreamble[3:0] = See “Read Preamble Time” on page 135.

DramConfigRegHo[3:0] = AsyncLat[3:0] = See “Maximum Asynchronous Latency” on page 135.

DramDelayLineLo[31:0] = 0000_0000h

ScrubControl[31:0] = DramScrubAddrHi[31:0] = DramScrubAddrLo[31:0] = 0000_0000h

Notes:

1. Some AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processor-based systems might not use the DRAM controller. In these systems, it is preferable to disable DRAM input receivers and output drivers and to leave input receivers unconnected. This bit should be set in such systems.
2. This bit should be set for 64-bit interfaces (when DramConfigRegLo[16] is cleared), to enable 32-byte accesses, and cleared for 128-bit interfaces. This bit must be cleared when DramConfigRegLo[16] is set.
3. This bit should be cleared for 64-bit interfaces and set for 128-bit interfaces. The value of this bit is a function of the system design and cannot be determined via the SPD ROM. This value is thus hardcoded into the BIOS. AMD Athlon™ 64 systems must have this bit cleared.

5 Machine Check Architecture

The AMD Athlon™ 64 processor and AMD Opteron™ processor machine check mechanism allows the processor to detect and report a variety of hardware (or machine) errors found when reading and writing data, probing, cache-line fills and writebacks. These include parity errors associated with caches and TLBs, ECC errors associated with caches and DRAM, as well as system bus errors associated with reading and writing to the external bus.

Software can enable the processor to report machine check errors through the machine check exception (See “#MC—Machine Check Exception” in *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 2: System Programming*). Most machine check exceptions do not allow reliable restarting of the interrupted programs. However, error conditions are logged in a set of model-specific registers (MSRs) that can be used by system software to determine the possible source of a hardware problem.

5.1 Determining Machine Check Support

The availability of machine check registers and support of the machine check exception is implementation dependent. System software executes the CPUID instruction to determine whether a processor implements these features. After CPUID is executed, the values of the machine check architecture (MCA) bit and the machine check exception (MCE) bit loaded in the EDX register indicate whether the processor implements the machine check registers and the machine check exception, respectively. See “Processor Feature Identification” in *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 2: System Programming*, and “CPUID” in *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 3: General Purpose and System Instructions*, for further information on the level of machine check support.

Once system software determines that the machine check registers are available, it must determine the extent of processor support for the machine check mechanism. This is accomplished by reading the machine check capabilities register (MCG_CAP). See “Machine Check Global Capabilities Register” in *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 2: System Programming*, for more information on the interpretation of the MCG_CAP contents.

5.2 Machine Check Errors

Machine check errors are either recoverable or irrecoverable. Recoverable errors are those that the processor can correct and, thus, do not raise the machine check exception (#MC). However, the error is still logged in the machine check MSRs and it is the responsibility of the system software to periodically poll the machine check MSRs to determine if recoverable errors have occurred. If a recoverable error has been logged in the machine check MSRs, a second recoverable error can overwrite it.

Irrecoverable, or fatal, machine check errors cannot be corrected by the processor. If machine check is enabled, they raise the machine check exception (#MC). If an irrecoverable error has been logged in the machine check MSRs, a second recoverable or irrecoverable MCA error will not overwrite it but will set a bit that indicates overflow.

In the case of both recoverable and irrecoverable MCA errors, the contents of the machine check MSRs are maintained through a warm reset. This is helpful since in some cases it may not be possible to invoke the machine check handler due to the error and this allows the BIOS or other system boot software to recover and report the information associated with the error.

5.2.1 Sources of Machine Check Errors

The processor can detect errors from the following hardware blocks within the processor. Each block forms an error reporting bank for the purpose of reporting machine check errors.

- Data cache unit (DC)—Includes the cache structures that hold data and tags, the data TLBs, and the data cache probing logic.
- Instruction cache unit (IC)—Includes the instruction cache structures that hold instructions and tags, the instruction TLBs, and the instruction cache probing logic.
- Bus unit (BU)—Includes the system bus interface to the Northbridge and the level 2 cache.
- Load/store unit (LS)—Includes logic used to manage loads and stores.
- Northbridge unit (NB)—Includes the Northbridge and DRAM controller.

A scrubber is associated with the data cache in DC, the L2 cache tag array in bus unit, and the DRAM in the Northbridge. A scrubber is a hardware widget that periodically wakes up during idle cache cycles and inspects the next line of the array with which it is associated to look for errors. If it finds a single bit ECC error, the scrubber corrects the error and prevents a regular access from encountering the same error. This is important in the data cache, since all ECC errors encountered during regular operation in the data cache are fatal. In the bus unit and the Northbridge, this scrubber function also saves the additional time it would take to fix single-bit ECC errors when they are encountered during normal operation.

Table 26 on page 143 shows the various sources of machine check errors that can be encountered in the processor. ECC check on the linefill data for IC data is done by the DC unit. However, the ECC error is reported by IC which is the unit responsible for receiving the data. The data cache is protected by ECC; however single bit ECC errors encountered by normal load and store accesses are not corrected. When the data cache scrubber encounters a single-bit ECC error, it corrects it.

Table 26. Sources of Machine Check Errors

Unit	Error Source	Type of Check	Recoverable
DC	System line fill into the data cache	ECC	Yes—if single bit error
	L2 cache line fill into the data cache		No—if multiple bit error
	Cache data—data array		Yes—if single bit ECC error found by the scrubber No—otherwise
	Cache data—snoop tag array	Parity	No
	Cache data—tag array		No
	L1 Data TLB—physical and virtual arrays		No
	L2 Data TLB—physical and virtual arrays		No
IC	System line fill into the instruction cache	ECC	Yes—single bit error
	L2 cache line fill into the instruction cache		No—multiple bit error
	Instruction cache—data array	Parity	Yes
	Instruction cache—tag array		Yes
	Instruction cache—snoop tag array		No
	L1 Instruction TLB—physical and virtual arrays		Yes
	L2 Instruction TLB—physical and virtual arrays		Yes
	System address out of range		No, but detection is precise
BU	L2 cache data array	ECC	Yes—if single bit error
	L2 cache—tag array (during scrubs)		Yes—if multiple bit error
	L2 cache—tag array	Parity	No
	System Address Out-of-Range	Read Data	No
LS	System Address Out-of-Range	Read Data	No. Loads are detected precisely and stores are detected imprecisely.
NB	See “Machine Check Architecture Registers” on page 143 for information on North-bridge machine check errors.		

5.3 Machine Check Architecture Registers

The processor architecture defines a set of model-specific registers (MSRs) to support the MCA mechanism. They are used to configure the MCA functions and provide a way for the hardware to report errors in a manner compatible with the machine check architecture. These registers include the global MCA registers used to set up machine checks and additional banks of MSRs for recording errors that are detected by the hardware blocks listed in “Sources of Machine Check Errors” on

page 142. They can be read and written using the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions. The following is a complete list of MCA MSRs.

- Global status and control registers
 - Machine check capabilities MSR (MCG_CAP)
 - Processor status MSR (MCG_STATUS)
 - Exception reporting control MSR (MCG_CTL)
- Each error reporting bank (associated with a specific hardware block listed in “Sources of Machine Check Errors” on page 142) contains the following registers:
 - Error reporting control register (MCi_CTL)
 - Error reporting status register (MCi_STATUS)
 - Error reporting address register (MCi_ADDR)
 - Machine check miscellaneous error information register (MCi_MISC)

The *i* in each register name corresponds to the number of a supported register bank. Each error-reporting register bank is associated with a specific processor unit (or group of processor units). The number of error-reporting register banks is implementation-specific.

Software reads the MCG_CAP register to determine the number of supported register banks. The AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors support five banks. The first error-reporting register (MC0_CTL) always starts with MSR address 400h, followed by MC0_STATUS (401h), MC0_ADDR (402h), and MC0_MISC (403h). Error-reporting-register MSR addresses are assigned sequentially through the remaining supported register banks. Using this information, software can access all error-reporting registers in an implementation-independent manner.

Note that the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors do not support the miscellaneous error information register (MCi_MISC).

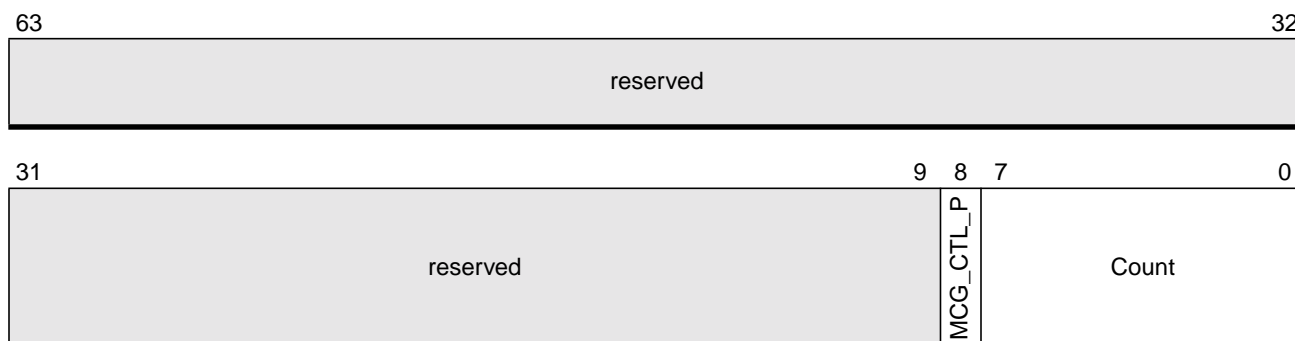
The global machine check registers as well as the generic form of each register in the error reporting banks are now described. The specifics of each error reporting bank will be described in “Error Reporting Banks” on page 150.

5.3.1 Global Machine Check Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)

The global MSRs supported by the machine check mechanism include the MCG_CAP, the MCG_STATUS and the MCG_CTL registers.

5.3.1.1 MCG_CAP—Global Machine Check Capabilities Register

This read-only register indicates the capabilities of the processor machine check architecture. Attempting to write to this register will result in a #GP exception. See *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 2: System Programming*, for more details.

MCG_CAP Register**MSR 0179h**

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63–9	reserved			0
8	MCG_CTL_P	MCG_CTL Register Present	R	1
7–0	Count	Count	R	05h

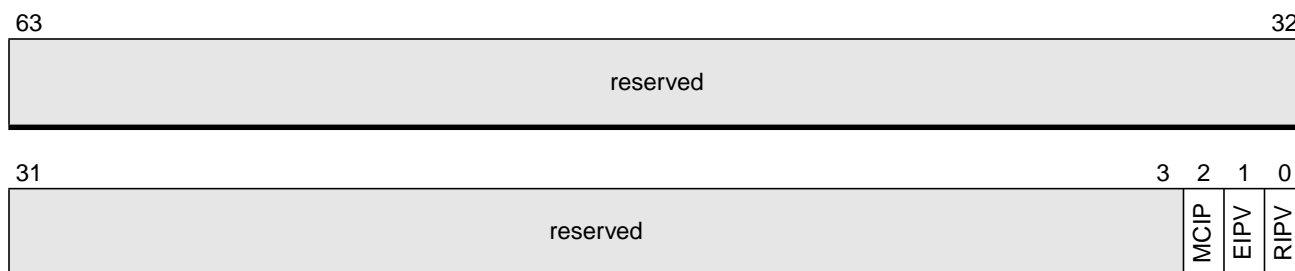
Field Descriptions

Count (Count)—Bits 7–0. Number of error-reporting banks supported by the processor implementation.

MCG_CTL Register Present (MCG_CTL_P)—Bit 8. Indicates if the MCG_CTL register is present. When the bit is set to 1, the register is supported. When the bit is cleared to 0, the register is unsupported.

5.3.1.2 MCG_STATUS—Global Machine Check Processor Status Register

This register contains basic information about the processor state after a machine check error is detected. See *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual, Volume 2: System Programming*, for more details.

MCG_STATUS Register**MSR 017Ah**

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63–3	reserved			0
2	MCIP	Machine Check in Progress	R/W	0

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
1	EIPV	Error IP Valid Flag	R/W	0
0	RIPV	Restart IP Valid Flag	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Restart IP Valid Flag (RIPV)—Bit 0. When set, indicates if program execution can be restarted at EIP pushed on stack.

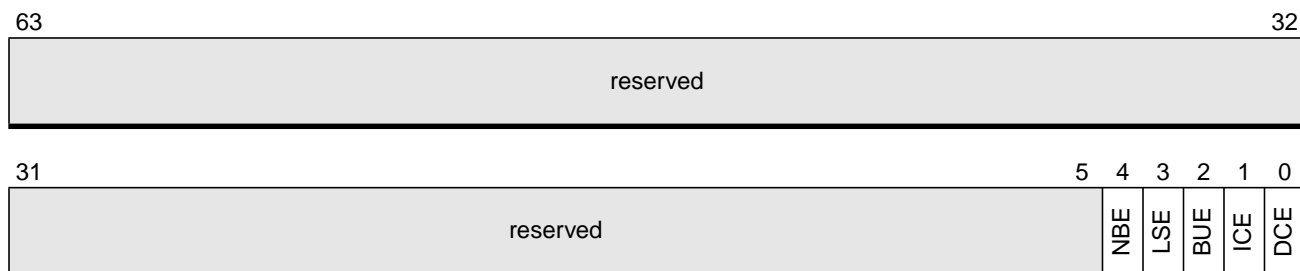
Error IP Valid Flag (EIPV)—Bit 1. When set, indicates if the EIP pushed on stack is that of the instruction which caused the detection of the machine check error.

Machine Check in Progress (MCIP)—Bit 2. When set, indicates that a machine check is in progress.

5.3.1.3 MCG_CTL—Global Machine Check Exception Reporting Control Register

This register contains a global bit for each error-checking unit in the processor. Each bit enables the reporting, through the MCA interface, of errors detected by that particular unit. See *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual*, Volume 2: System Programming, for more details.

MCG_CTL Register

MSR 017Bh


Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63–5	reserved			0
4	NBE	NB Register Bank Enable	R/W	0
3	LSE	LS Register Bank Enable	R/W	0
2	BUE	BU Register Bank Enable	R/W	0
1	ICE	IC Register Bank Enable	R/W	0
0	DCE	DC Register Bank Enable	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

DC Register Bank Enable (DCE)—Bit 0. When set, indicates that the Data Cache register bank is enabled.

IC Register Bank Enable (ICE)—Bit 1. When set, indicates that the Instruction Cache register bank is enabled.

BU Register Bank Enable (BUE)—Bit 2. When set, indicates that the Bus Unit register bank is enabled.

LS Register Bank Enable (LSE)—Bit 3. When set, indicates that the Load/Store register bank is enabled.

NB Register Bank Enable (NBE)—Bit 4. When set, indicates that the Northbridge register bank is enabled.

5.3.2 Error Reporting Bank Machine Check MSRs

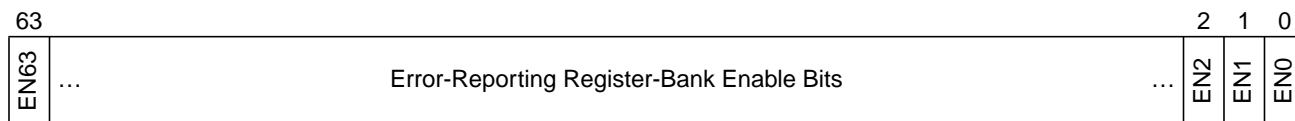
The registers in each error reporting bank include *MCi_CTL*, *MCi_STATUS* and *MCi_ADDR*. The *MCi_MISC* register is not supported in AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors.

5.3.2.1 *MCi_CTL*—Machine Check Control Registers

The machine check control registers (*MCi_CTL*) contain an enable bit for each error source within an error-reporting register bank. Setting an enable bit to 1 enables error-reporting for the specific feature controlled by the bit, and clearing the bit to 0 disables error reporting for the feature. These registers should generally be set to either all zeros or all ones.

MCi_CTL Registers

MSRs 0400h, 0404h, 0408h, 040Ch, 0410h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63–0	EN63–EN0	Enables	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

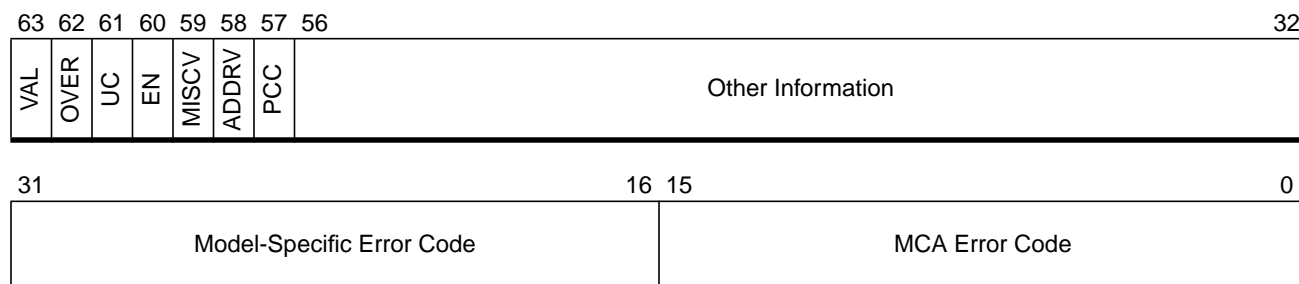
Enables (EN63–EN0)—Bits 63–0. If set, error reporting for the specific feature controlled by the bit is enabled. Not all these bits may be implemented in each bank.

5.3.2.2 *MCi_STATUS*—Machine Check Status Registers

The machine check status register (*MCi_STATUS*) describes the error detected by its unit. It is written by the processor and should be cleared to 0 by software; writing any other value to the register causes a general protection (GP#) exception. When a machine check error occurs, the processor loads an error code into bits [15:0] of the appropriate *MCi_STATUS* register. Errors are classified as either system bus, cache, or TLB errors. All the status registers in each bank use the same general logging format shown below.

MCi_STATUS Registers

MSRs 0401h, 0405h, 0409h, 040Dh, 0411h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63	VAL	Valid	R/W	0
62	OVER	Status Register Overflow	R/W	0
61	UC	Uncorrected Error indication	R/W	0
60	EN	Error Condition Enabled	R/W	0
59	MISCV	Miscellaneous-Error Register Valid	R/W	0
58	ADDRV	Error-Address Register Valid	R/W	0
57	PCC	Processor-Context Corrupt	R/W	0
56–32		Other Information	R/W	0
31–16		Model-Specific Error Code	R/W	0
15–0		MCA Error Code	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

MCA Error Code—Bits 15–0. This field holds an error code when an error is detected.

Model-Specific Error Code—Bits 31–16. This field encodes model-specific information about the error.

Other Information—Bits 56–32. This field holds model-specific error information.

Processor-Context Corrupt (PCC)—Bit 57. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the state of the processor may be corrupted by the error condition. Reliable restarting might not be possible.
0 = Processor not corrupted
1 = Processor may be corrupted

Error-Address Register Valid (ADDRV)—Bit 58. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the address saved in the address register is the address where the error occurred.
0 = Address register not valid
1 = Address register valid

Miscellaneous-Error Register Valid (MISCV)—Bit 59. If set to 1, this bit indicates whether the Miscellaneous Error register contains valid information for this error. This bit should always be 0 since the Miscellaneous Error register is not implemented.

Error Condition Enabled (EN)—Bit 60. If set to 1, this bit indicates that MCA error reporting is enabled for this error in the MCA Control register.

- 0 = Error checking not enabled
- 1 = Error checking enabled

Uncorrected Error indication (UC)—Bit 61. If set to 1, this bit indicates that the error was not corrected by hardware.

- 0 = Error corrected
- 1 = Error not corrected

Status Register Overflow (OVER)—Bit 62. Set to 1 if the unit detects an error but the valid bit of this register already set. Enabled errors are written over disabled errors, uncorrectable errors are written over correctable errors. Uncorrectable errors are not overwritten.

- 0 = No error overflow
- 1 = Error overflow

Valid (VAL)—Bit 63. If set to 1, this bit indicates that a valid error has been detected by the unit. This bit should be cleared to 0 by software after the register is read.

- 0 = No valid error detected
- 1 = Valid error detected

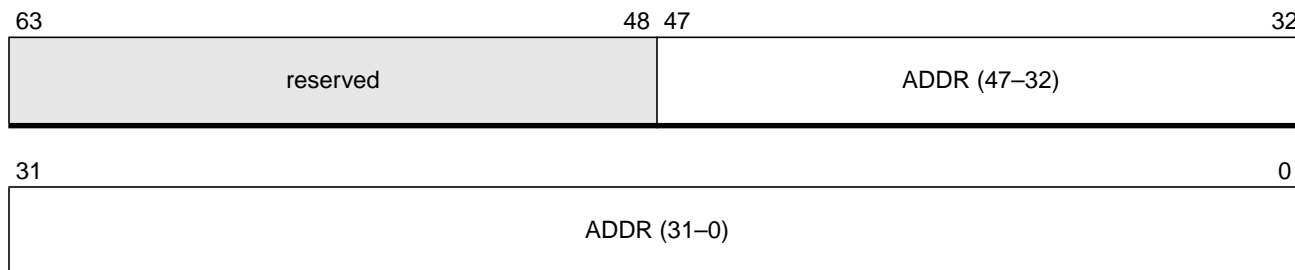
5.3.2.3 MCi_ADDR—Machine Check Address Registers

Each error-reporting register bank includes a machine check address register (MCi_ADDR) that the processor uses to report the instruction memory address or data memory address responsible for the machine check error. The contents of this register are valid only if the ADDRv bit in the corresponding MCi_STATUS register is set to 1.

The address can be up to 48 bits wide. In reality, not all address bits may be valid and the address field of the MCi_ADDR varies in width. The address field can hold either a virtual (linear) or physical address, depending on the type of error. Some error types cause the processor to load valid values into a subset of the address bits. The bit ranges depend on the values in the MCi_STATUS register, i.e., on the type of error detected by the unit, which can be determined by examining the MCA error code contained in the MCi_STATUS register.

MCi_ADDR Registers

MSRs 0402h, 0406h, 040Ah, 040Eh, 0412h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63–48	reserved			0
47–0	ADDR	Address	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Address (ADDR)—Bits 47–0. Not all these bits may be valid. The valid bits depend on the type of error registered in the corresponding `MCi_STATUS` register.

5.4 Error Reporting Banks

As mentioned in “Machine Check Architecture Registers” on page 143, the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors have five error-reporting banks—DC, IC, BU, LS, and NB. Each error reporting bank includes the following registers:

- Machine check control register (`MCi_CTL`).
- Machine check status register (`MCi_STATUS`).
- Machine check address register (`MCi_ADDR`).

The general format of these registers was described in “Error Reporting Bank Machine Check MSRs” on page 147. This section describes the specifics of each register as it relates to each error reporting bank.

5.4.1 Data Cache (DC)

The data cache unit includes the level 1 data cache that holds data and tags, as well as two levels of TLBs and data cache probing logic.

5.4.1.1 MC0_CTL—DC Machine Check Control Register

This register enables the reporting, via the MCA interface, of a variety of errors detected by the Data Cache (DC) processor unit. For an error to be reported, both the global DC enable, `MCG_CTL[DCE]`, and the corresponding local enable shown below must be set. If the local enable is off, the error will only be logged in `MC0_STATUS`, but not reported via the machine check exception. If the global DC enable is off, no error will be logged or reported.

MC0_CTL Register

MSR 0400h

63	32
reserved	

31	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
reserved	L2TP	L1TP	DSTP	DMTP	DECC	ECCM	ECCI

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63–7	reserved			0
6	L2TP	L2 TLB Parity Errors	R/W	0
5	L1TP	L1 TLB Parity Errors	R/W	0
4	DSTP	Snoop Tag Array Parity Errors	R/W	0
3	DMTP	Main Tag Array Parity Errors	R/W	0
2	DECC	Data Array ECC Errors	R/W	0
1	ECCM	Multi-bit ECC Data Errors	R/W	0
0	ECCI	Single-bit ECC Data Errors	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Single-bit ECC Data Errors (ECCI)—Bit 0. Report single-bit ECC data errors during data cache line fills or TLB reloads from the internal L2 or the system.

Multi-bit ECC Data Errors (ECCM)—Bit 1. Report multi-bit ECC data errors during data cache line fills or TLB reloads from the internal L2 or the system.

Data Array ECC Errors (DECC)—Bit 2. Report data cache data array ECC errors.

Main Tag Array Parity Errors (DMTP)—Bit 3. Report data cache main tag array parity errors.

Snoop Tag Array Parity Errors (DSTP)—Bit 4. Report data cache snoop tag array parity errors.

L1 TLB Parity Errors (L1TP)—Bit 5. Report data cache L1 TLB parity errors.

L2 TLB Parity Errors (L2TP)—Bit 6. Report data cache L2 TLB parity errors.

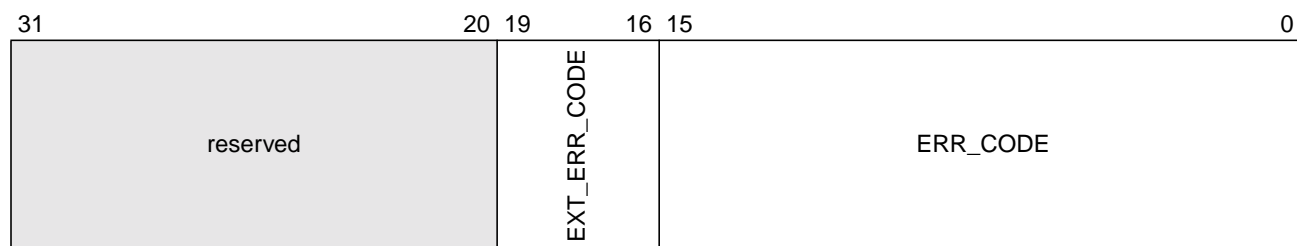
5.4.1.2 MC0_STATUS—DC Machine Check Status Register

The MC0_STATUS MSR describes the error that was detected by DC. The machine check mechanism writes the status register bits when an error is detected and sets the register valid bit (bit 63) to 1 to indicate that the status information is valid. This register will be written even if error reporting for the detected error is not enabled. However, error reporting must be enabled for the error to result in a machine check exception. Software is responsible for clearing this register.

MC0_STATUS Register

MSR 0401h

63	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	47				46	45	44	41		40	39	32			
VAL	OVER	UC	EN	MISCV	ADDRV	PCC	reserved	SYND				CECC	UECC	reserved		SCRUB	reserved							



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63	VAL	Valid.	R/W	0
62	OVER	Second error detected	R/W	0
61	UC	Error not corrected	R/W	0
60	EN	Error reporting enabled	R/W	0
59	MISCV	Additional info in MCi_MISC	R/W	0
58	ADDRV	Error address in MCi_ADDR	R/W	0
57	PCC	Processor state corrupted by error	R/W	0
56–55	reserved			0
54–47	SYND	ECC Syndrome (7–0)	R/W	0
46	CECC	Correctable ECC error	R/W	0
45	UECC	Uncorrectable ECC error	R/W	0
44–41	reserved		R/W	0
40	SCRUB	Error detected on a scrub	R/W	0
39–20	reserved			0
19–16	EXT_ERR_CODE	Extended error code	R/W	0
15–0	ERR_CODE	Error subsection	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Error Subsection (ERR_CODE)—Bits 15–0. Indicates in which subsection the error was detected and what transaction initiated it. See Table 9 on page 97 for the format of the error code and Tables 10 through 15 on pages 97–98 for descriptions of the subfields.

Extended Error Code (EXT_ERR_CODE)—Bits 19–16. Contains an extended error code.

DC/IC:

0000b = TLB parity error in physical array

0001b = TLB parity error in virtual array (multi-match error)

BU:

0000b = Bus or cache data array error

0010b = Cache tag array error

LS: Reserved

Error Detected on a Scrub (SCRUB)—Bit 40.

DC: If set, indicates that the error was detected on a scrub.

IC/BU/LS: Reserved.

Uncorrectable ECC Error (UECC)—Bit 45. If set, indicates that the error is an uncorrectable ECC error.

Correctable ECC Error (CECC)—Bit 46. If set, indicates that the error is a correctable ECC error.

ECC Syndrome Bits 7–0 (SYND)—Bits 54–47.

DC: The lower 8 syndrome bits when an ECC error is detected.

IC/BU/LS: Reserved.

Processor State Corrupted By Error (PCC)—Bit 57. If set, indicates that the processor state may have been corrupted by the error condition.

Error address in MCi_ADDR (ADDRV)—Bit 58. If set, indicates that the address saved in the corresponding MCi_ADDR register is the address where the error occurred.

Additional Info in MCi_MISC (MISCV)—Bit 59. If set, indicates that the MCi_MISC register contains additional info. This bit is always set to 0 on an AMD Athlon™ 64 or AMD Opteron™ processor.

Error Reporting Enabled (EN)—Bit 60. If set, indicates that error reporting was enabled for this error in the corresponding MCi_CTL register.

Error Not Corrected (UC)—61. If set, it indicates that the error was not corrected.

Second Error Detected (OVER)—Bit 62. Set if a second error is detected while the VAL bit of this register is already set.

Valid (VAL)—Bit 63. Set if the information in this register is valid.

5.4.1.3 MC0_ADDR—DC Machine Check Address Register (MSR 0402h)

The contents of this register are valid only if the ADDR bit in the MC0_STATUS register is set to 1. As shown in “MCi_ADDR—Machine Check Address Registers” on page 149, the address can be up to 48 bits wide. In reality, not all address bits may be valid and the address field of the MC0_ADDR varies in width. The bit ranges depend on the values in the MC0_STATUS register (i.e., the type of error detected) as shown in Table 27.

Table 27. Valid MC0_ADDR Bits

Error Source	Access Type	Valid Address Bits
Snoop Tag Array	snoop	physical[11–6]
	victim	

Table 27. Valid MC0_ADDR Bits

Error Source	Access Type	Valid Address Bits
Data Tag Array	load	physical[39–3]
	store	
Data Array	victim	physical[11–6]
	snoop	
	load	physical[39–3]
	store	
	scrub	physical[11–3]
L1 Data TLB	load, store	linear[47–12]
L2 Data TLB		
L2 Cache Data	line-fill	physical[39–6]
System Data		

5.4.2 Instruction Cache (IC)

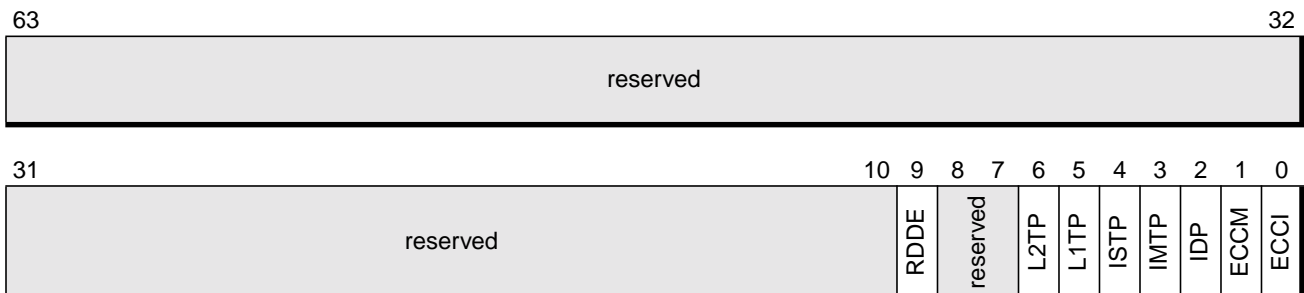
The IC unit includes the level 1 instruction cache that holds instruction data and tags, as well as two levels of TLBs and instruction cache probing logic.

5.4.2.1 MC1_CTL—IC Machine Check Control Register

This register enables the reporting, via the MCA interface, of a variety of errors detected by the Instruction Cache (IC) processor unit. For an error to be reported, both the global IC enable, MCG_CTL[ICE], and the corresponding local enable shown below must be set. If the local enable is off, the error will only be logged in MC1_STATUS, but not reported via the machine check exception. If the global IC enable is off, no error will be logged or reported.

MC1_CTL Register

MSR 0404h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63–10	reserved			0
9	RDDE	Read Data Errors	R/W	0
8–7	reserved			0
6	L2TP	L2 TLB Parity Errors	R/W	0
5	L1TP	L1 TLB Parity Errors	R/W	0
4	ISTP	Snoop tag array parity errors	R/W	0
3	IMTP	Main tag array parity errors	R/W	0
2	IDP	Data array parity errors	R/W	0
1	ECCM	Multi-bit ECC data errors	R/W	0
0	ECCI	Single-bit ECC data errors	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Single-bit ECC Data Errors (ECCI)—Bit 0. Report single-bit ECC data errors during instruction cache line fills or TLB reloads from the internal L2 or the system.

Multi-bit ECC Data Errors (ECCM)—Bit 1. Report multi-bit ECC data errors during instruction cache line fills or TLB reloads from the internal L2 or the system.

Data Array Parity Errors (IDP)—Bit 2. Report instruction cache data array parity errors.

Main Tag Array Parity Errors (IMTP)—Bit 3. Report instruction cache main tag array parity errors.

Snoop Tag Array Parity Errors (ISTP)—Bit 4. Report instruction cache snoop tag array parity errors.

L1 TLB Parity Errors (L1TP)—Bit 5. Report instruction cache L1 TLB parity errors.

L2 TLB Parity Errors (L2TP)—Bit 6. Report instruction cache L2 TLB parity errors.

Read Data Errors (RDDE)—Bit 9. Report system read data errors for an instruction cache fetch but only if MC2_CTL[S_RDE_ALL] = 1.

5.4.2.2 MC1_STATUS—IC Machine Check Status Register (MSR 0405h)

The MC1_STATUS MSR describes the error that was detected by IC and is very similar to MC0_STATUS. See “MC0_STATUS—DC Machine Check Status Register” on page 151 for a description of the fields in this register.

5.4.2.3 MC1_ADDR—IC Machine Check Address Register (MSR 0406h)

The contents of this register are valid only if the ADDR_V bit in the MC1_STATUS register is set to 1. The address can be up to 48 bits wide. In reality, not all address bits may be valid and the address field of the MC1_ADDR varies in width. The bits ranges depend on the values in the MC1_STATUS register (i.e., the type of error detected) and this is shown in Table 28.

Table 28. Valid MC1_ADDR Bits

Error Source	Access Type	Valid Address Bits
Snoop Tag Array	Snoop	Physical[39–6]
	Victim	None
Instruction Tag Array	Code Read	Linear[47–6]
	Victim	None
Instruction Data Array	Code Read	Linear[47–4]
L1 TLB	Code Read	Linear[47–12] for 4-Kbyte page Linear[47–20] for 2-Mbyte page
L2 TLB	Code Read	Linear[47–12] for 4-Kbyte page
L2 Cache Data	Line-fill	Physical[39–6]
System Data		
System Address Out of Range		None

5.4.3 Bus Unit (BU)

The bus unit comprises of the system bus interface logic and the level 2 cache.

5.4.3.1 MC2_CTL—BU Machine Check Control Register

This register enables the reporting, via the MCA interface, of a variety of errors detected in the Bus processor unit (BU). For an error to be reported, both the global BU enable, MCG_CTL[BUE], and the corresponding local enable shown below must be set. If the local enable is off, the error will only be logged in MC2_STATUS, but not reported via the machine check exception. If the global BU enable is off, no error will be logged or reported.

MC2_CTL Register

MSR 0408h

63	reserved																												32																				
31	reserved																												20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
																				L2T_ECCM_SCR	L2T_ECC1_SCR	L2D_ECCM_CPB	L2D_ECCM_SNP	L2D_ECCM_TLB	L2D_ECC1_CPB	L2D_ECC1_SNP	L2D_ECC1_TLB	L2T_PAR_SCR	L2T_PAR_CPB	L2T_PAR_SNP	L2T_PAR_TLB	L2T_PAR_ICDC	S_ECCM_HP	S_ECCM_TLB	S_ECC1_HP	S_ECC1_TLB	S_RDE_ALL	S_RDE_TLB	S_RDE_HP										

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63–20	reserved			0
19	L2T_ECCM_SCR	L2 tag array multi-bit ECC Scrub	R/W	0
18	L2T_ECC1_SCR	L2 tag array 1-bit ECC Scrub	R/W	0
17	L2D_ECCM_CPB	L2 data array multi-bit ECC copyback	R/W	0
16	L2D_ECCM_SNP	L2 data array multi-bit ECC snoop	R/W	0
15	L2D_ECCM_TLB	L2 data array multi-bit ECC TLB reload	R/W	0
14	L2D_ECC1_CPB	L2 data array 1-bit ECC copyback	R/W	0
13	L2D_ECC1_SNP	L2 data array 1-bit ECC snoop	R/W	0
12	L2D_ECC1_TLB	L2 data array 1-bit ECC TLB reload	R/W	0
11	L2T_PAR_SCR	L2 tag array parity scrub	R/W	0
10	L2T_PAR_CPB	L2 tag array parity copyback	R/W	0
9	L2T_PAR_SNP	L2 tag array parity snoop	R/W	0
8	L2T_PAR_TLB	L2 tag array parity TLB reload	R/W	0
7	L2T_PAR_ICDC	L2 tag array parity IC or DC fetch	R/W	0
6	S_ECCM_HP	System data multi-bit ECC hardware prefetch	R/W	0
5	S_ECCM_TLB	System data multi-bit ECC TLB reload	R/W	0
4	S_ECC1_HP	System data 1-bit ECC hardware prefetch	R/W	0
3	S_ECC1_TLB	System data 1-bit ECC TLB reload	R/W	0
2	S_RDE_ALL	All system read data	R/W	0
1	S_RDE_TLB	System read data TLB reload	R/W	0
0	S_RDE_HP	System read data hardware prefetch	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

System Read Data Hardware Prefetch (S_RDE_HP)—Bit 0. Report system read data errors for a hardware prefetch.

System Read Data TLB Reload (S_RDE_TLB)—Bit 1. Report system read data errors for a TLB reload.

All System Read Data (S_RDE_ALL)—Bit 2. Report system read data errors for any operation including a DC/IC fetch, TLB reload or hardware prefetch.

System Data 1-bit ECC TLB Reload (S_ECC1_TLB)—Bit 3. Report system data 1-bit ECC errors for a TLB reload.

System Data 1-bit ECC Hardware Prefetch (S_ECC1_HP)—Bit 4. Report system data 1-bit ECC errors for a hardware prefetch.

System Data Multi-bit ECC TLB Reload (S_ECCM_TLB)—Bit 5. Report system data multi-bit ECC errors for a TLB reload.

System Data Multi-bit ECC Hardware Prefetch (S_ECCM_HP)—Bit 6. Report system data multi-bit ECC errors for a hardware prefetch.

L2 Tag Array Parity IC or DC Fetch (L2T_PAR_ICDC)—Bit 7. Report L2 tag array parity errors for an IC or DC fetch.

L2 Tag Array Parity TLB Reload (L2T_PAR_TLB)—Bit 8. Report L2 tag array parity errors for a TLB reload.

L2 Tag Array Parity Snoop (L2T_PAR_SNP)—Bit 9. Report L2 tag array parity errors for a snoop.

L2 Tag Array Parity Copyback (L2T_PAR_CPB)—Bit 10. Report L2 tag array parity errors for a copyback.

L2 Tag Array Parity Scrub (L2T_PAR_SCR)—Bit 11. Report L2 tag array parity errors for a scrub.

L2 Data Array 1-bit ECC TLB Reload (L2D_ECC1_TLB)—Bit 12. Report L2 data array 1-bit ECC errors for a TLB reload.

L2 Data Array 1-bit ECC Snoop (L2D_ECC1_SNP)—Bit 13. Report L2 data array 1-bit ECC errors for a snoop.

L2 Data Array 1-bit ECC Copyback (L2D_ECC1_CPB)—Bit 14. Report L2 data array 1-bit ECC errors for a copyback.

L2 Data Array Multi-bit ECC TLB Reload (L2D_ECCM_TLB)—Bit 15. Report L2 data array multi-bit ECC errors for a TLB reload.

L2 Data Array Multi-bit ECC Snoop (L2D_ECCM_SNP)—Bit 16. Report L2 data array multi-bit ECC errors for a snoop.

L2 Data Array Multi-bit ECC Copyback (L2D_ECCM_CPB)—Bit 17. Report L2 data array multi-bit ECC errors for a copyback.

L2 Tag Array 1-bit ECC Scrub (L2T_ECC1_SCR)—Bit 18. Report L2 tag array 1-bit ECC errors for a scrub.

L2 Tag Array Multi-bit ECC Scrub (L2T_ECCM_SCR)—Bit 19. Report L2 tag array multi-bit ECC errors for a scrub.

5.4.3.2 MC2_STATUS—BU Machine Check Status Register (MSR 0409h)

The MC2_STATUS MSR describes the error that was detected by BU and is very similar to MC0_STATUS. See “MC0_STATUS—DC Machine Check Status Register” on page 151 for a description of the fields in this register.

5.4.3.3 MC2_ADDR—BU Machine Check Address Register (MSR 040Ah)

The contents of this register are valid only if the ADDR_V bit in the MC2_STATUS register is set to 1. The address can be up to 48 bits wide. In reality, not all address bits may be valid and the address field of the MC2_ADDR varies in width. The bit ranges depend on the values in the MC2_STATUS register (i.e., the type of error detected) and this is shown in Table 29.

Table 29. Valid MC2_ADDR Bits

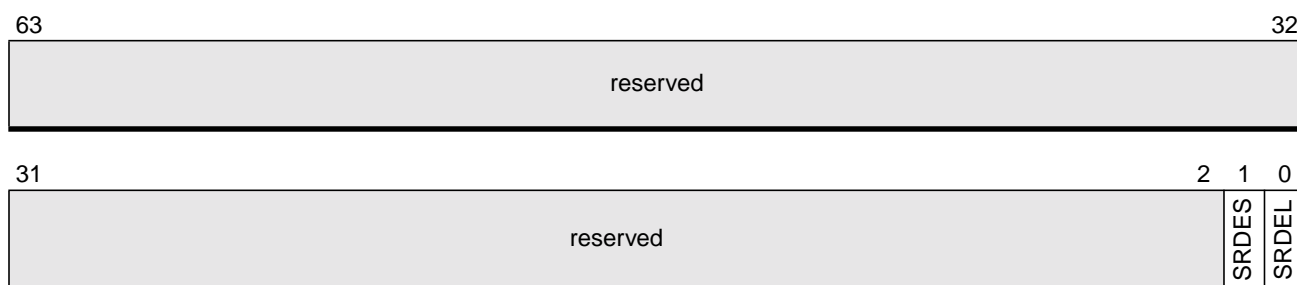
Error Source	Access Type	Valid Address Bits
L2 Cache—Data Array	Any	Physical[39–6]
L2 Cache—Tag Array	Any	MC2_ADDR[3–0] contains encoded cache way Physical[15–6] for 1-Mbyte L2 Physical[14–6] for 512-Kbyte L2 Physical[13–6] for 256-Kbyte L2 Physical[12–6] for 128-Kbyte L2
System Address Out of Range	Any	Physical[39–6]

5.4.4 Load Store Unit (LS)

5.4.4.1 MC3_CTL—LS Machine Check Control Register

This register enables the reporting, via the MCA interface, of two types of errors detected by the Load/Store (LS) processor unit. For an error to be reported, both the global LS enable, MCG_CTL[LSE], and the corresponding local enable shown below must be set. If the local enable is off, the error will only be logged in MC3_STATUS, but not reported via the machine check exception. If the global LS enable is off, no error will be logged or reported.

MC3_CTL Register

MSR 040Ch


Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63–2	reserved			0
1	S_RDE_S	Read Data Errors on Store	R/W	0
0	S_RDE_L	Read Data Errors on Load	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Read Data Errors on Load (S_RDE_L)—Bit 0. Report system read data errors on a load, but only if MC2_CTL[S_RDE_ALL] = 1

Read Data Errors on Store (S_RDE_S)—Bit 1. Report system read data errors on a store, but only if MC2_CTL[S_RDE_ALL] = 1

5.4.4.2 MC3_STATUS—LS Machine Check Status Register (MSR 040Dh)

The MC3_STATUS MSR describes the error that was detected by LS and is very similar to MC0_STATUS. See “MC0_STATUS—DC Machine Check Status Register” on page 151 for a description of the fields in this register.

5.4.4.3 MC3_ADDR—LS Machine Check Address Register (MSR 040Eh)

The contents of this register are valid only if the ADDR_V bit in the MC3_STATUS register is set to 1. The only type of error recorded by the LS machine check mechanism is a “system address out of range” or read data error for which MC3_ADDR[39:0] store the physical address.

5.4.5 Northbridge (NB)

The Northbridge and DRAM memory controller are included in this block.

5.4.5.1 MC4_CTL—NB Machine Check Control Register (MSR 0410h)

This register enables the reporting, via the MCA interface, of the errors detected by the North Bridge (NB) processor unit. See “MCA NB Control Register” on page 91 for detailed information on this register. For an error to be reported, both the global NB enable, MCG_CTL[NBE], and the corresponding local enable must be set. If the local enable is off, the error will only be logged in MC4_STATUS, but not reported via the machine check exception. If the global NB enable is off, no error will be logged or reported.

5.4.5.2 MC4_STATUS—NB Machine Check Status Register (MSR 0411h)

The MC4_STATUS MSR describes the error that was detected by the Northbridge. See “MCA NB Status Low Register” on page 96 and “MCA NB Status High Register” on page 99 for more detailed information.

5.4.5.3 MC4_ADDR—NB Machine Check Address Register (MSR 0412h)

The contents of this register are valid only if the ErrAddrVal bit in the MC4_STATUS register is set to 1. See “MCA NB Address Low Register” on page 102 and “MCA NB Address High Register” on page 102 for a description of this register.

5.5 Initializing the Machine Check Mechanism

Following is the general process system software should follow to initialize the machine check mechanism:

1. Execute the CUID and verify that the processor supports the machine check exception (MCE) and MCA. MCE is supported when EDX bit 7 is set to 1, and MCA is supported when EDX bit 14 is set to 1. Software should not proceed with initializing the machine check mechanism if MCE is not supported.
2. If MCA is supported, system software should take the following steps:
 - a. Check to see if the MCG_CTL_P bit in the MCG_CAP register is set to 1. If it is, then the MCG_CTL register is supported by the processor. When this register is supported, software should set its enable bits to 1 for the machine check features it uses. Software can load MCG_CTL with all 1s to enable all machine check features.
 - b. Read the COUNT field from the MCG_CAP register to determine the number of error-reporting register banks supported by the processor. This is set to 5 in AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors since there are five blocks—DC, IC, BU, LS, and NB. For each error-reporting register bank, software should set the enable bits to 1 in the MCi_CTL register for the error types it wants the processor to report. Software can load each MCi_CTL register bit with a 1 to enable all error-reporting mechanisms.

The error-reporting register banks are numbered from 0 to one less than the value found in the MCG_CAP.COUNT field. For example, when the COUNT field indicates that 5 register banks are supported, they are numbered 0 to 4.
 - c. For each error-reporting register bank, software should clear all status fields in the MCi_STATUS register by writing all 0s to the register.

It is possible that valid error status is reported in the MCi_STATUS registers at the time software clears them. The status can reflect fatal errors recorded before a processor reset or errors recorded during the system power-up and boot process. Prior to clearing the MCi_STATUS registers, software should examine their contents and log any errors found.
3. As a final step in the initialization process, system software should enable the machine check exception by setting CR4.MCE (bit 6) to 1.

5.6 Using Machine Check Features

System software can detect and handle machine check errors using two methods:

- Software can periodically examine the machine check status registers for reported errors, and log any errors found.
- Software can enable the machine check exception (#MC). When an uncorrectable error occurs, the processor immediately transfers control to the machine check exception handler. In this case, system software provides a machine check exception handler that, at a minimum, logs detected errors. The exception handler can be designed for a specific processor implementation or can be generalized to work on multiple implementations.

5.6.1 Handling Machine Check Exceptions

The processor uses the interrupt control-transfer mechanism to invoke an exception handler after a machine check exception occurs. This requires system software to initialize the interrupt-descriptor table (IDT) with either an interrupt gate or a trap gate that references the interrupt handler.

At a minimum, the machine check exception handler must be capable of logging errors for later examination. Because most machine check errors are not recoverable, the ability to log errors can be sufficient for implementation of the handler. More thorough exception-handler implementations can analyze errors to determine if each error is recoverable. If a recoverable error is identified, the exception handler can attempt to correct the error and restart the interrupted program.

Machine check exception handlers that attempt to correct recoverable errors must be thorough in their analysis and the corrective actions they take. The following guidelines should be used when writing such a handler:

- All status registers in the error-reporting register banks must be examined to identify the cause or causes of the machine check exception. Read the COUNT field from MCG_CAP to determine the number of status registers supported by the processor. The status registers are numbered from 0 to one less than the value found in the MCG_CAP.COUNT field. For example, if the COUNT field indicates five status registers are supported, they are numbered MC0_STATUS to MC4_STATUS.
- Check the valid bit in each status register (MCi_STATUS.VAL). The MCi_STATUS register does not need to be examined when its valid bit is clear.
- Check the valid MCi_STATUS registers to see if error recovery is possible. Error recovery is not possible when:
 - The processor-context corrupt bit (MCi_STATUS.PCC) is set to 1.
 - The error-overflow status bit (MCi_STATUS.OVER) is set to 1. This bit indicates that more than one machine check error has occurred, but only one error is reported by the status register.

If error recovery is not possible, the handler should log the error information and return to the operating system.

- Check the MCi_STATUS.UC bit to see if the processor corrected the error. If UC=1, the processor did not correct the error, and the exception handler must correct the error prior to restarting the interrupted program. If the handler cannot correct the error, it should log the error information and return to the operating system.
- When identifying the error condition, portable exception handlers should examine only the MCA error-code field of the MCi_STATUS register. See the error codes in tables 10 through 15 for information on interpreting this field.

If the MCG_STATUS.RIPV bit is set to 1, the interrupted program can be restarted reliably at the instruction-pointer address pushed onto the exception-handler stack. If RIPV = 0, the interrupted program cannot be restarted reliably, although it may be possible to restart it for debugging purposes.

- When logging errors, particularly those that are not recoverable, check the MCG_STATUS.EIPV bit to see if the instruction-pointer address pushed onto the exception-handler stack is related to the machine check error. If EIPV = 0, the address is not guaranteed to be related to the error.
- Prior to exiting the machine check handler, be sure to clear MCG_STATUS.MCIP to 0. MCIP indicates that a machine check exception occurred. If this bit is set when another machine check exception occurs, the processor enters the shutdown state.
- When an exception handler is able to, at a minimum, successfully log an error condition, clear the MCi_STATUS registers prior to exiting the machine check handler. Software is responsible for clearing at least the MCi_STATUS.VAL bit.
- Additional machine check exception-handler portability can be added by having the handler use the CPUID instruction to identify the processor and its capabilities. Implementation-specific software can be added to the machine check exception handler based on the processor information reported by CPUID.

5.6.1.1 Reporting Correctable Machine Check Errors

Machine check exceptions do not occur if the error is correctable by the processor. If system software wishes to log and report correctable machine check errors, a system-service routine must be provided to check the contents of the machine check status registers for correctable errors. The service routine can be invoked by system software on a periodic basis, or it can be manually invoked by the user as needed.

Assuming that the processor supports the machine check registers, a service routine that reports correctable errors should perform the following:

1. Examine each status register (MCi_STATUS) in the error-reporting register banks. For each MCi_STATUS register with a set valid bit (VAL = 1), the service routine should:
 - a. Save the contents of the MCi_STATUS register.
 - b. Save the contents of the corresponding MCi_ADDR register if MCi_STATUS.ADDRV = 1.
 - c. Save the contents of the corresponding MCi_MISC register if MCi_STATUS.MISCV = 1.
 - d. Check to see if MCG_STATUS.MCIP = 1, indicating that the machine check exception handler is in progress. If this is the case, then the machine check exception handler has called the service routine to log the errors. In this situation, the error-logging service routine should determine whether or not the interrupted program is restartable, and report the determination back to the exception handler. The program is *not restartable* if either of the following is true:
 - MCi_STATUS.PCC = 1, indicating the processor context is corrupted.
 - MCG_STATUS.RIPV = 0, indicating the interrupted program cannot be restarted reliably at the instruction-pointer address pushed onto the exception-handler stack.
2. Once the information found in the error-reporting register banks is saved, the MCi_STATUS register should be cleared to 0. This allows the processor to properly report any subsequent errors in the MCi_STATUS registers.

3. In multiprocessor configurations, the service routine can save the processor node identifier. This can help locate a failing multiprocessor-system component, which can then be isolated from the rest of the system.

6 System Management Mode (SMM)

System management mode (SMM) is an operating mode entered when system management interrupt SMI# is asserted. The SMI is handled by a dedicated interrupt handler pointed to by processor model specific registers. SMM is used for system control activities such as power management. These activities are transparent to conventional operating systems (such as MS-DOS and Windows® operating system). SMM is used by the BIOS and specialized low level device drivers. The code and data for SMM are stored in the SMM memory area, which may be isolated from the main memory accesses using special processor functions.

This chapter describes the SMM state save area, entry into and exit from SMM, exceptions and interrupts in SMM, and memory allocation and addressing in SMM.

6.1 SMM Overview

The processor enters SMM after the system logic asserts the SMI# interrupt and the processor recognizes SMI# active. The processor may be programmed to send a special bus cycle to the system, indicating that it is entering SMM mode. The processor saves its state into the SMM memory state save area and jumps to the SMM service routine. The processor returns from SMM by executing the RSM instruction in the SMM service routine. The processor restores its state from the SMM state save area and resumes execution of the instruction following the point where it entered SMM. The processor may be programmed to send a special bus cycle to the system, indicating that it is exiting SMM mode.

6.2 Operating Mode and Default Register Values

The software environment after entering SMM mode has the following characteristics:

- Addressing and operation in Real mode.
- 4-Gbyte segment limits.
- Default 16-bit operand, address, and stack sizes (instruction prefixes can override these defaults).
- Control transfers that do not override the default operand size truncate the EIP to 16 bits.
- Far jumps or calls cannot transfer control to a segment with a base address requiring more than 20 bits, like in Real mode segment-base addressing, unless a change is made into protected mode
- A20M# is disabled. A20M# assertion or deassertion have no effect on SMM mode.
- Interrupt vectors use the Real mode interrupt vector table.
- The IF flag in EFLAGS is cleared (INTR is not recognized).

- The TF flag in EFLAGS is cleared.
- The NMI and INIT interrupts are masked.
- Debug register DR7 is cleared (debug traps are disabled).

Figure 2 shows the default map of the SMM memory area. It consists of a 64-Kbyte area, between 0003_0000h and 0003_FFFFh. The top 32 Kbytes (0003_8000–0003_FFFFh) must be populated with RAM. The default code-segment (CS) base address for the area (called the SMM_BASE address) is 0003_0000h. The top 512 bytes (0003_FE00–0003_FFFFh) are the SMM state save area. The default entry point for the SMM service routine is 0003_8000h.

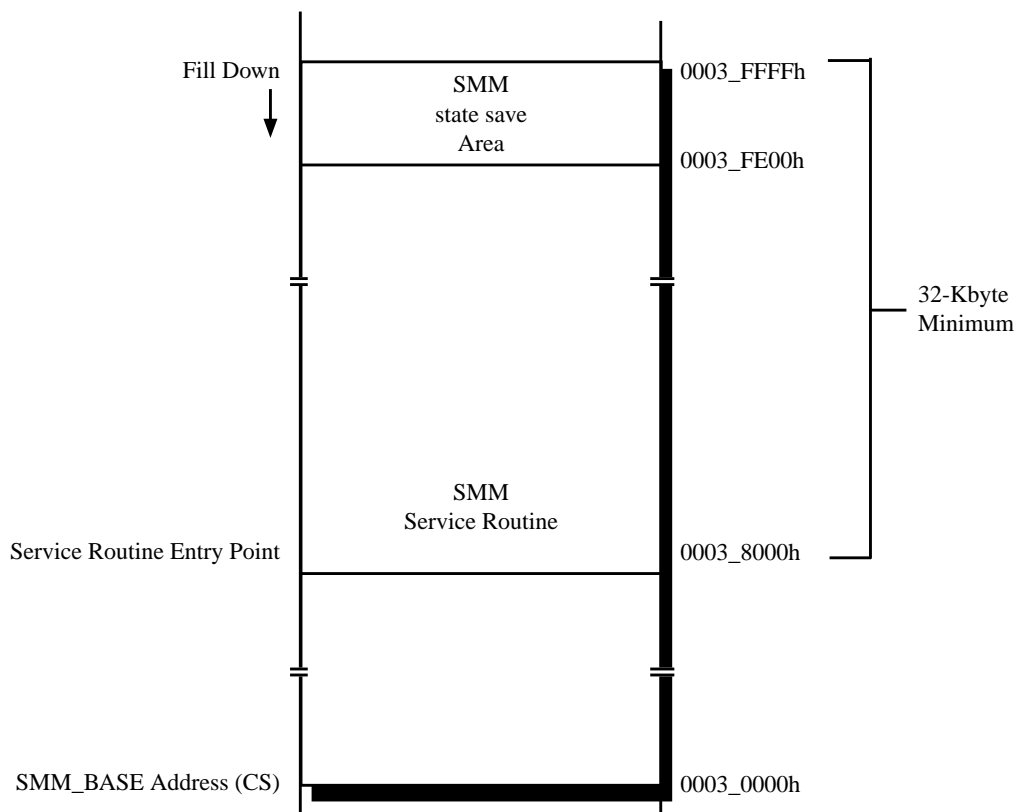


Figure 2. Default SMM Memory Map

6.3 SMM State Save Definition

Table 30. SMM Save State (Offset FE00–FFFFh)

Offset (Hex) from SMM_BASE ¹	Contents		Size	Allowable Access
FE00h	ES	Selector	Word	Read-Only
FE02h		Attributes	Word	
FE04h		Limit	Doubleword	
FE08h		Base	Quadword	
FE10h	CS	Selector	Word	Read-Only
FE12h		Attributes	Word	
FE14h		Limit	Doubleword	
FE18h		Base	Quadword	
FE20h	SS	Selector	Word	Read-Only
FE22h		Attributes	Word	
FE24h		Limit	Doubleword	
FE28h		Base	Quadword	
FE30h	DS	Selector	Word	Read-Only
FE32h		Attributes	Word	
FE34h		Limit	Doubleword	
FE38h		Base	Quadword	
FE40h	FS	Selector	Word	Read-Only
FE42h		Attributes	Word	
FE44h		Limit	Doubleword	
FE48h		Base	Quadword	
FE50h	GS	Selector	Word	Read-Only
FE52h		Attributes	Word	
FE54h		Limit	Doubleword	
FE58h		Base	Quadword	
FE60h–FE61h	GDTR	reserved	2 Bytes	Read-Only
FE62h		reserved	Word	
FE64h		Limit	Word	
FE66h–FE67h		reserved	2 Bytes	
FE68h		Base	Quadword	
Notes:				
1. The offset for the SMM-revision identifier is compatible with previous implementations.				

Table 30. SMM Save State (Offset FE00–FFFFh) (Continued)

Offset (Hex) from SMM_BASE ¹	Contents		Size	Allowable Access
FE70h	LDTR	Selector	Word	Read-Only
FE72h		Attributes	Word	
FE74h		Limit	Doubleword	
FE78h		Base	Quadword	
FE80h–FEB1h	IDTR	reserved	2 Bytes	Read-Only
FE82h		reserved	Word	
FE84h		Limit	Word	
FEB6h–FEB7h		reserved	2 Bytes	
FE88h		Base	Quadword	
FE90h	TR	Selector	Word	Read-Only
FE92h		Attributes	Word	
FE94h		Limit	Doubleword	
FE98h		Base	Quadword	
FEA0h–FEBFh	reserved		32 Bytes	—
FEC0h–FEC3h	SMM I/O Trap		Doubleword	Read-Only
FEC4h–FEC7h	reserved		4 Bytes	—
FEC8h	I/O Instruction Restart		Byte	Read/Write
FEC9h	Auto-Halt Restart		Byte	
FECAh–FECFh	reserved		6 Bytes	—
FED0h	EFER		Quadword	Read-Only
FED8h–FEFBh	reserved		36 Bytes	—
FEFCh	SMM-Revision Identifier ¹		Doubleword	Read-Only
FF00h	SMM_BASE		Doubleword	Read/Write
FF04h–FF47h	reserved		68 Bytes	—
FF48h	CR4		Quadword	Read-Only
FF50h	CR3		Quadword	
FF58h	CR0		Quadword	
FF60h	DR7		Quadword	Read-Only
FF68h	DR6		Quadword	
FF70h	RFLAGS		Quadword	Read/Write
Notes:				
1. The offset for the SMM-revision identifier is compatible with previous implementations.				

Table 30. SMM Save State (Offset FE00–FFFFh) (Continued)

Offset (Hex) from SMM_BASE ¹	Contents	Size	Allowable Access
FF78h	RIP	Quadword	Read/Write
FF80h	R15	Quadword	
FF88h	R14	Quadword	
FF90h	R13	Quadword	
FF98h	R12	Quadword	
FFA0h	R11	Quadword	
FFA8h	R10	Quadword	
FFB0h	R9	Quadword	
FFB8h	R8	Quadword	
FFC0h	RDI	Quadword	Read/Write
FFC8h	RSI	Quadword	
FFD0h	RBP	Quadword	
FFD8h	RSP	Quadword	
FFE0h	RBX	Quadword	
FFE8h	RDX	Quadword	
FFF0h	RCX	Quadword	
FFF8h	RAX	Quadword	
Notes: 1. The offset for the SMM-revision identifier is compatible with previous implementations.			

After recognizing the SMI# assertion, the processor saves almost the entire integer processor state to memory. Exceptions are: the floating point state, the model specific registers, and CR2. Any processor state not saved in the save state must be saved and restored by the SMM handler. With the AMD Athlon™ 64 processor and AMD Opteron™ processor extension of register size to 64-bits, the SMM save state has changed considerably compared to the legacy 32-bit version. One exception is the SMM Revision Identifier, which is located in the same position as before, for proper SMM identification.

Note: The save state will always be 64-bit, regardless of the operating mode (32-bit or 64-bit).

6.4 SMM Initial State

After storing the save state, the processor starts executing the handler at address SMM_BASE + 08000h. It starts with the entry state listed in Table 31.

Table 31. SMM Entry State

Register	Initial Contents		
	Selector	Base	Limit
CS	SMM_BASE[19:4]	SMM_BASE[31:0]	4 Gbytes
DS	0000h	0000_0000h	4 Gbytes
ES	0000h	0000_0000h	4 Gbytes
FS	0000h	0000_0000h	4 Gbytes
GS	0000h	0000_0000h	4 Gbytes
SS	0000h	0000_0000h	4 Gbytes
General-Purpose Registers	Unmodified		
EFLAGS	0000_0002h		
EIP	0000_8000h		
CR0	Bits 0, 2, 3, and 31 cleared (PE, EM, TS, and PG); remainder is unmodified		
CR4	0000_0000h		
GDTR	Unmodified		
LDTR	Unmodified		
IDTR	Unmodified		
TR	Unmodified		
DR7	0000_0400h		
DR6	Undefined		

6.5 SMM-Revision Identifier

The SMM-Revision Identifier specifies the version of SMM and the processor extensions.

SMM-Revision Identifier

Offset FEFCh

31	18	17	16	15	0
reserved				BRL IOTRAP	REV

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–18	reserved	SBZ	R	
17	BRL	SMM Base Relocation Supported	R	1
16	IOTRAP	SMM I/O Trap Supported	R	1
15–0	REV	SMM Revision Level	R	0064h

6.6 SMM Base Address

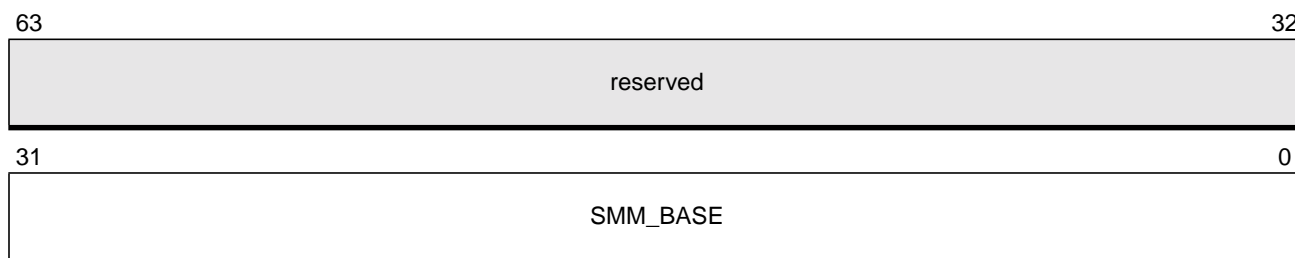
SMM_BASE register holds the base of the system management memory region, and its default value is 30000h. The value of this register is stored in the save state on entry into SMM and it is restored on returning from SMM. The first SMI handler instruction is fetched at SMM_BASE + 8000h. The 16 bit code segment selector is formed on entering SMM from SMM_BASE[19–4]. SMM_BASE[31–20] and SMM_BASE[3–0] have to be 0; if not, the CS base will not be equal to the (CS selector << 4), and attempts to load the CS_BASE into other descriptors will not work properly, since the selector cannot properly represent the base. If there is a far branch in the SMM handler, it will only be able to address the lower 1M of memory and will not be able to restore the SMM base to a value above 1M, unless it first switches to protected mode.

The SMM base address can be changed in two ways:

- The SMM base address, at offset FF00h in the SMM state save area, can be changed by the SMM service routine. The RSM instruction will update the SMM_BASE with the new value.
- The SMM_BASE is mapped to MSR C001_0111h and WRMSR instruction can be used to update it.

SMM_BASE Address

Offset FF00h
MSR C001_0111h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W
63–32	reserved	RAZ	
31–0	SMM_BASE	System management mode base	R/W

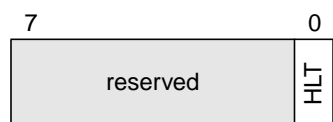
6.7 Auto Halt Restart

During entry into SMM, the auto halt restart byte at offset FEC9h in the SMM state save area indicates whether SMM was entered from the Halt state. Before returning from SMM, the halt restart byte bit can be written by the SMM service routine to specify whether the return from SMM should take the processor back to the Halt state or to the instruction-execution state specified by the SMM state save area (the instruction after the HLT).

If the return from SMM takes the processor back to the Halt state, the HLT instruction is not refetched and reexecuted, but the Halt special bus cycle is sent to the system on the bus and the processor enters the HLT state.

Auto Halt Restart

Offset FEC9h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W
7–1	reserved	SBZ	R/W
0	HLT	HLT Restart Byte	R/W

Field Description

HLT Restart Byte (HLT)—Bit 0. On entry:

- 0 = Entered from normal x86 instruction boundary
- 1 = Entered from HLT State

After entry and before returning:

- 0 = Return to SMM State
- 1 = Return to HLT State

6.8 SMM I/O Trap and I/O Restart

If the assertion of SMI is recognized on the boundary of an I/O instruction, the I/O trap doubleword at offset FEC0h in the SMM state save area contains information about the executed I/O instruction. If the Valid bit is equal to 0, not all information is valid.

This is used in the I/O restart implementation. When an I/O access is done to a device that may be unavailable, the system can assert SMI and trap the I/O instruction. The system can then determine which device is not responding by using the I/O port information in the I/O Trap doubleword. It can then figure out why the device is not responding, fix the device, and re-execute the I/O instruction. It can reconstruct and then re-execute the I/O instruction in the SMM handler by using the SMM I/O trap information. More likely, it can use the SMM I/O restart mechanism to cause the processor to restart the I/O instruction immediately after the RSM.

6.8.1 SMM I/O Trap

SMM I/O Trap

Offset FEC0h

31	16	15	12	11	10	9	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
PORT			BRP		TF	NMIM	reserved	SZ32	SZ16	SZ8	REP	STR	V	R/W

Bit	Name	Function	R/W
31–16	PORT	Trapped I/O Port	R
15–12	BRP	I/O Breakpoint Matches	R
11	TF	EFLAGS TF Value	R
10	NMIM	NMI Mask	R
9–7	reserved	RAZ	R
6	SZ32	Port Access was 32-bit	R
5	SZ16	Port Access was 16-bit	R
4	SZ8	Port Access was 8-bit	R
3	REP	Repeated Port Access	R
2	STR	String Based Port Access	R
1	V	I/O Trap Word Valid Bit	R
0	R/W	Port Access Type 0 = Write (OUT instruction) 1 = Read (IN instruction)	R

6.8.2 SMM I/O Restart Byte

The processor initializes the I/O trap restart slot to 00h on entry into SMM. If SMM is entered as a result of a trapped I/O instruction, the processor indicates the validity of the I/O instruction by setting or clearing bit 1 of the I/O trap doubleword at offset FEC0h in the SMM state save area. The SMM service routine should test bit 1 of the I/O trap doubleword to determine if a valid I/O instruction was being executed when entering SMM and before writing the I/O trap restart slot. If the I/O instruction is valid, the SMM service routine can safely rewrite the I/O trap restart slot with the value FFh, causing the processor to re-execute the trapped I/O instruction when the RSM instruction is executed. If the I/O instruction is invalid, writing the I/O trap restart slot has undefined results.

If a second SMI# is asserted and a valid I/O instruction is trapped by the first SMM handler, the CPU services the second SMI# prior to re-executing the trapped I/O instruction. The second entry into SMM will not have bit 1 of the I/O trap doubleword set, and the second SMM service routine must not rewrite the I/O trap restart slot.

During a simultaneous SMI# I/O instruction trap and debug breakpoint trap, the processor first responds to the SMI# and postpones recognizing the debug exception until after the RSM instruction returns from SMM. If the debug registers DR3–DR0 are used while in SMM, they must be saved and restored by the SMM handler. The processor automatically saves and restores DR7 and DR6. If the I/

O trap restart slot in the SMM state save area contains the value FFh when the RSM instruction is executed, the debug trap does not occur until after the I/O instruction is re-executed.

SMM I/O Restart Byte

Offset FEC8h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W
7–0	RST	I/O Restart Byte 00h = Do not restart FFh = Restart I/O instruction	R/W

6.9 Exceptions and Interrupts in SMM

When SMM is entered, the processor masks INTR, NMI, SMI, INIT, and A20M interrupts. The processor clears the IF flag to disable INTR interrupts. To enable INTR interrupts within SMM, the SMM handler must set the IF flag to 1. A20M is disabled so that address bit 20 is always generated externally when in SMM.

Generating an INTR interrupt is a method for unmasking NMI interrupts in SMM. The processor recognizes the assertion of NMI within SMM immediately after the completion of an IRET instruction. The NMI can be enabled by using an INTR interrupt. Once NMI is recognized within SMM, NMI recognition remains enabled until SMM is exited, at which point NMI masking is restored to the state it was in before entering SMM.

Because the IF flag is cleared when entering SMM, the HLT instruction should not be executed in SMM without first setting the IF bit to 1. Setting this bit to 1 enables the processor to exit the Halt state by means of an INTR interrupt.

The processor still responds to the DBREQ and STPCLK interrupts as well as to all exceptions that might be caused by the SMM handler.

6.10 Protected SMM and ASeg/TSeg

System management memory, SMRAM, is defined by two ranges. The ASeg range is located at a fixed range from A0000h–BFFFFh. The TSeg ranges it located at a variable base. The size of the TSeg range is controlled by a variable mask. SMRAM provides a safe location for system management code and data that is not readily accessible by applications. The SMM interrupt handler can be located in one of these two ranges if protection is desired, or it can be located outside these ranges in the rest of memory.

6.10.1 SMM_MASK Register

This register holds the mask of the TSeg range as well as configuration information for both the fixed ASeg range and the variable TSeg range.

SMM_MASK Register

MSR C001_0113h

63													40	39													32						
reserved														MASK (22–15)																			
														17	16	15	14			12	11	10			8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
MASK (14–0)														reserved		TMTypeDram		reserved		AMTypeDram		reserved		TMTypeIoWc	AMTypeIcWc	TClose	AClose	TValid	AValid				

Bit	Name	Function	R/W
63–40	reserved	RAZ	
39–17	MASK	SMRAM TSeg Range Mask	R/W
16–15	reserved	RAZ	
14–12	TMTypDram	SMRAM TSeg Range Memory Type	R/W
11	reserved	RAZ	
10–8	AMTypeDram	SMRAM ASeg Range Memory Type	R/W
7–6	reserved	RAZ	
5	TMTypeloWc	Non-SMRAM TSeg Range Memory Type	R/W
4	AMTypeIcWc	Non-SMRAM ASeg Range Memory Type	R/W
3	TClose	Send TSeg Range Data Accesses to Non-SMRAM	R/W
2	AClose	Send ASeg Range Data Accesses to Non-SMRAM	R/W
1	TValid	Enable TSeg SMRAM Range	R/W
0	AValid	Enable ASeg SMRAM Range	R/W

SMRAM TSeg Range Mask (MASK)—Bits 39–17. Mask of the SMRAM TSeg Range.

SMRAM TSeg Range Memory Type (TMTypDram)—Bits 14–12. Memory Type for the SMRAM TSeg Range.

SMRAM ASeg Range Memory Type (AMTypeDram)—Bits 10–8. Memory Type for the SMRAM ASeg Range.

Non-SMRAM TSeg Range Memory Type (TMTypeloWc)—Bit 5. Memory Type for the non-SMRAM TSeg Range.

Non-SMRAM ASeg Range Memory Type (AMTypeIcWc)—Bit 4. Memory Type for the non-SMRAM ASeg Range.

Send TSeg Range Data Accesses to Non-SMRAM (TClose)—Bit 3. Send Data Accesses to the TSeg Range to Non-SMRAM.

Send ASeg Range Data Accesses to Non-SMRAM (AClose)—Bit 2. Send Data Accesses to the ASeg Range to Non-SMRAM.

Enable TSeg SMRAM Range (TValid)—Bit 1. Enables the TSeg SMRAM Range.

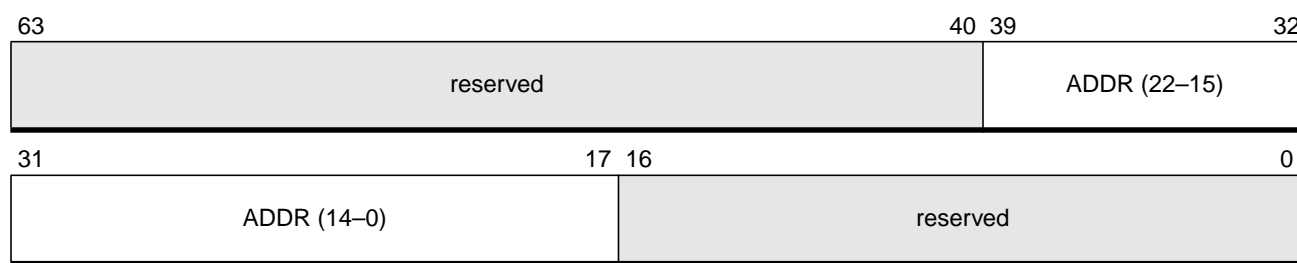
Enable ASeg SMRAM Range (AValid)—Bit 0. Enables the ASeg SMRAM Range.

6.10.2 SMM_ADDR Register

This register holds the base of the variable TSeg range.

SMM_ADDR Register

MSR C001_0112h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W
63–40	reserved	RAZ	
39–17	ADDR	Base of the SMRAM TSeg Range	R/W
16–0	reserved	RAZ	

6.10.3 SMM ASeg

The SMM ASeg address range is A0000–BFFFFh. The ASeg is enabled by the AValid bit in the SMM_MASK MSR.

When the ASeg is enabled, the MTRR memory maps are not used for the addresses in A0000–BFFFFh memory range. Instead, settings in the SMM_MASK register and whether the processor is in SMM or not determine how those addresses are handled. If not in SMM, the addresses are mapped to I/O space and do not access DRAM. The memory type used is either UC or WC, based on the AMTypeIoWc bit in the SMM_MASK register. When inside SMM, the accesses to the ASeg memory range are directed to DRAM.

The memory type is determined using the normal memory type encoding and is specified in AMTypeDram. Table 32 lists these types.

Table 32. SMM ASeg-Enabled Memory Types

Address Range	In SMM	Out of AMTypeIoWc=0	SMM AMTypeIoWc=1
0–9FFFh	Normal MTRR	Normal MTRR	Normal MTRR
A0000–BFFFFh	DRAM, AMTypeDram	I/O, UC	I/O, WC
C0000h–Max	Normal MTRR	Normal MTRR	Normal MTRR

The SMM save state and code can be cached. After leaving SMM, the same addresses will bypass the caches and DRAM and access the I/O memory subsystem. This protects the SMM memory from corruption by programs outside of SMM.

6.10.4 SMM TSeg

The TSeg is similar to the ASeg except it provides more programability and therefore allows more space to be allocated in a different area of memory for the SMM handler. It is enabled by the TValid bit in the SMM_MASK register. It uses the SMM_ADDR register to specify its base. It can be used with ASeg or by itself. When it is used with ASeg, the two spaces should not overlap. If they do overlap, the memory types should be consistent in both the ASeg map and the TSeg map for the overlapping addresses. Otherwise, undefined behavior will occur.

The SMM TSeg begins at the address specified in SMM_ADDR concatenated with 0s in the lower 17 bits, forcing the TSeg to begin on a 128-Kbyte boundary. The ending of TSeg is specified by the SMM_Mask[39:17]. The SMM_Mask and SMM_ADDR function as the variable-range MTRRs. Each address generated by the processor is ANDed with the SMM_MASK and compared to the SMM_ADDR ANDed with the mask. If the values are equal, the address is within the TSeg range. For example, suppose you wish to create a TSeg starting at the 1-Mbyte address boundary and extending 256 Kbytes. The SMM_ADDR register would be set to 0010_0000h and the SMM_MASK to FFFC_0002h. This will make the TSeg range from 0010_0000–0013_FFFFh.

The TSeg memory type table is similar to the ASeg memory type table. When not in SMM and TSeg is enabled, the addresses within the TSeg range are directed to I/O space with either a UC memory type or a WC memory type, based on the TMTypeIoWc bit in the SMM_MASK register. When within SMM, the accesses are directed to DRAM with a memory type specified by TMTypeDram.

Table 33. SMM TSeg-Enabled Memory Types

Address Range	In SMM	Out of SMM	
		TMTypeIoWc=0	TMTypeIoWc=1
<TSeg Range	Normal MTRR	Normal MTRR	Normal MTRR
TSeg Range	DRAM, TMTypeDram	I/O, UC	I/O, WC
> TSeg Range	Normal MTRR	Normal MTRR	Normal MTRR

6.10.5 Closing SMM

Sometimes within SMM code with ASeg or TSeg enabled, there is a requirement to access the I/O space at the same address as the current SMM segment. That is typically only accessible outside of SMM. To accomplish this function, the Aclose and Tclose bits from SMM_MASK register are used. When the Aclose bit is set, data cache accesses to the ASeg that would normally go to DRAM are redirected to I/O, with the memory type specified by AMTypeIoWc.

The same function applies to the TSeg. Instruction cache accesses and Page Directory/Table accesses still access the SMM code in DRAM. When the SMM handler is done accessing the I/O space, it must clear the appropriate close bit. Failure to do so and then issuing an RSM will probably cause the processor to enter shutdown, as the save state will be read from I/O space.

6.10.6 Locking SMM

The SMM registers can be locked by setting the SMMLOCK (HWCR, bit 0). Once set, the SMM_BASE, the SMM_ADDR, all but the two close bits of SMM_MASK and the RSMSPCYCDIS, SMISPCYCDIS, and SMMLOCK bits of HWCR are locked and cannot be changed. The only way to unlock the SMM registers is to assert reset. This provides security to the SMM mechanism. The BIOS can lock the SMM environment after setting it up so that it can not be tampered with.

6.11 SMM Special Cycles

Special cycles can be initiated on entry and exit from SMM to acknowledge to the system that these transitions are occurring. This allows secure spaces external to the processor to be secured within the SMM environment as well. It also helps with synchronizing the SMI interrupt across multiple processor systems. These special cycles can be disabled by setting the SMISPCYCDIS to 1 to disable the entry special cycle and setting the RSMSPCYCDIS bit to 1 to disable the exit special cycle.

7 Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC)

All AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processor-based systems must support 64-bit operating systems. As a result, all platforms must support APIC and declare it to the operating system in the appropriate tables.

The local APIC contains logic to receive interrupts from a variety of sources and to send interrupts to other local APICs, as well as registers to control its behavior and report status.

Interrupts can be received from:

- HyperTransport™ I/O devices, including the I/O hub (I/O APICs)
- Other local APICs (inter-processor interrupts)
- APIC timer
- Thermal events
- Performance counters
- Legacy local interrupts from the I/O hub (INTR and NMI)
- APIC internal errors

The APIC timer, thermal events, performance counters, local interrupts, and internal errors are all considered local interrupt sources, and their routing is controlled by local vector table entries. These entries assign a message type and vector to each interrupt, allow them to be masked, and track the status of the interrupt.

I/O and inter-processor interrupts have their message type and vector assigned at the source and are unaltered by the local APIC. They carry a destination field and a mode bit that together determine which local APICs will accept them. The destination mode (DM) bit specifies if the interrupt request packet should be handled in Physical or Logical destination mode.

- In physical destination mode, if the destination field is FFh, the interrupt is a broadcast and is accepted by all local APICs. Otherwise, the interrupt is only accepted by the local APIC whose APIC ID matches the destination field of the interrupt. Physical mode allows up to 255 APICs to be addressed individually.

- In logical destination mode, a local APIC accepts interrupts selected by the logical destination register (LOG_DEST) and the destination field of the interrupt using either cluster or flat format, as configured by the destination format register.
 - If flat destinations are in use, bits 7–0 of the LOG_DEST field are checked against bits 7–0 of the arriving interrupt's Destination Field. If any bit position is set in both fields, this APIC is a valid destination. Flat format allows up to 8 APICs to be addressed individually.
 - If cluster destinations are in use, bits 7–4 of the LOG_DEST field are checked against bits 7–4 of the arriving interrupt's destination field, identifying the cluster. If all of bits 7–4 match, then bits 3–0 of the LOG_DEST and the interrupt destination are checked for any bit positions that are set in both fields, choosing processors within the cluster. If both conditions are met, this APIC is a valid destination. Cluster format allows 15 clusters of 4 APICs each to be addressed.
 - In both flat and cluster formats, if the destination field is FFh, the interrupt is a broadcast and is accepted by all local APICs.

7.1 Interrupt Delivery

SMI, NMI, INIT, Startup, and External interrupts are classified as non-vectorized interrupts.

When an APIC accepts a non-vectorized interrupt, it is handled directly by the processor instead of being queued in the APIC. When an APIC accepts a fixed or lowest priority interrupt, it sets the bit in the interrupt request register (IRR) corresponding to the vector in the interrupt. (For local interrupt sources, this comes from the vector field in that interrupt's local vector table entry.) If a subsequent interrupt with the same vector arrives when the corresponding IRR bit is already set, the two interrupts are collapsed into one. Vectors 0–15 are reserved.

7.2 Vectored Interrupt Handling

The task priority register (TPR_PRI) and processor priority register (PROC_PRI) each contain an 8-bit priority, divided into a main priority (bits 7–4) and a priority sub-class (3–0). The task priority is assigned by software to set a threshold priority at which the processor will be interrupted.

To calculate processor priority, an 8-bit ISR vector is set based on the highest bit set in the in-service register (ISR). Like the TPR_PRI and PROC_PRI, this vector is divided into a main priority (7–4) and priority sub-class (3–0). The main priority of the TPR_PRI and ISR are compared and the highest is the PROC_PRI, as follows:

```
If (TPR_PRI[7:4] >= ISRVect[7:4]) PROC_PRI = TPR_PRI
Else                                PROC_PRI = {ISRVect[7:4], 0h}
```

The resulting processor priority is used to determine if any accepted interrupts (indicated by IRR bits) are high enough priority to be serviced by the processor. When the processor is ready to service an interrupt, the highest bit in the IRR is cleared, and the corresponding bit is set in the ISR. The

corresponding trigger mode register (TMR) bit is set if the interrupt is level-triggered and cleared if edge-triggered.

When the processor has completed service for an interrupt, it performs a write to the end of interrupt (EOI) register, clearing the highest ISR bit and causing the next-highest interrupt to be serviced. If the corresponding TMR bit is set, EOI messages will be sent to all APICs to complete service of the interrupt at the source.

7.3 Spurious Interrupts

In the event that the task priority is set to or above the level of the interrupt to be serviced, the local APIC will deliver a spurious interrupt vector to the processor, as specified by the spurious interrupt vector register. The ISR will be unchanged and no EOI will occur.

7.4 Lowest-Priority Arbitration

Fixed and non-vectored interrupts are accepted by their destination APICs without arbitration.

Delivery of lowest-priority interrupts requires all APICs to arbitrate to determine which one will accept the interrupt. If focus processor checking is enabled (bit 9 of the spurious interrupt vector register cleared), then the focus processor for an interrupt will always accept the interrupt. A processor is the focus of an interrupt if it is already servicing that interrupt (corresponding ISR bit is set) or if it already has a pending request for that interrupt (corresponding IRR bit is set). If there is no focus processor for an interrupt, or focus processor checking is disabled, then each APIC will calculate an arbitration priority value, and the one with the lowest result will accept the interrupt.

To calculate arbitration priority, an 8-bit IRR Vector is set based on the highest bit set in the IRR. Like the ISR, TPR_PRI, and PROC_PRI, this vector is divided into a main priority (7–4) and priority sub-class (3–0). The main priority of the TPR_PRI, ISR, and IRR are compared and the highest is the new ARB_PRI, as follows:

```
If (TPR_PRI[7:4] >= IRRVect[7:4] and
    TPR_PRI[7:4] > ISRVect[7:4]) ARB_PRI = TPR_PRI
Else if (IRRVect[7:4] > ISRVect[7:4]) ARB_PRI = {IRRVect[7:4], 0h}
Else ARB_PRI = {ISRVect[7:4], 0h}
```

7.5 Inter-Processor Interrupts

In order to redirect an interrupt to another processor, originate an interrupt to another processor, or allow a processor to interrupt itself, the interrupt command register (ICR) provides a mechanism for generating interrupts. A write to the low doubleword of the ICR causes an interrupt to be generated, with the properties specified by the ICR low and ICR high fields.

7.6 APIC Timer Operation

The local APIC contains a 32-bit timer, controlled by the Timer LVT entry, initial count, and divide configuration registers. The processor bus clock is divided by the value in the timer divide configuration register to obtain a time base for the timer. When the timer initial count register is written, the value is copied into the timer current count register. The current count register is decremented at the rate of the divided clock. When the count reaches 0, a timer interrupt is generated with the vector specified in the Timer LVT entry. If the Timer LVT entry specifies periodic operation, the current count register is reloaded with the initial count value, and it continues to decrement at the rate of the divided clock. If the mask bit in the timer LVT entry is set, timer interrupts are not generated.

7.7 State at Reset

At power-up or reset, all registers take on the values listed in their descriptions. SMI, NMI, INIT, Startup, and LINT interrupts may be accepted.

When the APIC is software-disabled, pending interrupts in the ISR and IRR are held, but further fixed, lowest-priority, and ExtInt interrupts will not be accepted. All LVT entry mask bits are set and cannot be cleared.

When a processor accepts an INIT interrupt, the APIC is reset as at power-up, with the exception that APIC_ID is unaffected.

7.8 Register Summary

All APIC registers are accessed with memory reads and writes of (APIC_BASE+Offset). APIC_BASE is MSR 001Bh and defaults to 00_FEE0_0000h.

The APIC registers and their offsets are listed in Table 34.

Table 34. APIC Register Summary

Offset (Hex)	Mnemonic	Name
20	APIC_ID	APIC ID Register
30	APIC_VER	APIC Version Register
80	TPR_PRI	Task Priority Register
90	ARB_PRI	Arbitration Priority Register
A0	PROC_PRI	Processor Priority Register
B0	EOI	End Of Interrupt Register
D0	LOG_DEST	Logical Destination Register
E0	DEST_FORMAT	Destination Format Register
F0	SPUR_INTR_VEC	Spurious Interrupt Vector Register
100-170	ISR	In-Service Registers
180-1F0	TMR	Trigger Mode Registers
200-270	IRR	Interrupt Request Registers
280	ERR_STAT	Error Status Register
300	ICRLO	Interrupt Command Register Low (bits 31–0)
310	ICRHI	Interrupt Command Register High (bits 63–32)
320	TIMER_LVT	Timer Local Vector Table Entry
330	THERMAL_LVT	Thermal Local Vector Table Entry
340	PERF_CNT_LVT	Performance Counter Local Vector Table Entry
350	LINT0_LVT	Local Interrupt 0 Local Vector Table Entry
360	LINT1_LVT	Local Interrupt 1 Local Vector Table Entry
370	ERROR_LVT	Error Local Vector Table Entry
380	INIT_CNT	Timer Initial Count Register
390	CURR_CNT	Timer Current Count Register
3E0	TIMER_DVD_CFG	Timer Divide Configuration Register

7.8.1 APIC ID Register

APIC_ID Register

Offset 20h

31	24	23	0
APICID		reserved	

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	APICID	APIC Identification	R/W	Node ID
23–0	reserved		R/O	00_0000h

Field Descriptions

APIC Identification (APICID)—Bits 31–24. Software must ensure that all APICs are assigned unique APIC IDs. When both ApicExtId and ApicExtBrdCst in the HyperTransport™ Transaction Control Register are set, all 8 bits of APIC ID are used. When either ApicExtID or ApicExtBrdCst is clear, only bits 3–0 of APIC ID are used, and bits 7–4 are reserved. Node ID is initially 00h if this is the boot strap processor or 07h for all other nodes.

7.8.2 APIC Version Register

APIC_VER Register

Offset 30h

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
reserved		MaxLVTEntry		reserved		Version	

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	reserved		R/O	00h
23–16	MaxLVTEntry	Maximum LVT Entry	R/O	05h
15–8	reserved		R/O	00h
7–0	Version	Version	R/O	10h

Field Descriptions

Max LVT Entry—Bits 23–16. This field indicates the number of entries in the Local Vector Table minus one.

Version—Bits 7–0. This field indicates the version number of this APIC implementation.

7.8.3 Task Priority Register

TPR_PRI Register

Offset 80h

31	8	7	0
reserved			Priority

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–8	reserved		R/O	0000_00h
7–0	Priority	Priority	R/W	00h

Field Descriptions

Priority—Bits 7–0. This field is assigned by software to set a threshold priority at which the processor will be interrupted.

7.8.4 Arbitration Priority Register

ARB_PRI Register

Offset 90h

31	8	7	0
reserved			Priority

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–8	reserved		R/O	0000_00h
7–0	Priority	Priority	R/O	00h

Field Descriptions

Priority—Bits 7–0. This field indicates the processor's current priority, for a task being serviced, an interrupt being serviced, or an interrupt that is pending, and is used to arbitrate between processors to determine which will accept a lowest-priority interrupt request.

7.8.5 Processor Priority Register

PROC_PRI Register

Offset A0h

31	8	7	0
reserved			Priority

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–8	reserved		R/O	0000_00h
7–0	Priority	Priority	R/O	00h

Field Descriptions

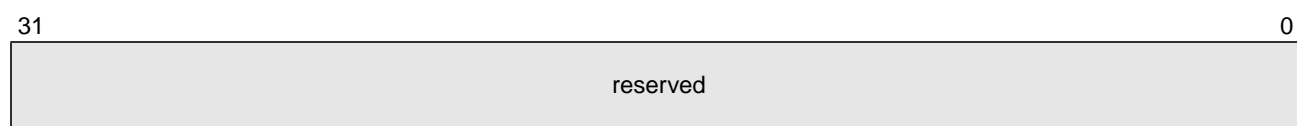
Priority—Bits 7–0. This field indicates the processor's current priority servicing a task or interrupt, and is used to determine if any pending interrupts should be serviced.

7.8.6 End of Interrupt Register

This register is written by the software interrupt handler to indicate that servicing of the current interrupt is complete.

EOI Register

Offset B0h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–0	reserved		W/O	XXXX_XXXXh

7.8.7 Logical Destination Register

LOG_DEST Register

Offset D0h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–24	Destination	Destination	R/W	00h
23–0	reserved		R/O	00_0000h

Field Descriptions

Destination (Destination)—Bits 31–24. This field contains this APIC's destination identification, and is used to determine which interrupts should be accepted.

7.8.8 Destination Format Register

DEST_FORMAT Register

Offset E0h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–28	Format	Format	R/W	Fh
27–0	reserved		R/O	FFF_FFFh

Field Descriptions

Format (Format)—Bits 31–28. 0h and Fh are the only allowed values. This field controls which format to use when accepting interrupts with a logical destination mode.

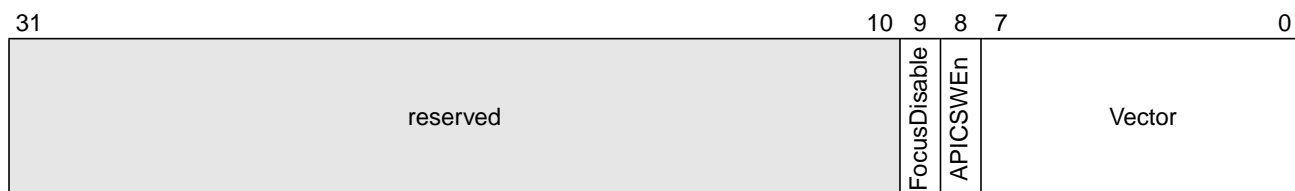
0h = Cluster destinations are used.

Fh = Flat destinations are used.

7.8.9 Spurious Interrupt Vector Register

SPUR_INTR_VEC Register

Offset F0h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–10	reserved		R/O	0000_00h
9	FocusDisable	Focus Disable	R/W	0
8	APICSWEn	APIC Software Enable	R/W	0
7–0	Vector	Vector	R/W	FFh

Field Descriptions

Focus Disable (FocusDisable)—Bit 9. This bit disables focus processor checking during lowest-priority arbitrated interrupts.

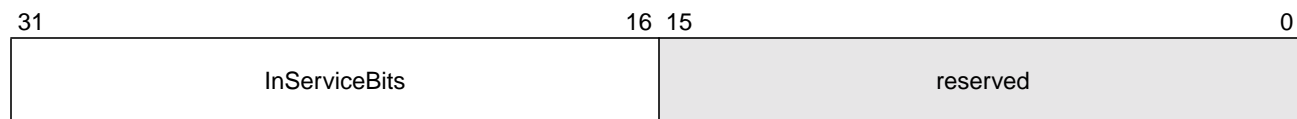
APIC Software Enable (APICSWEn)—Bit 8. When APICSWEnable is cleared, SMI, NMI, INIT, Startup, and LINT interrupts may be accepted, pending interrupts in the ISR and IRR are held, but further Fixed, Lowest-Priority, and ExtInt interrupts will not be accepted. All LVT entry Mask bits are set and cannot be cleared.

Vector—Bits 7–0. When ApicExtSpur in the HyperTransport™ Transaction Control Register is set, bits 3–0 of Vector are writable. When ApicExtSpur is clear, bits 3–0 are read-only 1111b. This field contains the vector that is sent to the processor in the event of a spurious interrupt.

7.8.10 In-Service Registers

ISR Register

Offset 100h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	InServiceBits	In-Service Bits	R/O	0000h
15–0	reserved		R/O	0000h

Field Descriptions

In-Service Bits (InServiceBits)—Bits 31–16. These bits are set when the corresponding interrupt is being serviced by the CPU.

ISR Registers

Offsets 170h, 160h, 150h, 140h, 130h, 120h, 110h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–0	InServiceBits	In-Service Bits	R/O	0000_0000h

Field Descriptions

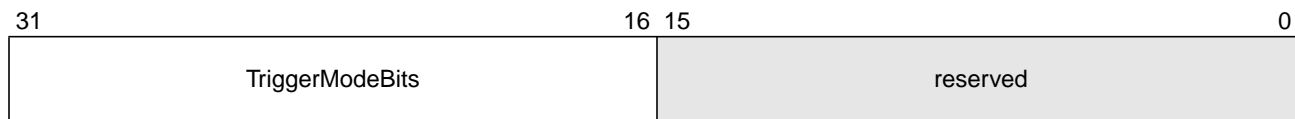
In-Service Bits (InServiceBits)—Bits 31–0. These bits are set when the corresponding interrupt is being serviced by the CPU. Interrupts are mapped as follows:

ISR	Interrupt number
Offset 110h	63–32
Offset 120h	95–64
Offset 130h	127–96
Offset 140h	159–128
Offset 150h	191–160
Offset 160h	223–192
Offset 170h	255–224

7.8.11 Trigger Mode Registers

TMR Register

Offset 180h



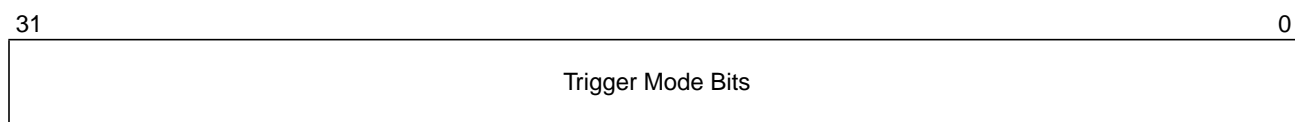
Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	TriggerModeBits	Trigger Mode Bits	R/O	0000h
15–0	reserved		R/O	0000h

Field Descriptions

Trigger Mode Bits (TriggerModeBits)—Bits 31–16. The Trigger Mode bit for each corresponding interrupt is updated when an interrupt enters servicing. It is 0 for edge-triggered interrupts and 1 for level-triggered interrupts.

TMR Registers

Offsets 1F0h, 1E0h, 1D0h, 1C0h, 1B0h, 1A0h, 190h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–0	TriggerModeBits	Trigger Mode Bits	R/O	0000_0000h

Field Descriptions

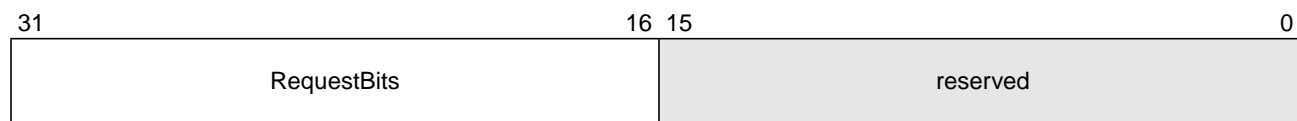
Trigger Mode Bits (TriggerModeBits)—Bits 31–0. The Trigger Mode bit for each corresponding interrupt is updated when an interrupt enters servicing. It is 0 for edge-triggered interrupts and 1 for level-triggered interrupts. Interrupts are mapped as follows:

TMR	Interrupt number
Offset 190h	63–32
Offset 1A0h	95–64
Offset 1B0h	127–96
Offset 1C0h	159–128
Offset 1D0h	191–160
Offset 1E0h	223–192
Offset 1F0h	255–224

7.8.12 Interrupt Request Registers

IRR Register

Offset 200h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–16	RequestBits	Interrupt Requests Bits	R/O	0000h
15–0	reserved		R/O	0000h

Field Descriptions

Interrupt Request Bits (RequestBits)—Bits 31–16. Request bits are set when the corresponding interrupt is accepted by the APIC.

IRR Registers

Offsets 270h, 260h, 250h, 240h, 230h, 220h, 210h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–0	RequestBits	Interrupt Requests Bits	R/O	0000_0000h

Field Descriptions

Interrupt Request Bits (RequestBits)—Bits 31–0. Request bits are set when the corresponding interrupt is accepted by the APIC. Interrupts are mapped as follows:

IRR	Interrupt number
Offset 210h	63–32
Offset 220h	95–64
Offset 230h	127–96
Offset 240h	159–128
Offset 250h	191–160
Offset 260h	223–192
Offset 270h	255–224

7.8.13 Error Status Register

This register must be written to trigger an update before it can be read. Each write causes the internal error state to be loaded into this register, clearing the internal error state. A second write before another error occurs causes this register to be cleared.

ERR_STAT Register

Offset 280h

31								8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
reserved								IllegalRegAddr	RcvdIllegalVector	SentIllegalVector	reserved	RcvAcceptError	SendAcceptError	reserved		

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–8	reserved		R/O	0000_00h
7	IllegalRegAddr	Illegal Register Address	W/R	0
6	RcvdIllegalVector	Received Illegal Vector	W/R	0
5	SentIllegalVector	Sent Illegal Vector	W/R	0
4	reserved		R/O	0
3	RcvAcceptError	Receive Accept Error	W/R	0
2	SendAcceptError	Send Accept Error	W/R	0
1–0	reserved		R/O	00b

Field Descriptions

Illegal Register Address (IllegalRegAddr)—Bit 7. This bit indicates that an access to a nonexistent register location within this APIC was attempted.

Received Illegal Vector (RcvdIllegalVector)—Bit 6. This bit indicates that this APIC received a message with an illegal Vector (00h to 0Fh for fixed and lowest priority interrupts).

Sent Illegal Vector (SentIllegalVector)—Bit 5. This bit indicates that this APIC attempted to send a message with an illegal Vector (00h to 0Fh for fixed and lowest priority interrupts).

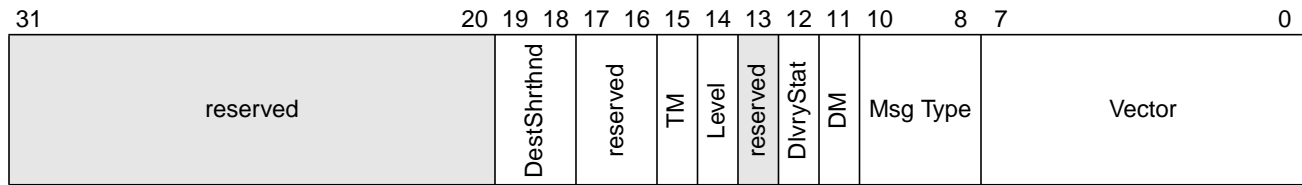
Receive Accept Error (RcvAcceptError)—Bit 3. This bit indicates that a message received by this APIC was not accepted by this or any other APIC.

Send Accept Error (SendAcceptError)—Bit 2. This bit indicates that a message sent by this APIC was not accepted by any APIC.

7.8.14 Interrupt Command Register Low

ICRLO Register

Offset 300h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–20	reserved		R/O	000h
19–18	DestShrthnd	Destination Shorthand	R/W	00b
17–16	reserved		R/O	00b
15	TM	Trigger Mode	R/W	0
14	Level	Level	R/W	0
13	reserved		R/O	0
12	DlvryStat	Delivery Status	R/O	0
11	DM	Destination Mode	R/W	0
10–8	MsgType	Message Type	R/W	000b
7–0	Vector	Vector	R/W	00h

Field Descriptions

Destination Shorthand (DestShrthnd)—Bits 19–18. This field provides a quick way to specify a destination for a message. If All Including Self or All Excluding Self are used, then DM is ignored and physical is automatically used.

00b =Destination Field

01b =Self

10b =All Including Self

11b =All Excluding Self (Note that this sends a message with a destination encoding of all 1's, so if lowest priority is used, the message could end up being reflected back to this APIC.)

Trigger Mode (TM)—Bit 15. This bit can be 0 for Edge or 1 for Level.

Level (Level)—Bit 14. This bit can be 0 for deasserted or 1 or asserted.

Delivery Status (DlvryStat)—Bit 12. This bit is set to indicate that the interrupt has not yet been accepted by the destination CPU(s).

Destination Mode (DM)—Bit 11. This bit can be 0 for Physical or 1 for Logical.

Message Type (MsgType)—Bits 10–8. The encoding for this field is as follows:

000b = Fixed

001b = Lowest Priority

010b = SMI

011b = Remote Read

100b = NMI
 101b = INIT
 110b = Startup
 111b = External Interrupt

Note: Not all combinations of ICR fields are valid. Only those combinations listed in Table 35 are valid.

Table 35. Valid Combinations of ICR Fields

Message Type (MsgType)	Trigger Mode (TM)	Level (Lvl)	Destination Shorthand (DestShrthnd)
Fixed	Edge	X	X
	Level	Assert	X
Lowest Priority, SMI, NMI, INIT	Edge	X	Dest or All Excluding Self
	Level	Assert	Dest or All Excluding Self
Startup	X	X	Dest or All Excluding Self
Note: X indicates a “don't care”.			

Vector (Vector)—Bits 7–0. This field contains the vector that will be sent for this interrupt source.

7.8.15 Interrupt Command Register High

ICRHI Register

Offset 310h

63	56	55	32
DestinationField	reserved		

Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	DestinationField	Destination Field	R/W	00h
55–32	reserved		R/O	00_0000h

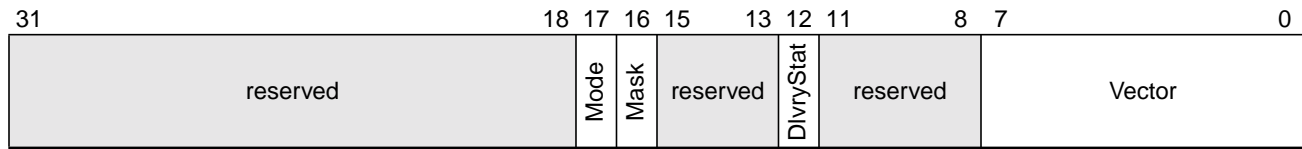
Field Descriptions

Destination Field (DestinationField)—Bits 63–56. This field contains the destination encoding used when the destination shorthand is 00b.

7.8.16 Timer Local Vector Table Entry

TIMER_LVT Register

Offset 320h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–18	reserved		R/O	0000h
17	Mode	Mode	R/W	0
16	Mask	Mask	R/W	1
15–13	reserved		R/O	000b
12	DlvryStat	Delivery Status	R/O	0
11–8	reserved		R/O	0h
7–0	Vector	Vector	R/W	00h

Field Descriptions

Mode (Mode)—Bit 17. This bit is 0 for One-shot and 1 for Periodic.

Mask (Mask)—Bit 16. If this bit is set, this LVT Entry will not generate interrupts.

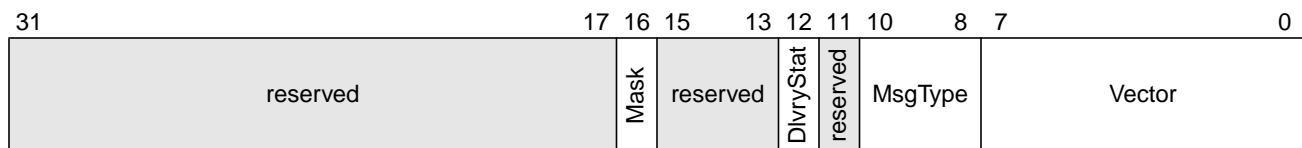
Delivery Status (DlvryStat)—Bit 12. This bit is set to indicate that the interrupt has not yet been accepted by the CPU.

Vector (Vector)—Bits 7–0. This field contains the vector that will be sent for this interrupt source.

7.8.17 Thermal Local Vector Table Entry

THERMAL_LVT Register

Offset 330h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–17	reserved		R/O	0000h
16	Mask	Mask	R/W	1
15–13	reserved		R/O	000b
12	DlvryStat	Delivery Status	R/O	0
11	reserved		R/O	0
10–8	MsgType	Message Type	R/W	000b
7–0	Vector	Vector	R/W	00h

Field Descriptions

Mask (Mask)—Bit 16. If this bit is set, this LVT Entry will not generate interrupts.

Delivery Status (DlvryStat)—Bit 12. This bit is set to indicate that the interrupt has not yet been accepted by the CPU.

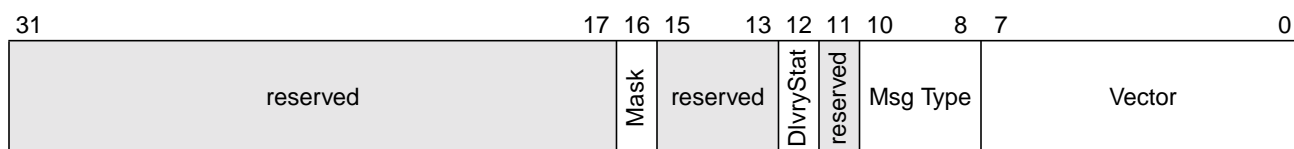
Message Type (Msg Type)—Bits 10–8. Only Message Types 000b (Fixed) and 100b (NMI) are legal.

Vector (Vector)—Bits 7–0. This field contains the vector that will be sent for this interrupt source.

7.8.18 Performance Counter Local Vector Table Entry

PERF_CNT_LVT Register

Offset 340h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–17	reserved		R/O	0000h
16	Mask	Mask	R/W	1
15–13	reserved		R/O	000b
12	DlvryStat	Delivery Status	R/O	0
11	reserved		R/O	0
10–8	MsgType	Message Type	R/W	000b
7–0	Vector	Vector	R/W	00h

Field Descriptions

Mask (Mask)—Bit 16. If this bit is set, this LVT Entry will not generate interrupts.

Delivery Status (DlvryStat)—Bit 12. This bit is set to indicate that the interrupt has not yet been accepted by the CPU.

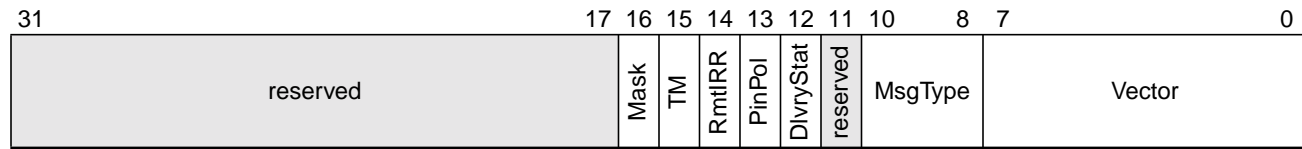
Message Type (MsgType)—Bits 10–8. Only Message Types 000b (Fixed) and 100b (NMI) are legal.

Vector (Vector)—Bits 7–0. This field contains the vector that will be sent for this interrupt source.

7.8.19 Local Interrupt 0 (Legacy INTR) Local Vector Table Entry Register

LINT0_LVT Register

Offset 350h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–17	reserved		R/O	0000h
16	Mask	Mask	R/W	1
15	TM	Trigger Mode	R/W	0
14	RmtIRR	Remote IRR	R/O	0
13	PinPol	Pin Polarity	R/W	0
12	DlvryStat	Delivery Status	R/O	0
11	reserved		R/O	0
10–8	MsgType	Message Type	R/W	000b
7–0	Vector	Vector	R/W	00h

Field Descriptions

Mask (Mask)—Bit 16. If this bit is set, this LVT Entry will not generate interrupts.

Trigger Mode (TM)—Bit 15. This bit is set for level-triggered interrupts and clear for edge-triggered interrupts.

Remote IRR (RmtIRR)—Bit 14. If trigger mode is level, remote IRR is set when the interrupt has begun service. Remote IRR is cleared when the EOI has occurred.

Pin Polarity (PinPol)—Bit 13. This bit is not used because LINT interrupts are delivered by HyperTransport™ messages instead of individual pins.

Delivery Status (DlvryStat)—Bit 12. This bit is set to indicate that the interrupt has not yet been accepted by the CPU.

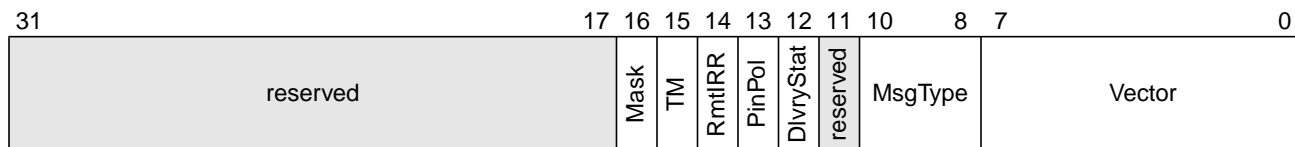
Message Type (MsgType)—Bits 10–8. Only Message Types 000b (Fixed), 100b (NMI), and 111b (External Interrupt) are legal.

Vector (Vector)—Bits 7–0. This field contains the vector that will be sent for this interrupt source.

7.8.20 Local Interrupt 1 (Legacy NMI) Local Vector Table Entry

LINT1_LVT Register

Offset 360h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–17	reserved		R/O	0000h
16	Mask	Mask	R/W	1
15	TM	Trigger Mode	R/W	0
14	RmtIRR	Remote IRR	R/O	0
13	PinPol	Pin Polarity	R/W	0
12	DlvryStat	Delivery Status	R/O	0
11	reserved		R/O	0
10–8	MsgType	Message Type	R/W	000b
7–0	Vector	Vector	R/W	00h

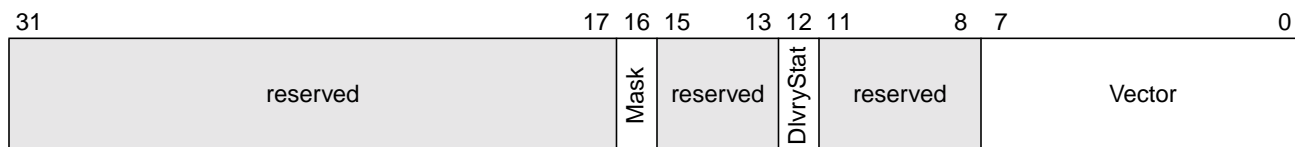
Field Descriptions

These fields are the same as those for Local Interrupt 0.

7.8.21 Error Local Vector Table Entry

ERROR_LVT Register

Offset 370h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–17	reserved		R/O	0000h
16	Mask	Mask	R/W	1
15–13	reserved		R/O	000b
12	DlvryStat	Delivery Status	R/O	0
11–8	reserved		R/O	0h
7–0	Vector	Vector	R/W	00h

Field Descriptions

Mask (Mask)—Bit 16. If this bit is set, this LVT Entry will not generate interrupts.

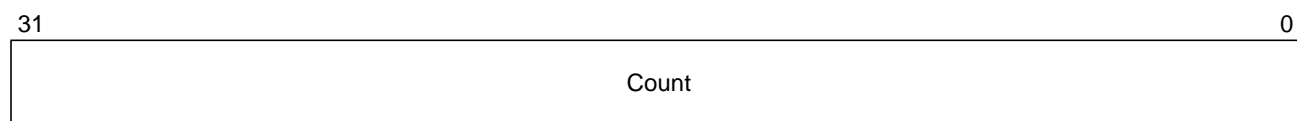
Delivery Status (DlvryStat)—Bit 12. This bit is set to indicate that the interrupt has not yet been accepted by the CPU.

Vector (Vector)—Bits 7–0. This field contains the vector that will be sent for this interrupt source.

7.8.22 Timer Initial Count Register

INIT_CNT Register

Offset 380h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–0	Count	Initial Count Value	R/W	0000_0000h

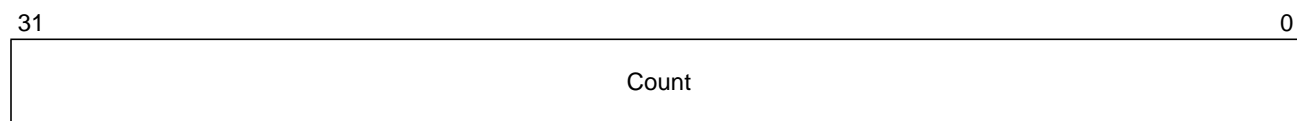
Field Descriptions

Count (Count)—Bits 31–0. This field contains the value copied into the current count register when the timer is loaded or reloaded.

7.8.23 Timer Current Count Register

CURR_CNT Register

Offset 390h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–0	Count	Current Count Value	R/O	0000_0000h

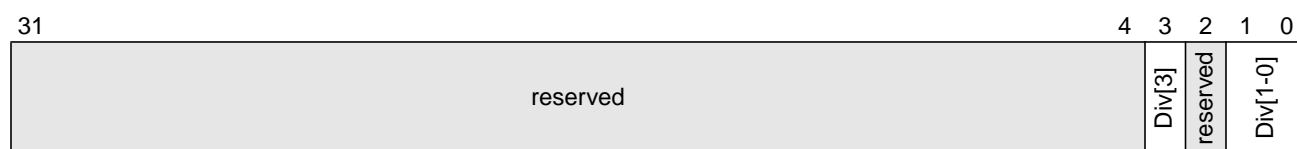
Field Descriptions

Count (Count)—Bits 31–0. This field contains the current value of the counter.

7.8.24 Timer Divide Configuration Register

TIMER_DVD_CFG Register

Offset 3E0h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W	Reset
31–4	reserved		R/O	0000_00h
3	Div[3]	Div[3]	R/W	0
2	reserved		R/O	0
1–0	Div[1–0]	Div[1–0]	R/W	00b

Field Descriptions

Div[3] and Div[1–0]—Bits 3 and 1–0. The Div bits are encoded as follows:

Div[3]	Div[1–0]	Resulting Timer Divide
0	00	2
0	01	4
0	10	8
0	11	16
1	00	32
1	01	64
1	10	128
1	11	1

8 HyperTransport™ Technology Configuration and Enumeration

An AMD Opteron™ processor or AMD Athlon™ 64 processor is a node connected to other nodes with coherent HyperTransport™ links. Function 0 HyperTransport technology configuration register values for each node must be initialized. A node is identified in the Node ID register (Function 0, Offset 60h) with a number from 0 to 7. Routing tables are used by the node to decide whether to accept a packet and/or forward it through any or all of its HyperTransport links.

Three examples of coherent HyperTransport technology initialization sequence are shown in this chapter: 1-node initialization, 2-node initialization, and a dynamic coherent initialization that can enumerate any number of nodes.

8.1 Initial Configuration Steps

For coherent HyperTransport technology initialization, the following steps are required before enumeration:

1. Coherent HyperTransport initialization is only performed by Node 0 (BSP). All the other nodes (APs) should bypass the HyperTransport initialization process.
2. Clearing Function 0, Offset 6Ch[0] enables the routing table for Node 0, and allows access to the memory controller on Node 0.
3. Node 0 is by definition connected to the HyperTransport I/O Hub, which means that Node 0 owns the compatibility chain. The link number that connects to HyperTransport I/O Hub should be written to Function 0, Offset 64h[SbLink].
4. Count coherent HyperTransport links on Node 0.

To perform the step 4 above, it is necessary to detect whether each HyperTransport link on a node is connected, and if the connected link type is coherent or noncoherent. The AMD Opteron™ processor supports up to three links, and the AMD Athlon™ 64 processor supports one link. For each HyperTransport link, the following steps are performed to detect the link connection status and type:

1. Check whether the Link Connect Pending bit is set in Function 0, Offset 98h[4].
2. If the Link Connect Pending bit is clear, check whether the Link Connected bit is set in Function 0, Offset 98h[0].
If the Link Connected bit is set, the testing port is connected to other node.
3. Check whether the Initialization Complete bit is set in Function 0, Offset 98h[1].
4. If the bit is set, check the Non Coherent bit in Function 0, Offset 98h[2].
The bit value 0 indicates a coherent HyperTransport link, while value 1 indicates a noncoherent link.

5. Record the number of coherent and noncoherent ports and their respective port numbers.

8.2 One-Node Coherent HyperTransport™ Technology Initialization

The number of nodes that exist in the system is determined on page 201. The following configuration steps should be executed in single (one-node) processor systems:

1. Set Function 0, Offset 68h[LimitCldtCfg] bit to enable limiting the extent of coherent HyperTransport configuration space based on the number of nodes in the system.
2. Disable read/write/fill probes in Function 0, Offset 68h[10, 3:0], since single processor systems do not need probes.

8.3 Two-Node Coherent HyperTransport™ Technology Initialization

For two-node systems, Node ID and Routing Tables need to be written for both nodes, as follows.

1. Initialize Node 0 Routing Table (RT) rows 0 and 1. Since the coherent HyperTransport link number on Node 0 is already known, RT can be generated using the backbone-first algorithm. See “Algorithm” on page 205 for the backbone-first routing algorithm.
2. Initialize Node 0 RT row 7. Since Node Id of Node 1 is 7 by default, this ID will be used temporarily to configure Node 1. RT row 7 is the same as RT row 1.
3. Verify if Node 0-to-Node 7 link is established by reading Vendor ID/Device ID of Node 7.
4. Detect the connected coherent HyperTransport link number on Node 7 by reading Default Link in Function 0, Offset 6Ch[3:2].
5. Initialize Node 7 RT row 0 and 1. Since the link number on Node 7 is known, RT can be generated using the backbone-first algorithm.
6. Renumber Node 7 to Node 1 by programming Function 0, Offset 60h[2:0].
7. Reset row 7 on Node 0 to the default value.
8. Write CPU Count and Node Count in Function 0, Offset 60h[19:16, 6:4].
9. Set Function 0, Offset 68h[LimitCldtCfg] bit for Node 0 and Node 1.

8.4 Generic HyperTransport™ Technology Configuration

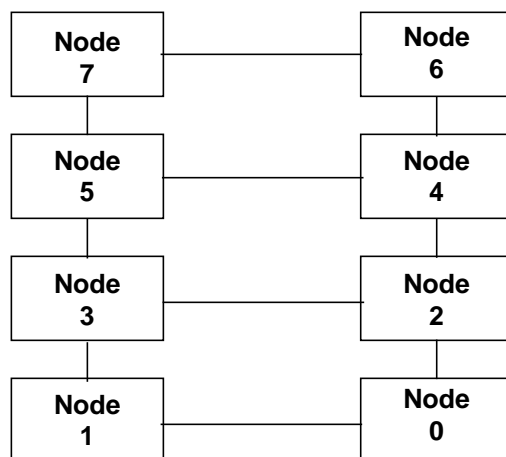
This section presents a complete dynamic algorithm for initialization of the coherent HyperTransport technology fabric. This algorithm describes configuration register initialization for proper routing of HyperTransport technology traffic through the coherent fabric.

First, system configuration assumptions are made. Second, the fabric initialization algorithm is presented. Last, a sub-algorithm for writing rows of routing tables is described. See Chapter 3, “Memory System Configuration” for details about configuration registers.

The described algorithm assumes one of the following system configurations:

1-node -> 1x1	2-node -> 2x1	4-node -> 2x2	6-node -> 2x3	8-node -> 2x4
---------------	---------------	---------------	---------------	---------------

For example, the 8-node system diagram is shown in Figure 3, where the node numbers are assigned by the algorithm. Other configurations may be preferable to the one shown in Figure 3, but they are not addressed.



Note: This is an 8-node system configuration. On the right side, from bottom to top, the nodes are numbered 0, 2, 4, and 6, while on the left, also from bottom to top, they are 1, 3, 5, and 7. The horizontal links (between nodes 0 and 1, 2 and 3, 4 and 5, and 6 and 7) are called “across”. The link from 0 to 2 is “up” (similarly for other links from i to $i+2$) and from 2 to 0 is “down” (similarly for other links from $i+2$ to i). The slot formation for 2, 4, or 6 nodes is obtained by deleting 2-node horizontal rows, starting at the top of the figure.

Figure 3. An Eight-Node Configuration

The algorithm determines node numbers and initializes *backbone-first* routing tables, which provide performance that is reasonably close to optimal in numerous settings. The idea of the backbone-first

algorithm is explained below and refers only to the request and broadcast tables. The response tables produce paths in the reverse order from paths produced by the other two tables. If the nodes and links are laid out in one of the *slot* or *planar* configurations, then this algorithm will produce the expected node numbers.

In the following description, a read or write to a register on Node n is always accomplished by an access to the register offset in configuration space, function 0, device $24+n$, where n is the target Node ID. For example, to write a value into the Node ID register of Node n , function 0, device $24+n$, offset 60h is used to form the address. Until a node's routing tables have been written, its routing table causes all messages to all devices from 24 to 31 to be accepted locally.

Configuration is viewed as a ladder extending upward, as shown in the Figure 3, where the backbone (upward) direction is perpendicular to the “rungs”. A data structure in table format for each node has information about adjacent links: “up”, “across”, and “down”. The optimal routing table is backbone-first, since request paths follow along the length of the ladder, only going along a rung at the very end of the path (if necessary). This table is kept in the BSP address space, although it contains information for all nodes.

Section “Writing Routing Table Rows” on page 211 describes how to use link information—“up”, “across”, “down”—to create the backbone-first routing tables used in various steps of the algorithm.

The BSP will execute code from the firmware ROM to initialize the coherent HyperTransport technology fabric. The assumption is that each node has the following registers that can be accessed by the BSP.

1. NodeId[2:0], which has default value of 0 on the BSP node and 7 on the other nodes.
2. Routing tables that indicate to which links to route a packet and whether to route the packet to the internal node based on the destination NodeID of the packet. These have default value “route to this node”, which results in accepting all commands and not forwarding them.
3. A RoutingTableDisable (RTD) bit forces all commands to be accepted and all responses to be returned back to the link that delivered the request, regardless of the routing tables. If a processor on that node is sending messages through the crossbar, then this assumption could be incorrect (see step 6 below).
4. DefaultLink field (Function 0, Offset 6Ch) that records the link from which the last request was received.
5. A LinkType register indicating how many connected links the node has and whether the links are coherent or noncoherent.
6. A RequestDisable bit that prevents the node from making a request. This bit is cleared on the BSP coming out of microcode reset, and should be set on all other nodes.

The code below is only executed on the BSP. The following assumptions are made for each node.

1. The NodeID is ignored when determining where to route a command (including configuration reads and writes). Determining routing and acceptance is only based on the node's routing table, the destination node in the command, and the destination unit in the command.

2. The result of a read or write to configuration space is independent of the destination node in the command. For example, if a node accepts a command that reads its Node ID, then it will respond with the value of its Node ID register even if the destination was a device not corresponding to that Node ID.

Node LDT_i Type registers ($i=0,1,2$) are read to determine its connected coherent HyperTransport links not marked as UP.

The following steps are grouped into three blocks, starting with Nodes 0, 1, 2 and 3, then Nodes 4 and 5, and finally Nodes 6 and 7.

8.4.1 Algorithm

Pseudo-code for fabric initialization is described in this section. Steps taken after the initialization of Node IDs and routing tables are not described.

Subroutine `fill_routing_table(NodeN, rowr)`, described in “Writing Routing Table Rows” on page 211, writes row r of the routing table for Node N . On a few occasions, a row of a routing table is written directly without using this subroutine.

Northbridge registers on nodes other than Node0 should not be accessed before microcode on AP processors has set the RequestDisable bit. Thus, the first access to an AP node is a read of the RequestDisable bit (Function 0, Offset 6Ch). This bit should be polled until it is set. A possible first access to each node is marked with “**(first_access)**”. The value returned for the Function 0, Offset 6Ch register read can be 0FFFFFFFFh, indicating a time-out. In that case, the link is treated as not present.

The algorithm comments are in parentheses.

BLOCK A: Complete the first four nodes, stopping short if there are fewer than four nodes

A1. If Node0 has no coherent HyperTransport links other than possibly one marked as UP, then it is a single-node system. There is no need to change the routing tables or set the NodeId, except for the case where a link L is marked as UP. In that case, rows 0 and 1 of Node0's routing table should be written after marking the UP link as “across” and marking one of the other two links as “up” and the other as “down.” Exit.

EXIT IF ONLY ONE NODE OR UNIPROCESSOR.

A2. If Node0 has only one coherent HyperTransport link, which is not UP, then it is a two-node system. The following steps should be executed.

A2.1. Mark the coherent link of Node0 as “across” and mark the other two links of Node0 as “down” and “up”, arbitrarily.

A2.2. Call `fill_routing_table(Node0,rowi)` for $i=0,1$.

A2.3. Write a NodeId of 1 to Device 25 (**first_access**).

A2.4. Read the default link of Node1, and mark it as “across”. Mark the remaining two links of Node1 as “down” and “up”, arbitrarily.

A2.5. Call `fill_routing_table(Node1,rowi)` for $i=0,1$.

A2.6. Clear the RTD bit for Node1.

A2.7. Exit.

EXIT IF ONLY 2 NODES.

(It is known at this point that Node0 has exactly two coherent links, since one link is a noncoherent link leading to the HyperTransport I/O Hub.)

A3. For each coherent link L of Node0, determine the number of coherent links in the node on the other side of L , as follows.

A3.1. Write row 7 of Node0's routing table to a value that causes requests and responses destined for Device 31 (Node7) to be routed through link L .

A3.2. Read the number of coherent links on Device 31 (**first_access**), and save the association of link L with this number.

(It is known at this point that Node0 has exactly two coherent links, since one link is a noncoherent link to the HyperTransport I/O Hub. It is assumed that there are minimum four nodes, where each of the two links connects Node0 to a node with minimum two coherent links. The node across from Node0 has exactly two coherent links, since it is in the “corner” of the configuration. It is also known whether the system is limited to four nodes: there are more than four nodes if and only if one of the nodes connected to Node0 has three coherent links (the one labeled as Node2 at the end of the algorithm).)

A4. Mark the coherent links of Node0 and write rows 0 to 2 of its routing table.

A4.1. Mark as “across” the coherent link from Node0 that points to a node with only two coherent links (as saved in Step A3). If there are two such nodes, i.e., if it is a four-node system, then the “across” link is set to be the smaller of the two coherent link numbers of Node0. (Note that the numbering will be correct for both the *slot* and *planar* four-node configurations.)

A4.2. Mark as “up” the other coherent link of Node0, and as “down” the noncoherent link of Node0.

A4.3. Call `fill_routing_table(Node0,rowi)` for $i=0,1,2$. (A temporary value for row 3 will be written in Step A7.1, and row 2 is the last one written here.)

A5. Complete the node across from Node0 by writing its NodeID to 1, marking its links, writing its routing table, and clearing its Routing Table Disable (RTD) bit.

A5.1. Write a NodeID value of 1 to Device 25.

A5.2. Read the default link at Node1 (which will be the one pointing to Node0). Then mark that link as “across”.

A5.3. Mark the remaining connected coherent link of Node1 as “up” and its last unmarked link as “down”.

A5.4. Call `fill_routing_table(Node1,rowi)` for $i=0,1,2,3$.

A5.5. Clear Node1's RTD.

A6. Write a NodeID of 2 to the node “up” from Node0, and then mark “down” link of Node2.

A6.1. Write a NodeID value of 2 to Device 26.

A6.2. Mark the link at Node2 down to Node0 as “down”, by reading the default link as in Step A5.2 above.

A7. Write a NodeID of 3 to the node “up” from Node1, and mark its link to Node1 as “down”, as follows.

A7.1. Write row 3 of Node0's routing table so that messages destined for Node3 are sent “across”.

A7.2. Mark the link at Node3 down to Node1 as “down” by reading the default link of Device 27 (**first_access**).

A7.3. Write a NodeID of 3 to Device 27.

A8. Call `fill_routing_table(Node0,row3)`.

(At this point Node0 initialization is complete: it has the correct NodeID and routing table, and its coherent links are appropriately marked “across” and “up”. Node1 initialization has also been completed (Step A5). Node2 and Node3 have Node IDs and still have their RTD bits set.)

A9. If it is a four-node system (because Node2 has two coherent links, as discussed in the comment of Step A3), then the following steps should be executed.

A9.1. Mark as “across” the remaining coherent link of Node2 (the one not marked as “down”), and then as “up” the final link of Node2.

A9.2. Call `fill_routing_table(Node2,rowi)` for $i=0$ to 3 and then clear Node2's RTD.

A9.3. Read the default link of Node3 and mark it as “across”. (Since Node0 has a “backbone-first” routing table, the path of that read from Node0 to Node3 is by Node2.)¹

A9.4. Set the remaining link of Node3 (the one not set just above or in Step A7.2) to “up”.

A9.5. Call `fill_routing_table(Node3,rowi)` for $i=0$ to 3 and then clear Node3's RTD.

A9.6. Exit.

EXIT IF ONLY 4 NODES.

(If this point is reached, then there are more than four nodes, of which the first four rows of Node0 and Node1 routing tables (Steps A4.3/A8 and A5, respectively) are complete. Node2 is partly complete (Step A6): it has its NodeID of 2 and its link to Node0 has been marked “down”. The NodeID field has been written for Node3 and its “down” link has been marked (Step A7). Also, RTD is still set for Node2 and Node3. The other two Node2 links need to be marked and routing table initialized, and Node3 handling needs to be finished, before moving to other nodes (starting with Step B1 below).)

A10. Call `fill_routing_table(Node1,rowi)` for $i=4,5$ and call `fill_routing_table(Node0,row4)`.

A11. Finish marking the links of Node2, write its routing table, and clear its RTD.

A11.1. Mark the lower number of the remaining two links of Node2 as “across” and the other as “up”. This is a guess.

A11.2. Call `fill_routing_table(Node2,rowi)` for $i=0,3$ and clear Node2's RTD.

A11.3. Check the guess and modify it if necessary.

A11.3.1. Read the NodeID of Device 27. (Node2 will route this through the link marked as “across”, which was a guess.)

A11.3.2. If the NodeID just read is 3, then the guess was correct; call `fill_routing_table(Node2,rowi)` for $i=1,2,4,5$. Otherwise, switch the marking of the “across” and “up” links of Node2, and then call `fill_routing_table(Node2,rowi)` for $i=1$ to 5. (Note that row 0 does not need to be modified either way. Also, if the read times out, then the result will be 7. In that case, it can be assumed that the read was done through the link pointing up.)

A12. Finish marking the links of Node3, write its routing table, and clear its RTD.

A12.1. Read the default link register of Node3. (Now that Node0's and Node2's routing tables

1. Steps A9.3 and A9.4 could possibly be replaced by a single step that marks the remaining coherent link of Node3 as “across”. The following case: Node2 and Node3 both have 3 coherent links, and one of Node2's links is not connected, results in the four-node case. Similar cases are ignored in other places.

are correctly defined, that link connects across to Node2.) Mark that link as “across”, and mark the remaining unmarked link of Node3 as “up”.

A12.2. Call `fill_routing_table(Node3,rowi)` for $i=0$ to 5 and clear Node3's RTD.

(It is known at this point that there are more than four nodes. Nodes 0 through 3 have now received their Node IDs and rows 0 through 5 of their routing tables, and their routing tables are enabled (i.e., their RTD bits are cleared). Row 5 of Node0's routing table has not been written yet, since it can change in Step B3.1.)

Block B: Complete Node4 and Node5

B1. Write the NodeID of Node4 and mark its “down” link.

B1.1. Write a NodeID of 4 to Device 28 (**first_access**).

B1.2. Read the default link of Device 28 (Node4) and mark it as “down”.

B2. If Node4 has only two coherent links, then complete both Node4 and Node5 and then exit.

B2.1. Mark the unmarked coherent link of Node4 as “across”, and then mark its remaining link as “up”.

B2.2. Call `fill_routing_table(Node4,rowi)` for $i=0$ to 5 and clear Node4's RTD.

B2.3. Call `fill_routing_table(Node0,row5)`.

B2.4. Write a NodeID of 5 to Device 29 (**first_access**).

B2.5. Read the default link of Node5 (Device 29), and mark it as “across”.

B2.6. Mark the remaining coherent link of Node5 as “down”², and then mark the final link of Node5 as “up”.

B2.7. Call `fill_routing_table(Node5,rowi)` for $i=0$ to 5 and clear Node5's RTD.

B2.8. Exit.

EXIT IF ONLY 6 NODES.

(At this point, Nodes 0 through 3 are initialized, Node4 has its NodeID, the “down” link of Node4 is marked, and Node4 is known to have three coherent links. Also, the RTD bit is set for Node4 and all greater nodes. Row 5 of Node0's routing table is not written.)

2. If Node5 has three active coherent links, which can happen if Node4 has three links marked as active coherent links but the one “up” is not functioning, then a temporary routing table row change as in Step B3 can be made.

B3. Write a NodeID of 5 to the node across from Node4 and mark that node's "down" link. (The "across" link of Node4 has not been marked yet, and messages are not routed through Node4 to Node5.)

B3.1. Write row 5 of Node0's routing table to point "across" for requests (so that requests from Node0 to Device 29 will follow the path 0->1->3->N where N is the node "up" from Node3.)³

B3.2. Read the default link of Device 29 (**first_access**) and mark that link as "down" for Node5.

B3.3. Write a NodeID of 5 to Device 29.

B4. Call `fill_routing_table(Node0,rowi)` for $i=5,6,7$ and call `fill_routing_table(NodeN,rowi)` for $N=1,2,3$ and $i=6,7$.

B5. Finish marking the links of Node4, write its routing table, and clear its RTD. This step and the next are completely analogous to Steps A11 and A12.

B5.1. Mark the lower number of the two unmarked links of Node4 as "across" and the other as "up". This is just a guess.

B5.2. Call `fill_routing_table(Node4,rowi)` for $i=0,5$ and clear Node4's RTD.

B5.3. Check if the guess in Step B5.1 was correct, and if not, then correct it.

B5.3.1. Read the NodeID of Device 29. (Node4 will route this write through the link marked as "across", which was a guess.)

B5.3.2. If the NodeID read is 5, then the guess was correct; call `fill_routing_table(Node4,rowi)` for $i=1$ to 4 and for $i=6,7$. Otherwise, switch the marking of the "across" and "up" links of Node4, and then call `fill_routing_table(Node4,rowi)` for $i=1$ to 7. (Row 0 need not be re-written. And the case of timing should be OK, as in Step 11.3.2.)

B6. Finish marking the links of Node5, write its routing table, and clear its RTD.

B6.1. Read the default link register of Node5. Mark that link as "across", and mark the remaining unmarked link of Node5 as "up".

B6.2. Call `fill_routing_table(Node5,rowi)` for $i=0$ to 7 and clear Node5's RTD.

3. Step B3 approach will cause responses to take the path 5->3->2->0, which is not the reverse of the request path from 0->1->3->5. That is acceptable, although the tracing will not function equally well. This can be fixed by modifying Node2's routing table instead of Node 0's, so that the request path is 0->2->3->5.

(It is known at this point that Node4 has 3 coherent links, so there are presumably 8 nodes.⁴ Rows 0 to 7 have been written for the routing tables of Nodes 0 to 5, and the RTD bits are clear for those nodes.)

Block C: Complete Node6 and Node7

C1. Write to Device 30 a NodeID of 6 (**first_access**).

C2. Read the default link of Device 30 (Node6) and mark it as “down”.

C3. There should be exactly one unmarked, active coherent link in Node6. Mark it as “across”, and then mark the remaining link as “up”.⁵

C4. Call `fill_routing_table(Node6,rowi)` for $i=0$ to 7 and clear Node6's RTD.

C5. Read the default link of Device 31 (**first_access**) and mark it as “across”. (NodeID does not have to be written, since the reset microcode has already written a NodeID of 7.)

C6. There should only be one unmarked active coherent link on Node7. Mark this link as “down”, and then mark the remaining link as “up”.

C7. Call `fill_routing_table(Node7,rowi)` for $i=0$ to 7 and clear Node7's RTD.

Completion

At this point, all nodes have their Node IDs and routing tables. Also, it is known which NodeID was last written; this is the maximum NodeID, M . Adjust the broadcast tables of nodes M and $M-1$ as it is described in “Writing Routing Table Rows” on page 211. Then write every node's NodeID register, in particular its NodeCount.

During the execution of this algorithm, configuration space accesses are sent to corresponding coherent nodes, not to the compatibility bus. Bit `LimitCldtCfg` (Function 0, Offset 68h) is set near the end to enable range based on node count. For example, if there are two nodes (Devices 24 and 25), then accesses to Devices 26 through 31 will go to the compatibility bus.

Finally, the `RequestDisable` bit is cleared at each AP processor.

Before deciding the maximum NodeID and adjusting the broadcast tables, functionality of all links must be verified.

8.4.1.1 Writing Routing Table Rows

Routine `fill_routing_table(NodeN,rowr)` which writes a given row r of Node N 's routing table is described in this section. The following assumption are made: the routing tables for all nodes on the

4. A check that there are 8 nodes can be done by checking that the node “up” from Node4 has two connected coherent links. If the check fails, jump from Step C5 to 6-node case.

5. If the case that there is no unmarked active coherent link in Node6 is considered, the algorithm can be exited with a 6-node system.

path up to Node N (not including Node N) have been written, and the Node N links have been correctly marked as “up”, “down”, or “across”.

Statement “put a 1 in the P position”, means that if link L is associated with P at node N (where P is “up”, “down”, or “across”), then bit position $L+1$ is assigned the value 1.

REQUEST TABLE. Row r of the “backbone-first” request table is computed as follows.

If $r = N$, then the value is 0001b. Else if $(r \text{ XOR } 1) = N$, then put a 1 in the “across” position. (This is testing that r and N differ in the unit digits only, so they are across from each other.) Else if $(r < N)$, then put a 1 in the “down” position. Else put a 1 in the “up” position.

RESPONSE TABLE. For the response table, the following rule is used (“short-first” or “rung-first” rather than “backbone-first”).

If $r = N$, then the value is 0001b. Else if $((r \text{ XOR } N) \text{ AND } 0001b) \neq 0$, i.e. r and N are in different “rungs”, then put a 1 in the “across” position. Else if $(r < N)$, then put a 1 in the “down” position. Else put a 1 in the “up” position.

BROADCAST TABLE. The final value for each row of Node N 's broadcast routing table must comply with the following requirements:

1. If N is 0 or 1 then the “down” bit is 0.
2. Let M be the maximum node number. If N is M or $M-1$ then the “up” bit is 0. Note: Since M is not always known at the time routing tables are written, this step should be performed at the end of the process.
3. The least significant bit “route to this node” is 1.

The rules for constructing row r of the broadcast table for Node N that should be applied before finalizing the result of 1., 2., and 3. above. For the broadcast table, unlike the request and response tables, r represents the source of the message, not the destination.

If $r = N$, then the value is 1111b. Else if $((r \text{ XOR } N) \text{ AND } 0001b) \neq 0$, i.e., r and N are in different “rungs”, then return 0001b. Else if $r < N$, put a 1 in the “up” and “across” positions. Else put a 1 in the “down” and “across” positions.

9 Power and Thermal Management

AMD Athlon™ and AMD Opteron™ processors support ACPI-compliant power management for all classes of systems from notebook PCs to multiprocessor servers. Table 36 lists various levels of power management. Table 37 on page 214 lists ACPI-state support by system class. This chapter covers processor-level power management and processor-specific aspects of system-level power management.

Table 36. Power Management Categories

Power Management Category	Comments
System Level	Coarse level power management applied to the entire system, typically after a predefined period of inactivity, or in response to a user action such as pressing the system power button. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System Sleep States (ACPI-defined S-states)
Processor Level	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Processor Power States (ACPI-defined C-states) • Processor Performance States (ACPI-defined P-states) • Software Transparent Power Management (Hardware enforced throttling).
Device Level	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Device Power States (ACPI-defined D-states) • Device Performance States • Software Transparent Power Management.
Bus Level	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bus Power States • Software Transparent Power Management
Sub-system Level	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Typically not used in PC systems, and beyond the scope of this document.

Table 37. ACPI-State Support by System Class

ACPI State Support	Mobile Systems	Uniprocessor Desktop PCs	Multiprocessor Systems
G0/S0/C0: Working	Yes	Yes	Yes
G0/S0/C0: Processor performance state (P-state) transitions under OS control.	Yes	No ¹	Not with current operating systems
G0/S0/C0: Thermal clock throttling (I/O hub hardware enforced)	Yes	Yes	Revision B:No ¹ Revision C:Yes
G0/S0/C0: Thermal clock throttling (operating system enforced)	Yes	Yes	No
G0/S0/C1: Halt	Yes	Yes	Yes
G0/S0/C2: Stop Grant Caches snoopable	Yes ^{1,2}	No	No
G0/S0/C3: Stop Grant Caches not snoopable	Yes ^{1,2}	No	No
G1/S1: Stand By (Powered On Suspend)	Yes	Yes	Yes
G1/S3: Stand By (Suspend to RAM)	Yes	Yes	Revision B:No ¹ Revision C:Yes
G1/S4: Hibernate (Suspend to Disk)	Yes	Yes	Yes
G2/S5: Shut Down, Turn Off (Soft Off)	Yes	Yes	Yes
G3 Mechanical Off	Yes	Yes	Yes
Notes: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Not supported by some revisions of the silicon. Refer to Revision Guide for AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ Processors, order# 25759. 2. See “Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC)” on page 179. 			

9.1 Stop Grant

The processor and chipset use HyperTransport™ technology STPCLK and Stop Grant system management messages to sequence into all power management states except for Halt. These messages carry a 3-bit System Management Action Field (SMAF) to differentiate the various reasons for placing the processor into the Stop Grant state. Table 38 maps Stop Grant SMAF codes to ACPI states and actions that the BIOS is required to configure the processor to take for each ACPI state.

Table 38. Required SMAF Code to Stop Grant Mapping

Reason for STPCLK Message	SMAF Field of STPCLK and Stop Grant Messages	Mechanism that Forces the I/O Hub to Send the STPCLK Message	Processors Programmed Response after Entering the Stop Grant State (See Table 49 Power Management Control Registers.)
C2 Stop Grant Caches Snoopable	000b	Sent in response to a read of the ACPI-defined P_LVL2 register.	Ramp the CPU clock grid down when no probes need to be serviced. (CPU Low Power Enable)
C3 Stop Grant Caches not Snoopable. Used only by mobile systems.	001b	Sent either in response to a read of the ACPI-defined P_LVL3 register or in response to a write to the Link Frequency Change and Resize LDTSTOP_L Command register in the I/O hub.	Ramp the CPU clock grid frequency down. (CPU Low Power Enable) After LDTSTOP_L is asserted, place memory into self-refresh and ramp down the processor host bridge and memory controller clock grid. (Northbridge Low Power Enable)
VID/FID Change Or Link Width/Frequency changes	010b	Sent either in response to a VID/FID Change special cycle from the processor or in response to a write to the Link Frequency Change and Resize LDTSTOP_L Command register.	After LDTSTOP_L assertion, place memory into self-refresh, ramp the processor clock grids down, then drive new FID values to PLL. (CPU Low Power Enable, Northbridge Low Power Enable, FID/VID Change Enable)
S1 Sleep state	011b	Sent in response to writing the S1 value to the SLP_TYP[2:0] field and setting the SLP_EN bit of the ACPI-defined PM1 control register in the I/O hub.	Same response as C3.
S3 Sleep state	100b	Sent in response to writing the S3 value to the SLP_TYP[2:0] field of the PM1 control register.	Same response as C3. Additionally, after LDTSTOP_L has been asserted, the I/O hub will power off the main power planes.
Throttling	101b	Occurs based upon hardware initiated thermal throttling or ACPI-controlled throttling.	Ramp down the CPU grid by the programmed amount. (CPU Low Power Enable)
S4/S5	110b	Sent in response to writing the S4 or S5 value to the SLP_TYP[2:0] field of the PM1 control register.	Same response as S3 for processor. Additionally, all power will be removed from processor during S4 and S5.

Table 38. Required SMAF Code to Stop Grant Mapping (Continued)

Reason for STPCLK Message	SMAF Field of STPCLK and Stop Grant Messages	Mechanism that Forces the I/O Hub to Send the STPCLK Message	Processors Programmed Response after Entering the Stop Grant State (See Table 49 Power Management Control Registers.)
Reserved for use by processor	111b	No I/O hub STPCLK message uses this SMAF code. The power management register field corresponding to this SMAF code is used by the processor in response to executing the Halt instruction.	Same response as C2, except a Halt special cycle is broadcast.

9.2 C-States

As Table 36 on page 213 indicates, the processor supports ACPI-defined processor power states, which are referred to as C-states. Table 37 on page 214 indicates which C-states are supported by system class. The operating system will place the processor into C-states when the processor is idle an operating-system-determined percentage of the time.

9.2.1 C1 Halt State

C1 is the Halt state. C1 is entered after the HLT instruction has been executed. The BIOS configures the processor to enter a low-power state during C1, in which the CPU core clock grid is ramped down from its operating frequency. See Table 49 on page 241.

9.2.2 C2 and C3

C2 is the Stop Grant state in which the processor caches can be snooped. When the processor is in the Stop Grant state and there is no probe activity to the processor's caches, the CPU core clock grid is ramped down from its operating frequency. For more information, see Table 49 on page 241.

C3 is the Stop Grant state in which the processor's caches cannot be snooped. The chipset asserts LDTSTOP_L during the C3 state. The chipset may require BIOS to enable LDTSTOP_L assertion for the C3 state. After LDTSTOP_L assertion, the processor's system memory is placed into self-refresh mode and the processor's clock grids, including the host bridge/memory controller clock grid, are ramped down from their operational frequency. For more information, see Table 49 on page 241.

9.3 Throttling

The BIOS must declare a DUTY_WIDTH value of zero in the Fixed ACPI Description table if the system does not support the _PSV object as part of a processor ACPI thermal zone. Throttling is not

supported by some revisions of the silicon. Refer to *AMD Revision Guide for AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ Processors*, order# 25759.

9.4 Processor ACPI Thermal Zone

This section will be part of a future revision of this document.

9.5 Processor Performance States

Processor performance states (P-states) are valid operating combinations of processor core voltage and frequency. The hardware supporting P-state transitions in AMD processors is referred to as AMD PowerNow!™ technology.

- For operating systems without native support for P-state transitions using Revision C and subsequent processors, AMD PowerNow! software is used to perform P-state transitions. In this case, BIOS-provided Performance State Tables (PSTs) are used by AMD PowerNow! software to determine what P-states are supported by the processor in the system.
- For operating systems that have native support for P-state transitions using Revision C and subsequent processors, a processor-specific driver is used by the operating system to make P-state transitions. In this case, BIOS-provided ACPI-defined P-state objects inform the operating system that P-state transitions are supported by the system, which P-states are supported, and when given P-states are available for use by the operating system.

The processor data sheet specifies the valid voltage and frequency combinations for each processor produced. The BIOS vendor must only use P-states defined in that document for a given processor when building the ACPI P-state objects and performance state tables (PST) for use by higher-level software.

Processors that support P-state transitions provide two public MSRs identified in Table 39 on page 217 for initiating P-state transitions and verifying that they are complete.

Chipsets provide support for P-state transitions. Refer to the chipset documentation for information on chipset configuration and P-state-related considerations.

Table 39. Processor MSRs for Power Management

Functionality	Register
Register for initiating processor P-state transitions (FID/VID Changes)	FIDVID_CTL (MSR C001_0041h)
Status register associated with P-state transitions	FIDVID_STATUS (MSR C001_0042h)

If these MSRs are accessed in a processor that does not support P-state transitions, then a general protection fault occurs.

9.5.1 BIOS Requirements for P-State Transitions

P-state transitions can be used only if they are supported by the processor and by the system.

BIOS is required to:

- Determine that the processor supports processor performance state transitions.
- Have a valid voltage and frequency state table for the processor, based upon the processor data sheet.
- Take chipset or system limitations into account before providing the ACPI-defined P-state objects described in 9.6 on page 229, or the Performance State Tables described in 9.7 on page 239 of this document.
- If P-states are supported and a Revision C or higher revision processor is present, BIOS is required to provide both:
 - ACPI-defined P-state objects for operating systems that support native P-state control.
 - PSTs in support of AMD PowerNow! software with legacy operating systems.

The BIOS must not provide the ACPI P-state objects or the Performance State Block and Performance State Tables if:

- The processor does not support P-state transitions.
- The processor is Revision B.
- The chipset or system does not support P-state transitions.
- The BIOS does not have a valid voltage and frequency Performance State Table derived from the processor data sheet for the processor in the system.

9.5.1.1 Step 1: Determine Processor Support for P-State Transitions

The BIOS must determine if a processor supports P-state transitions. This is accomplished by executing the CPUID extended function 8000_0007h.

If the value returned in EDX bits 2–1 is:

- 11b, then the part is capable of performing P-state transitions.
- 00b, then the part is *not* capable of performing P-state transitions,
 - The BIOS must not provide the ACPI P-state objects or Performance State Tables.
 - The BIOS must not access the FIDVID_CTL or FIDVID_STATUS MSRs or a general protection fault will occur.

Refer to the following documents regarding CPUID and determining which processor is in the system:

- *AMD Processor Recognition Application Note*, order# 20734

- *CPUID Guide for the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors*, order# 25481

9.5.1.2 Step 2: Match the Processor to a Valid Performance State Table

If CPUID extended function 8000_0007h returned EDX[2:1] = 11b, the BIOS must correlate the processor in the system to a valid performance state table from the processor data sheet. Each processor is uniquely identified by the following:

- CPUID extended function 8000_0001h:
 - Family number and extended family number (when family number field = 1111b).
 - Model number and extended model number (when family number field = 1111b).
 - Stepping (Revision)
- FIDVID_STATUS MSR (C001_0042h):
 - MaxVID: This 5-bit code corresponds to the maximum nominal voltage at which the processor operates. MaxVID does not directly correspond to the nominal voltage for the processor's maximum P-state. The nominal voltage for the maximum P-state is the voltage selected by MaxVID minus the ramp voltage offset (RVO).
 - StartVID: This 5-bit code corresponds to the nominal voltage at which the processor starts operation after a cold reset.
 - MaxFID: This 6-bit code corresponds to the frequency that the processor operates at when in the maximum performance state.
 - StartFID: This 6-bit code corresponds to the frequency that the processor starts operation at after a cold reset.

These seven parameters are used by the BIOS to match the processor in the system to a valid set of P-states (voltage and frequency combinations) listed in the processor data sheet.

If these seven parameters cannot be matched to a valid set of P-states in the processor data sheet, then the BIOS must not provide the ACPI P-state objects or the AMD PowerNow! Performance State Table for higher level software.

9.5.1.3 Step 3: Determine System Support for P-State Transitions

The BIOS software must also determine whether the system supports P-state transitions. The BIOS must take into account chipset/motherboard components and potential system side effects associated with P-state transitions that could preclude the use of P-state transitions. If the system cannot or is not intended to support P-state transitions, then the BIOS must not provide the ACPI P-state objects or Performance State Tables.

9.5.2 BIOS-Initiated P-State Transitions

Processors that do not support P-state transitions power up to the maximum P-state. Processors intended for desktop replacement and mobile systems power up in the minimum P-state and change

to higher P-states only under processor driver or AMD PowerNow! software control. The BIOS never initiates P-state transitions.

9.5.3 BIOS Support for Operating System/CPU Driver-Initiated P-State Transitions

Operating systems that have native control for processor P-states exclusively use the presence of BIOS provided ACPI 2.0 defined processor P-state objects to determine if processor P-states are supported in a system. If the ACPI objects do not exist, then the processor driver is not loaded.

In operating systems that do not have native support for processor P-state transitions, an AMD defined PST (Performance State Table) provided by the BIOS informs AMD PowerNow! technology software that P-state transitions are supported.

Once it has been determined that a processor and system support P-state transitions, the BIOS must provide both:

- ACPI-2.0-defined processor P-state objects for operating systems with native P-state support. See Section 9.6 on page 229.
- AMD-defined PSB and PSTs for use with AMD PowerNow! software and operating systems that do not have native P-state support. See Section 9.7 on page 239.

9.5.4 Processor Driver Requirements

The processor driver that supports native operating system policy and control of processor performance state objects is required to use the ACPI 2.0 processor performance state objects as defined in this document. The processor driver is not permitted to use the legacy PSB/PST tables described in section 9.7 on page 239.

9.5.5 P-State Transition Sequence

This section describes the P-state transition algorithm for the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors. The processor driver for Windows XP, AMD PowerNow! driver and software (for other operating systems), and BIOS must be updated as described in the following sections to support P-state transitions.

9.5.5.1 FID to VCO Frequency Relationship

Table 40 and Table 41 provide the core frequency-to-VCO frequency relationship for AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors. These processors do not support frequency transitions in VCO frequency steps of greater than 200 MHz. The processor driver, and the AMD PowerNow! driver use these tables when making P-state transitions.

Only one P-state is allowed in Table 40. The one P-state consists of a frequency from the “Minimum Core Frequency” column in Table 40 and is the minimum P-State supported by the processor. For

processors that support P-state transitions, the processor data sheet has a table of valid P-states based on Ordering Part Number (OPN) that dictates which frequency in Table 40 is used for the minimum P-state supported by the processor.

Table 40 additionally defines Portal Core Frequencies. The “Portal Core Frequencies in Table 41” column of Table 40 defines:

- The core frequencies in Table 41 to which direct transitions can be made from the minimum core frequency in Table 40.
- The core frequencies in Table 41 that support transitions to the minimum core frequency in Table 40.

The processor supports direct transitions between the minimum core frequency in Table 40 and any of the core frequencies from Table 41 listed in the Portal Core Frequencies column associated with the minimum core frequency.

If the minimum P-state from the low table (Table 40) has a VCO frequency > 1600 MHz, then the VCO/core frequency of all P- states in the high table (Table 41) must be \geq the VCO frequency of the minimum P-state minus 200 MHz.

Example 1:

Given a processor with a minimum core frequency of 800 MHz and a maximum core frequency of 2000 MHz, to transition from 800 MHz to 2000 MHz, the processor driver will (in the order specified):

1. Transition the processor from the 800 MHz core frequency to 1800 MHz core frequency. 1800 MHz is a portal frequency to and from 800 MHz as defined in Table 40, because the VCO frequency change from an 800 MHz core frequency to an 1800 MHz core frequency is ≤ 200 MHz.
2. Transition the processor core frequency from 1800 MHz to 2000 MHz (VCO frequency change is ≤ 200 MHz according to Table 41).

Note: *To simplify this example, the voltage transitions and isochronous relief times are not described in this example.*

Example 2:

Given a processor with a minimum core frequency of 1400 MHz and a maximum core frequency of 3400 MHz, to transition from 1400 MHz to 3400 MHz, the processor driver will (in the order specified):

1. Transition the processor from the core frequency of 1400 MHz to a core frequency of 3000 MHz. 3000 MHz is a portal frequency to and from 1400 MHz as defined in Table 40, because the VCO frequency change from 1400 MHz core frequency to 3000 MHz core frequency is ≤ 200 MHz.
2. Transition the processor core frequency from 3000 MHz to 3200 MHz (VCO frequency change is ≤ 200 MHz per Table 41).

3. Transition the processor core frequency from 3200 MHz to 3400 MHz (VCO frequency change is ≤ 200 MHz per Table 41).

Note: *Note: to simplify this example, the voltage transitions and isochronous relief times are not described in this example.*

Table 40. Low FID Frequency Table (< 1600 MHz)

FID[5:0]	Minimum Core Frequency MHz	VCO Frequency MHz	Portal Core Frequencies in Table 41
000000b	800	1600	1600, 1800
000010b	1000	2000	1800, 2000, 2200
000100b	1200	2400	2200, 2400, 2600
000110b	1400	2800	2600, 2800, 3000

Table 41. High FID Frequency Table (≥ 1600 MHz)

FID[5:0]	Core Frequency MHz	VCO Frequency MHz
001000b	1600	1600
001010b	1800	1800
001100b	2000	2000
001110b	2200	2200
010000b	2400	2400
010010b	2600	2600
010100b	2800	2800
010110b	3000	3000
011000b	3200	3200
011010b	3400	3400
011100b	3600	3600
011110b	3800	3800
100000b	4000	4000
100010b	4200	4200
100100b	4400	4400
100110b	4600	4600
101000b	4800	4800
101010b	5000	5000

9.5.5.2 P-state Transition Algorithm

BIOS must not make P-state transitions. BIOS is required to provide P-state objects and PSTs for systems that are intended to support P-state transitions. (See section 9.5.1.)

This P-state transition algorithm is comprised of three phases. During phase 1 the processor voltage is transitioned to the level required to support frequency transitions. During phase 2 the processor frequency is transitioned to frequency associated with the OS-requested P-state. During phase 3 the processor voltage is transitioned to the voltage associated with the OS-requested P-state.

Figure 4 shows the high-level P-state transition flow. Figure 5 is a high-level timing diagram depicting voltage and frequency stepping associated with each phase of a P-state transition. Figure 6 shows the core voltage transition flow for phase 1 of a P-state transition. Figure 7 shows the core frequency transition flow for phase 2 of a P-state transition. Figure 8 shows the core voltage transition flow for phase 3 of a P-state transition.

The algorithm shown in Figure 4 through Figure 8 describes the 3-phases of a P-state transition in the context of Windows XP and the associated processor driver, but the algorithm also applies to the AMD PowerNow! driver and any other software that performs P-state transitions (such as a debug tool).

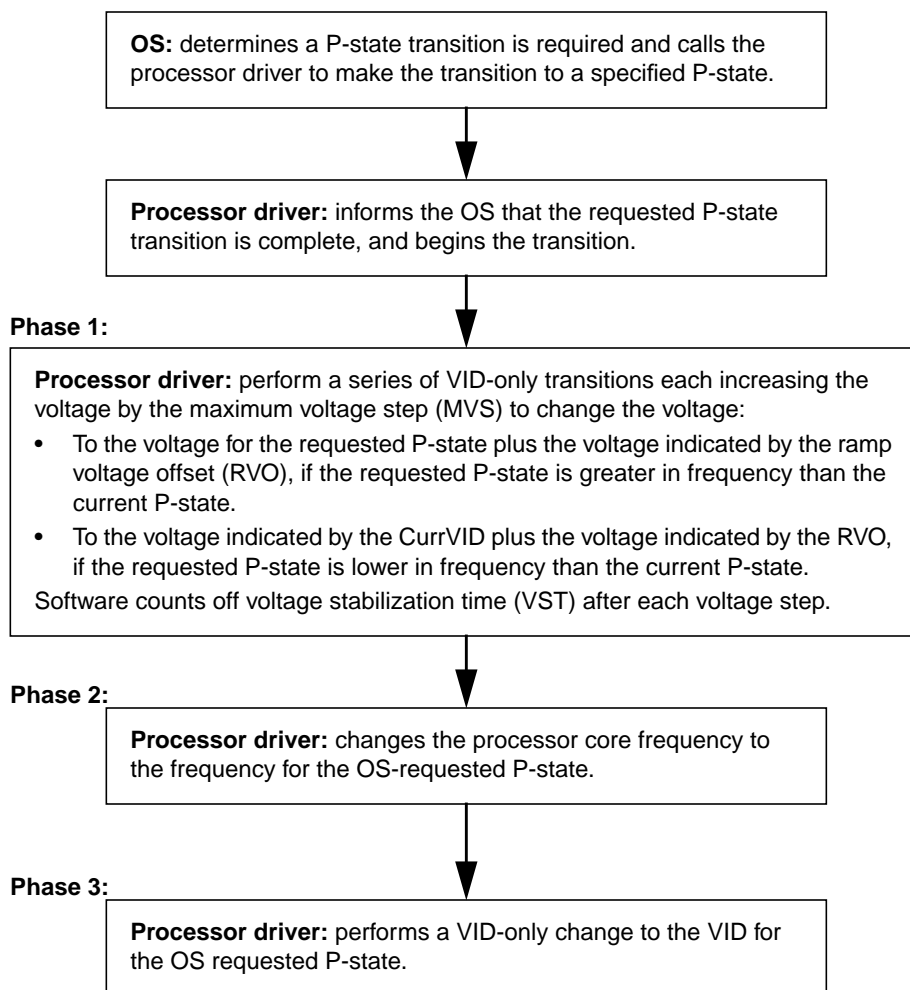
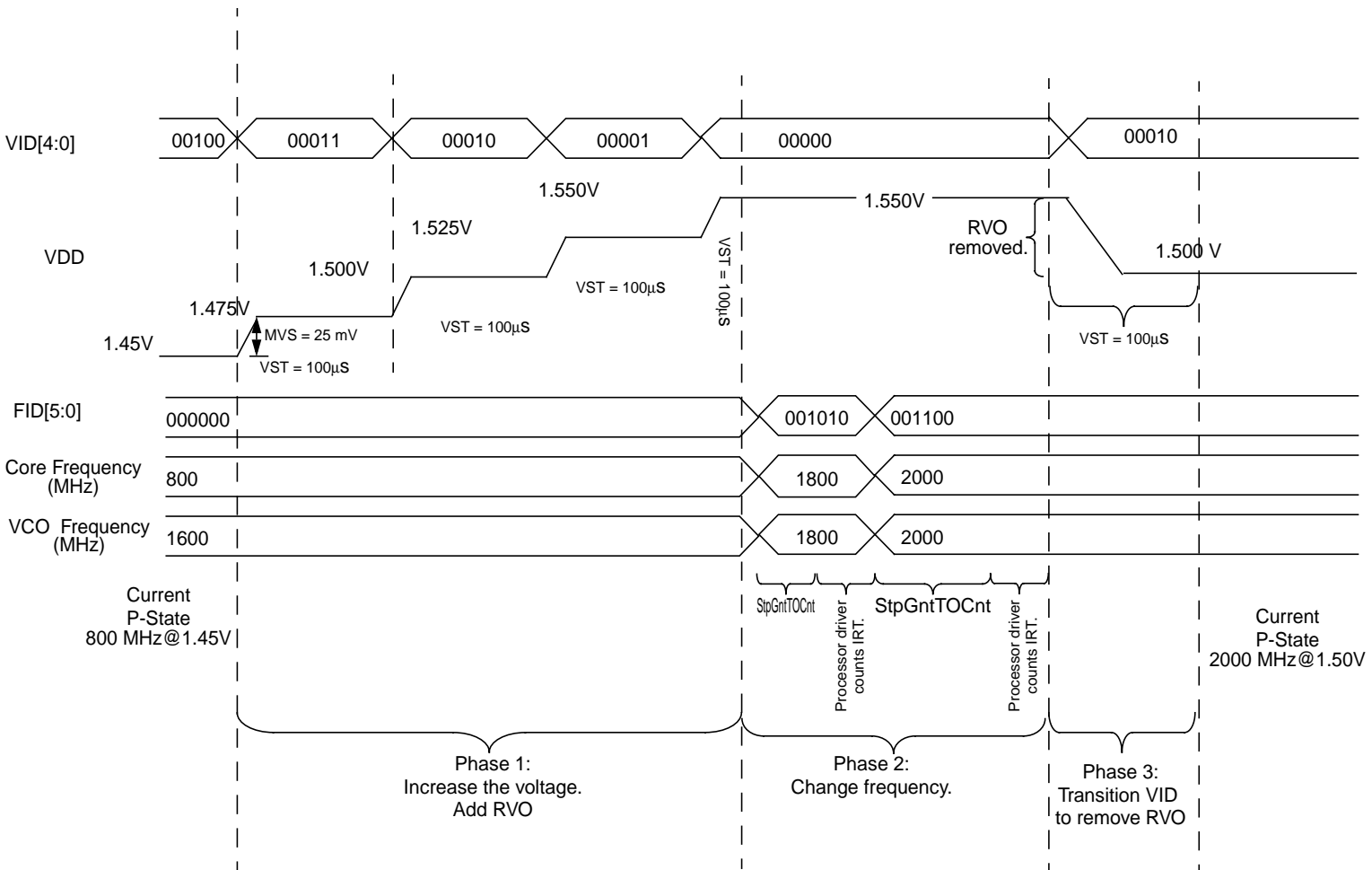


Figure 4. High-Level P-state Transition Flow



Not drawn to scale.
 This figure depicts a P-state transition from a P-state of 800 MHz at 1.45 V to a P-state of 2000 MHz at 1.50 V.
 For MVS see section 9.6.2.1.2.
 For StpGntTOCnt see section 9.5.5.2.2.
 For IRT see section 9.6.2.1.5.
 For RVO and VID see section 9.6.2.1.4.
 For VST see section 9.6.2.1.1.

Figure 5. Example P-State Transition Timing Diagram

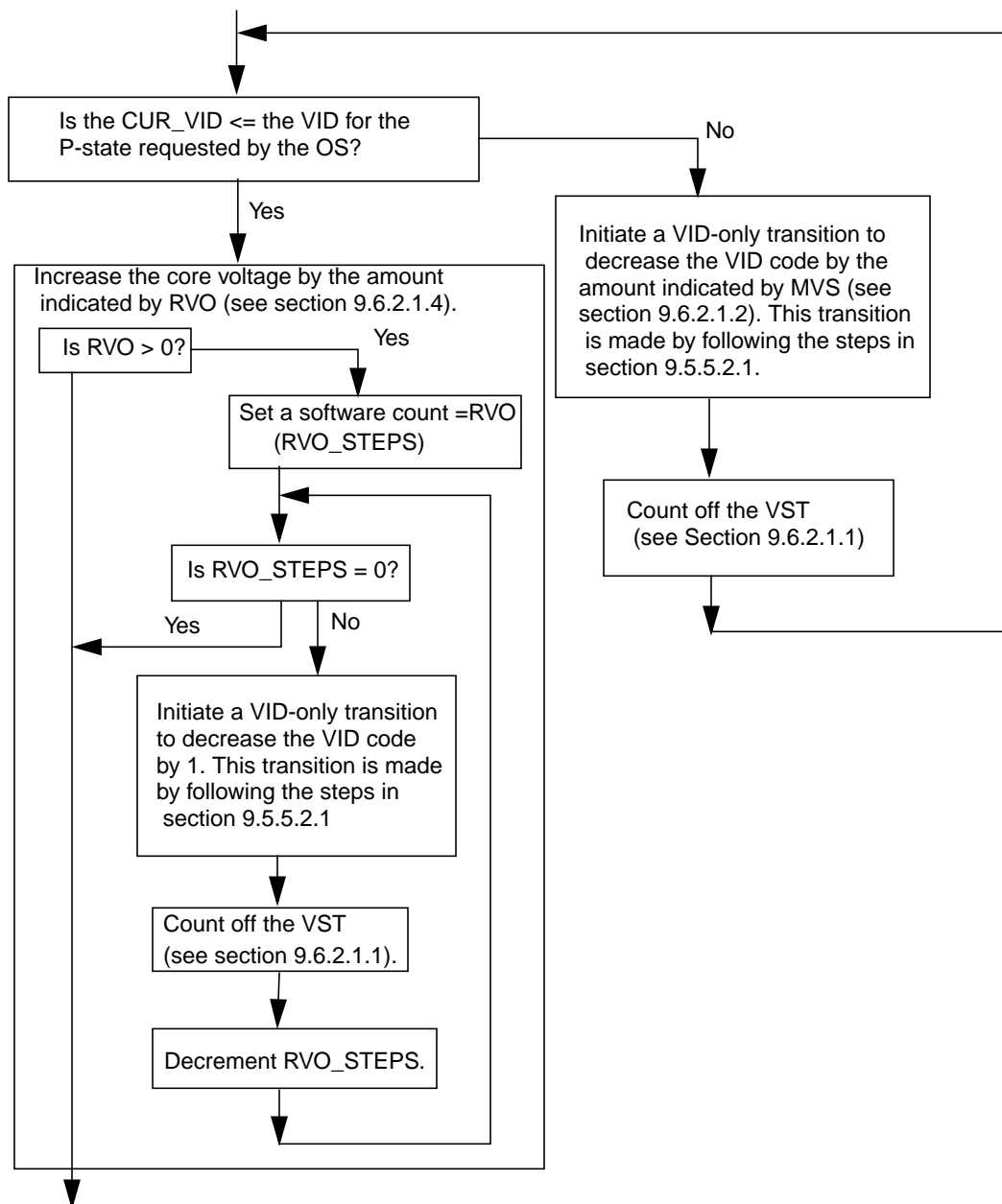
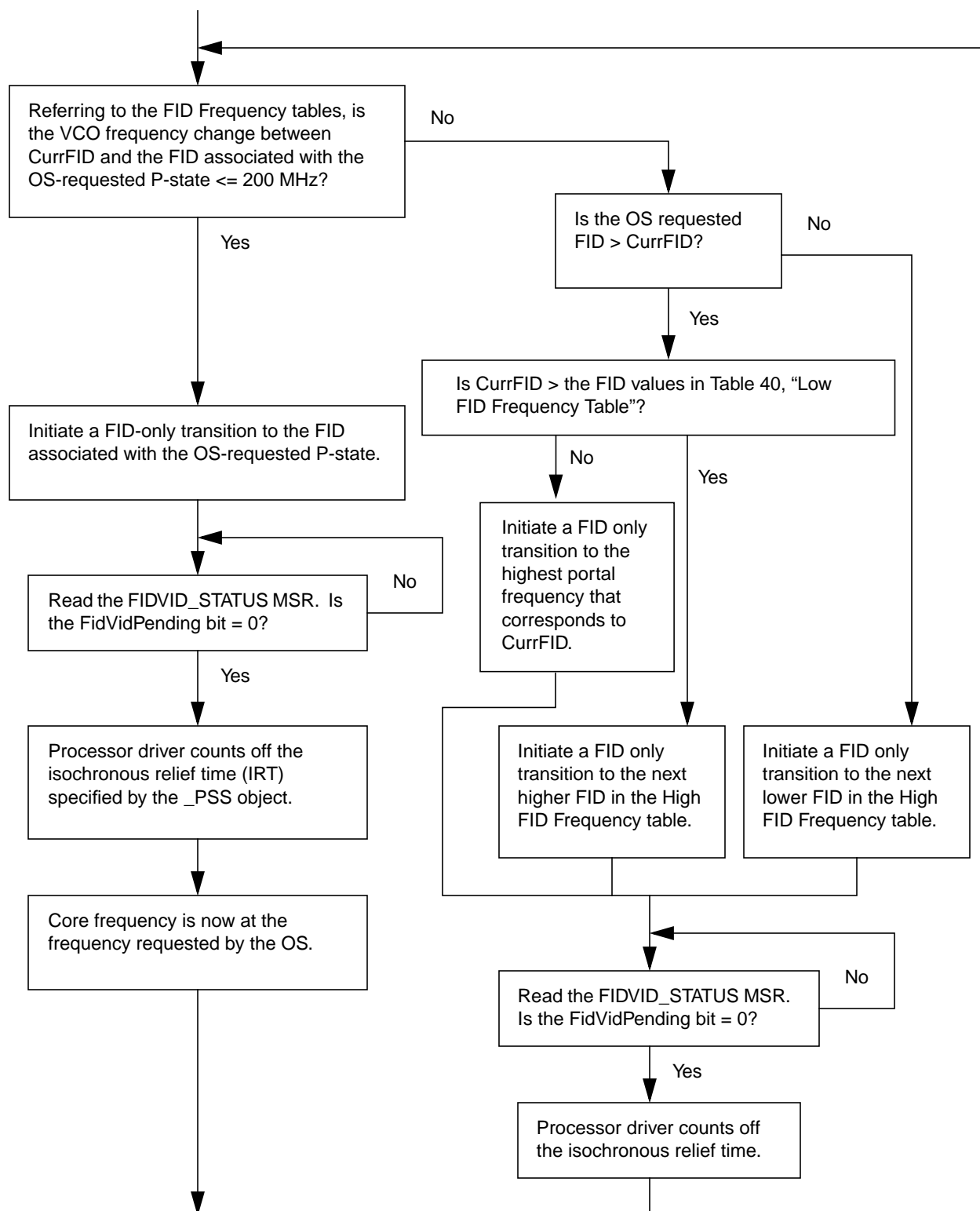


Figure 6. Phase 1: Core Voltage Transition Flow

**Figure 7. Phase 2: Core Frequency Transition Flow**

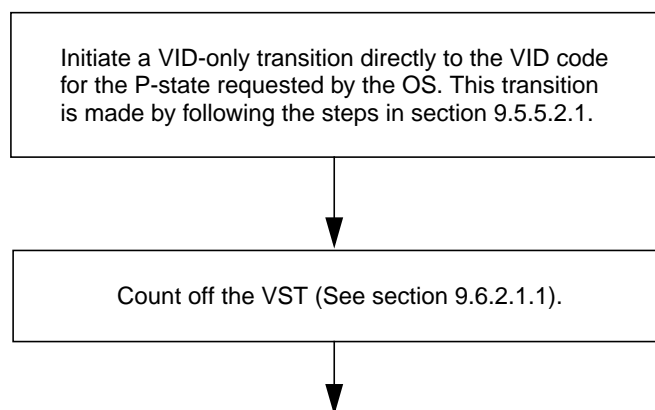


Figure 8. Phase 3: Core Voltage Transition Flow

9.5.5.2.1 Changing the VID

Note: Software must hold the FID constant when changing the VID.

To change the processor voltage:

1. Write the following values to FIDVID_CTL (MSR C001_0041h):
 - NewVID field (bits 12–8) with the VID code associated with the target voltage
 - NewFID field (bits 5–0) with the CurrFID value indicated in the FIDVID_STATUS MSR
 - StpGntTOCnt field (bits 51–32) with 1h, which corresponds to 5 nsec. For Revision B processors, this setting results in voltage transitions causing the minimum possible memory access latency. This field has no effect on VID changes for Revision C AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors, since the processor drives the VID[4:0] in response to the MSR write without the processor first being placed into the Stop Grant state.
 - InitFidVid bit (bit 16) set to 1. Setting this bit initiates the VID change.
 - Clear all other bits to 0.
2. Loop on reading the FidVidPending bit (bit 31) of FIDVID_STATUS (MSR C001_0042h) until the bit returns 0. The FidVidPending bit stays set to 1 until the new VID code has been driven to the voltage regulator.

9.5.5.2.2 Changing the FID

The AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors support direct FID transitions only between FIDs that represent a VCO frequency change ≤ 200 MHz. To change between FIDs that represent a VCO frequency change greater than 200 MHz, software must make multiple transitions each less than or equal to a 200 MHz change in VCO frequency. For information about allowable FID transitions, see Tables 40 and 41 on page 222.

Note: Software must hold the VID constant when changing the FID.

To change the core frequency:

1. Write the following values to FIDVID_CTL (MSR C001_0041h):
 - NewVID field (bits 12–8) with the CurrVID value reported in the FIDVID_STATUS MSR.
 - NewFID field (bits 5–0) with the FID code associated with the target frequency.
 - StpGntTOCnt field (bits 51–32) with a value corresponding to the processor PLL lock time. The PLL lock time is specified by the processor data sheet and refers to all components of PLL lock including frequency lock, phase lock, and settling time. PLL lock time is communicated to the processor driver through the PLL_LOCK_TIME field of the _PSS object. PLL lock time is in microseconds. To translate the PLL lock time to an StpGntTOCnt value, multiply PLL_LOCK_TIME by 1000 to get nanoseconds, then divide by 5 which is the clock period of the counter in ns. Therefore, StpGntTOCnt value = PLL_LOCK_TIME * 1000/5. For example, a PLL lock time of 2 μ s results in an StpGntTOCnt value of 400 decimal and 190h.
 - InitFidVid bit (bit 16) set to 1. Setting this bit initiates the P-state transition.
 - Clear all other bits to 0.
2. Loop on reading the FidVidPending bit (bit 31) of FIDVID_STATUS (MSR C001_0042h) until the bit returns 0. The FidVidPending bit stays set to 1 until the new FID code is in effect.

Figure 7 on page 227 illustrates the transition flow for core frequencies, including the requirement to wait the isochronous relief time between FID steps.

9.6 ACPI 2.0 Processor P-State Objects

For systems that support P-state transitions, the BIOS must provide the following ACPI 2.0 P-state objects to support operating systems that provide native support for processor P-state transitions. These subsections discuss the specific implementation of these objects.

9.6.1 _PCT (Performance Control)

The _PCT object is generically described in section 8.3.3.1 of the ACPI 2.0 specification. The _PCT, _PSS, and _PPC objects (defined in the next sections) are all placed after the Processor object in the _PR name space for operating systems that have native support for processor P-states. This section provides BIOS specifics regarding the use of _PCT.

The _PCT object specifies the control register and status register used to initiate and verify processor performance state transitions. The processor's P-state transition protocol is abstracted from the operating system by the processor driver, so this object does not declare the MSRs used for FID_Change protocol, but rather declares these two registers to be *functional fixed hardware*. Functional fixed hardware means that the mechanism is specific to the processor, and the processor driver knows how to initiate and verify processor performance transitions because the processor

driver is written by the processor vendor or written based upon documentation supplied to the operating system vendor by the processor vendor.

The following is a sample `_PCT` object. Sections referenced are in the ACPI 2.0 specification and ACPI 2.0 Errata Document, revision 1.4.

```
Name (_PCT, Package (2)          // Performance Control Object
{
//      ResourceTemplate () {Register(FixedHW, 0, 0, 0)}    // Control
Buffer () {
    0x82,          // B0-Generic Register Descriptor (Sec. 6.4.3.7)
    0xC,0,         // B1:2-length (from _ASI through _ADR fields)
    0x7F,          // B3-Address space ID, _ASI, SystemIO
    0,             // B4-Register Bit Width, _RBW
    0,             // B5-Register Bit Offset, _RBO
    0,             // B6-Reserved. Must be 0.
    0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0, // B7:14-register address, _ADR (64bits)
    0x79,0},       // B15:16-End Tag (Section 6.4.2.8)

//      ResourceTemplate () {Register(FixedHW, 0, 0, 0)}    // Status
Buffer () {
    0x82,          // B0-Generic Register Descriptor (Section
6.4.3.7)
    0xC,0,         // B1:2-length (2 bytes)
    0x7F,          // B3-Address space ID, _ASI, SystemIO
    0,             // B4-Register Bit Width, _RBW
    0,             // B5-Register Bit Offset, _RBO
    0,             // B6-Reserved. Must be 0.
    0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0, // B7:14-register address, _ADR (64bits)
    0x79,0},       // B15:16-End Tag (Section 6.4.2.8)
}) // End of _PCT object
```

9.6.2 `_PSS` (Performance-Supported States)

The `_PSS` object is generically described in Section 8.3.3.2 of the ACPI 2.0 specification. This object follows the `_PCT` object in the `_PR` name space in support of operating systems with native support for processor P-states. This section provides the BIOS specifics regarding use of `_PSS`.

The `_PSS` object specifies the performance states that are supported by the system.

Based upon the maximum voltage and frequency supported by the processor and system requirements, the BIOS will build the `_PSS` object to specify the performance states supported by the system.

The processor data sheet provides the following information required by the BIOS:

- Valid voltage and frequency combinations (P-states) supported by each speed grade of the processor.
- PLL lock time for the processor PLLs.

The BIOS can create a `_PSS` object based upon the table of valid voltage and frequency combinations in the processor data sheet. The BIOS is required to maintain a set of Performance State Tables based upon the processor data sheet for all processors capable of processor performance state transitions. Only the performance state table entries that corresponds to the processor found in the specific system by the BIOS during the POST routine are used by the BIOS to create the `_PSS` object for that system. The `_PSS` object could have as many performance states as the processor data sheet indicates are supported. For example, the `_PSS` object could provide performance state definitions P0–P4:

```
P0: 2400 MHz at 1.20 V
P1: 1600 MHz at 1.10 V
P2: 800 MHz at 1.00 V
```

Following is the generic `_PSS` object description:

```
Name (_PSS, Package())
{
    // Field Name Field Type
Package () // Performance State 0 Definition - P0
{
    CoreFreq,          // DWordConst
    Power,              // DWordConst
    TransitionLatency,  // DWordConst
    BusMasterLatency,   // DWordConst
    Control,            // DWordConst
    Status              // DWordConst
},
Package ()             // Performance State n Definition – Pn
{
    CoreFreq,          // DWordConst
    Power,              // DWordConst
    TransitionLatency,  // DWordConst
    BusMasterLatency,   // DWordConst
    Control,            // DWordConst
    Status              // DWordConst
}
} )                    // End of _PSS object
```

Each performance state entry contains six data fields as follows:

- **CoreFreq** is the core CPU operating frequency (in MHz).
- **Power** is the typical power dissipation (in milliWatts). The BIOS must fill out this field for the maximum performance state as specified in the processor data sheet. Estimates for power consumption for lower P-states are acceptable.
- **TransitionLatency** is the worst-case latency, in microseconds, that the CPU is unavailable during a transition from any performance state to this performance state. During a P-state transition, the

CPU is unavailable for no more than 9 μ s for each voltage or frequency step. While the total P-state transition could take up to 2 ms, the operating system is not blocked during the transition. Therefore the recommended value for this field is 100 μ s.

- **BusMasterLatency** is the worst-case latency, in microseconds, that Bus Masters are prevented from accessing memory during a transition from any performance state to this performance state. This value is estimated at 9 μ s, and is subject to change in a future revision of this document.
- **Control** is the value to be written to the _PSS Control Field in order to initiate a transition to the performance state. The BIOS must fill this out as described on page 232.
- **Status** is the value that OSPM will compare to a value read from the _PSS Status Field to ensure that the transition to the performance state was successful. OSPM may always place the CPU in the lowest power state, but additional states are only available when indicated by the _PPC method. The BIOS must fill this out as described on page 236.

9.6.2.1 _PSS Control Field

The control field of each performance state definition within the _PSS object contains the information that the processor driver uses. This includes NewVID and NewFID values that must be written into the FIDVID_CTL register (MSR C001_0041) to initiate transitions between processor performance states. _PSS Control field has the following format:

31	30	29	28	27	26	20					19	18	17	11			10	6		5	0		
IRT		RVO		Res	PLL_LOCK_TIME					MVS		VST			NewVID			NewFID					

Bits	Field	Description
31–30	IRT	Isochronous Relief Time
29–28	RVO	Ramp Voltage Offset
27	Reserved	Must be declared as zero.
26–20	PLL_LOCK_TIME	Phase-Locked Loop Time
19–18	MVS	Maximum Voltage Step
17–11	VST	Voltage Stabilization Time
10–6	NewVID	The VID value associated with the OS-requested P-state
5–0	NewFID	The FID value associated with the OS-requested P-state

The following sections describe in detail the sub-fields of the _PSS control field.

9.6.2.1.1 Voltage Stabilization Time

The Voltage Stabilization Time (VST) defines the number of microseconds (in 20 μ s increments) that are required for the voltage to increase by the amount specified by the MVS field when the VID outputs of the processor transition. The processor driver counts VST between VID steps that increase the processor's core voltage (not between steps that decrease it). Table 42 shows the actual stabilization time for several VST values.

Table 42. Sample VST Values

VST Value (Bits 17–11)	Stabilization Time
7'h00	0 μ s
7'h01	20 μ s
...	
7'h05	100 μ s (BIOS default. This is the value used by all platforms.)
...	
7'h64	2000 μ s
...	
7'h7e	2520 μ s
7'h7f	2540 μ s

9.6.2.1.2 Maximum Voltage Step

The Maximum Voltage Step (MVS) defines the maximum voltage increment the processor driver can use when changing from a lower voltage to a higher voltage. For the processor driver, when increasing core voltage, the next VID = CurrVID - 2^{MVS} . Table 43 on page 234 shows the values and increments for this field.

For example, if the voltage is being increased, and

- the current VID is 00100 (1.45 V),
- the OS-requested target VID is 00000 (1.55 V),
- and MVS is 0 (which selects 25mV voltage steps).

Then, the processor driver calculates the first VID to which to transition as follows:

$$\text{Next_VID} = \text{CurrVID} - 2^{\text{MVS}} = 00100 - 2^0 = 00100 - 1 = 00011 = 1.475 \text{ V}$$

Next the processor driver transitions the VID to select 1.475 V.

After the VST is counted off, the processor driver calculates the next VID to which to transition as follows:

$$\text{Next_VID} = \text{CurrVID} - 2^{\text{MVS}} = 00011 - 2^0 = 00010 = 1.500 \text{ V}$$

This process iterates until the CurrVID is equal to the OS-requested target VID minus the VID associated with the ramp voltage offset. After each VID transition the processor driver counts off the voltage stabilization time before calculating the Next_VID.

Table 43. MVS Values

MVS Value (Bits 19–18)	Increment
00	25 mV (BIOS default. This is the required value that must be used.)
01	50 mV (Reserved for future use)
10	100 mV (Reserved for future use)
11	200 mV (Reserved for future use)

9.6.2.1.3 PLL Lock Time

The 7-bit binary PLL_LOCK_TIME value defines the time required for the processor PLLs to lock in microseconds. The PLL_LOCK_TIME value is specified in the processor data sheet.

9.6.2.1.4 Ramp Voltage Offset

The Ramp Voltage Offset (RVO) is the offset voltage applied to the nominal voltage when performing P-state transitions. The RVO value is specified in the processor data sheet. Table 44 lists the RVO values and their corresponding offset voltages.

Table 44. RVO Values

RVO Value (Bits 29–28)	Offset Voltage	Description
00	0 mV	Target P-state VID needs no adjustment for RVO.
01	25 mV	Decrement the target P-state VID by 1 to add the RVO.
10	50 mV	Decrement the target P-state VID by 2 to add the RVO. (BIOS default. This is the required value.)
11	75 mV	Decrement the target P-state VID by 3 to add the RVO.

For the processor driver, RVO is in VID increments. To increase the processor voltage the processor driver must subtract the RVO field from the VID. The MVS field dictates the increments in which RVO can be subtracted from VID.

For example, consider the case when the VID is 00100b (1.45 V), RVO is 10b (50 mV), MVS is 00b (25 mV), and VST is 7'h05 (100 μ s). Based upon these parameters, the voltage must be increased by 50 mV in two steps of 25 mV with a 100 μ s delay after each VID change. The steps to apply the RVO are:

1. The VID code is reduced to 00011b. This transitions the voltage from 1.45 V to 1.475 V.
2. The processor driver waits 100 μ s as specified by VST.
3. The VID code is reduced to 00010b. This transitions the voltage from 1.475 V to 1.5 V.

4. The processor driver waits 100 μ s as specified by VST.

Table 45 lists the VID codes and their corresponding voltages for the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors.

Table 45. VID Code Voltages

VID Code (Bits 4–0)	Voltage	VID Code (Bits 4–0)	Voltage
00000	1.550 V	10000	1.150 V
00001	1.525 V	10001	1.125 V
00010	1.500 V	10010	1.100 V
00011	1.475 V	10011	1.075 V
00100	1.450 V	10100	1.050 V
00101	1.425 V	10101	1.025 V
00110	1.400 V	10110	1.000 V
00111	1.375 V	10111	0.975 V
01000	1.350 V	11000	0.950 V
01001	1.325 V	11001	0.925 V
01010	1.300 V	11010	0.900 V
01011	1.275 V	11011	0.875 V
01100	1.250 V	11100	0.850 V
01101	1.225 V	11101	0.825 V
01110	1.200 V	11110	0.800 V
01111	1.175 V	11111	Off

9.6.2.1.5 Isochronous Relief Time

The Isochronous Relief Time (IRT) is the amount of time the processor driver must count after each FID change step in a given P-state transition. During each FID change step, system memory is inaccessible to bus masters. While the processor driver is counting IRT between FID change steps, bus masters have access to system memory. IRT ensures that system memory is not blocked for an extended period of time that could cause problems for devices that are not tolerant of memory access latency on the order of tens of microseconds. Table 46 lists the IRT values and their corresponding times.

Table 46. IRT Values

IRT Value (Bits 31–30)	Time
00	10 μ s
01	20 μ s

Table 46. IRT Values

IRT Value (Bits 31–30)	Time
10	40 μ s
11	80 μ s (BIOS default)

9.6.2.2 _PSS Status Field

The status field of each performance state definition within the _PSS object contains the information required by the processor driver to verify that the transition has completed based upon a read of the FIDVID_STATUS MSR. The _PSS Status field is 32 bits, and the BIOS must map the FIDVID_STATUS MSR CurrVID and CurrFID information to the _PSS status field as shown in Table 47 on page 236.

Table 47. _PSS Status Field

Bit	Name	Description
5–0	CurrFID	The FID value associated with the OS-requested P-state
10–6	CurrVID	The VID value associated with the OS-requested P-state
31–11	Reserved	These bits must be 0 and are ignored by the processor driver.

The CurrFID and CurrVID fields of the FIDVID_STATUS MSR are valid only when the FidVidPending bit is 0.

9.6.3 _PPC (Performance Present Capabilities)

The _PPC object is used to limit the maximum processor performance state that the operating system can use at any given time. This object follows the _PSS object in the _PR name space for the operating systems that support the ACPI 2.0 processor P-state objects.

_PPC is generically described in Section 8.3.3.3 of the ACPI 2.0 specification.

This section provides BIOS specifics regarding use of _PPC.

For Mobile systems, it is AMD's recommendation that when the system is battery powered that the _PPC object is used to limit the maximum P-state that is available to the operating system to a P-state that occurs at the lowest voltage supported by the processor as declared by the processor data sheet.

If the OEM and BIOS vendor do not implement a _PPC that limits the maximum processor performance state under certain conditions, then the BIOS must always return a value of 0 for the _PPC object. When a value of 0 is returned for the _PPC object, all processor performance states specified by the _PSS object are available.

Operating systems with native support for processor P-state transitions and ACPI Thermal zones make use of reduced processor performance states for passive cooling before making use of “throttling” with the stop grant state. This is the case even when the `_PPC` object returns a value of 0.

9.6.3.1 Using `_PPC` to Limit the Maximum Processor P-State When battery Powered

Processor performance exceeds the demands of most typical notebook PC applications. However, there are basically idle scenarios where applications run instructions that incorrectly cause the operating system to conclude that the processor is 100% utilized. This causes the operating system to force the processor to its maximum performance state, wasting power with no benefit to the user. Also, static power consumption of the processor increases when the processor is operating in a P-state above the minimum voltage level supported by the processor.

Therefore, it will increase the system's battery-powered runtime to limit the maximum performance state available when battery-powered.

9.6.3.2 Implementation Overview

An ACPI-compliant General-Purpose Event (GPE) input of the chipset (typically the I/O Hub) is dedicated to causing an SCI whenever the notebook power source changes. This input will be referred to as AC available (ACAV). The system can control ACAV directly based upon the presence of an AC adapter, or the embedded controller (EC) in the system can control ACAV.

Whenever the AC adapter is inserted or removed from the system, the chipset logic associated with ACAV sets the status bit associated with ACAV, and if enabled causes an SCI to be asserted. Note: the control method associated with ACAV status could be implemented in the EC. A chipset GPE dedicated for AC adapter status is used for this description.

The BIOS provides the following ACPI ASL control methods and objects:

- `_PPC` (Performance Present Capabilities)
- `_PSR` (Power Source) is described in Section 11.3.1 of the ACPI 2.0 specification. `_PSR` returns:
 - 0x00000000 if the system is running on battery power.
 - 0x00000001 if the system is running from an AC adapter.
- `_SB.AC` is a BIOS-defined device object for the AC adapter.
- `_L12` is the control method associated with GPE 12.

The flow associated with AC adapter insertion or removal is:

- AC adapter is inserted or removed
- The GPE Status bit associated with ACAV is asserted (for this example, GPE 12)
- An SCI (system control interrupt) is issued

- The OS/ACPI driver determines that GPE 12 was asserted and runs the associated control method (_L12)
- _L12
 - Issues a Notify(_PR.CPU0, 0x80) which forces the OS to re-evaluate the _PPC object.
 - _PPC reads the state of the ACAV pin and returns:
 - 0 if the system is AC-powered. All P-states are available.
 - n if the system is battery-powered, where n is the highest P-state is supported when battery-powered. Only P-states n and lower are available. For example, if a processor supports 3 P-states:
 - P0 = 2400 MHz at 1.2 V
 - P1 = 1600 MHz at 1.1 V
 - P2 = 800 MHz at 1.0 V
 - Then n = 2 will limit the maximum P-state to 800 MHz at 1.0 V when the system is battery-powered.
 - OS takes into account the available P-states and if necessary performs a P-state transition.
 - Issues a Notify(_SB.AC, 0x80) where _SB.AC is the AC adapter device object.
 - OS runs _PSR to determine if the current power source is the AC adapter. PSR reads the state of the ACAV pin and returns:
 - 1 if the system is AC-powered.
 - 0 if the system is battery-powered.
- Normal operation continues.

9.6.4 PSTATE_CNT

PSTATE_CNT is an entry in the Fixed ACPI Description Table (FADT). A PSTATE_CNT entry of 0 informs the operating system that the BIOS in System Management Mode (SMM) does not perform processor performance state transitions.

The BIOS must report a value of 0 in the PSTATE_CNT field of the FADT. The only BIOS-controlled processor performance state transition (if any) must be performed near the beginning of the POST (Power-On Self Test) routine before control is passed to the operating system. All subsequent transitions are made by system software not the BIOS. System software is either the AMD PowerNow! technology software (for Microsoft® operating systems prior to the Windows® XP operating system) or the operating system and associated processor driver (for the Windows XP operating system and subsequent Microsoft operating systems).

Note: SMM is not used to perform processor performance state transitions.

9.6.5 CST_CNT

CST_CNT is an entry in the FADT. “If non-zero, this field contains the value OSPM writes to the SMI_CMD register to indicate operating system support for the _CST object and C States Changed notification.”

The BIOS must report a value of 0 in the CST_CNT field of the FADT. AMD platforms only support ACPI 1.0b processor power state functionality. Processor power states are referred to as “C” states by the ACPI specifications.

9.7 BIOS Support for AMD PowerNow!™ Software with Legacy Operating Systems

If BIOS determines it has a processor and system that support P-state transitions, it provides a PSB (PST Block) that is comprised of a header and processor specific PSTs (Performance State Tables).

If the BIOS cannot determine that the system and processor support P-state transitions as defined in 9.5.1 on page 218, including uniquely identifying the specific processor as described in 9.5.1.2 on page 219, then the BIOS must not provide a PSB or PSTs. (Changing the PSB Signature field to all 0s is an effective way of removing the PSB and PSTs.)

Table 48 defines the PSB and PST structures.

Table 48. Performance State Block Structure (PSB Version 1.4)

Name	Length (Bytes)	Field Purpose
PSB Header		
Signature	10	Start of the PST Block - Always set this field to “AMDK7PNOW!”
TableVersion	1	The version of the table as defined by AMD. Set to 14h for version 1.4. If AMD PowerNow! software does not recognize the TableVersion, it will not attempt to make P-state transitions.
Flags	1	All bits are reserved and written to zero.
VST	2	Voltage Stabilization Time. The amount of time required for the processor's core voltage regulator to increase the processor's core voltage the increment specified by MVS. VST is specified in 20 μ s increments. The default is 05h (100 μ s). All other values are reserved.
Reserved1	1	Bits 1–0: Ramp Voltage Offset (RVO) has the same definition as for the _PSS ACPI object. Bits 3–2: Isochronous Relief Time (IRT) has the same definition as for the _PSS ACPI object. Bits 5–4: Maximum Voltage Step (MVS) has the same definition as for the _PSS ACPI object. All undefined bits must be zero.
NumPST	1	The total number of PSTs in the PSB.

Table 48. Performance State Block Structure (PSB Version 1.4) (Continued)

Name	Length (Bytes)	Field Purpose
PST Header		
CPUID	4	CPUID (EAX of CPUID extended function 8000_0001h) of the processor that this PST belongs to. This provides processor family, extended family, model, extended model, and stepping (revision) fields.
PLL Lock Time	1	Processor PLL Lock time in microseconds. The PLL Lock time is specified in the processor data sheet addendum. For example, PLL_LOCK_TIME of 2 μ s is represented as 00000010b.
MaxFID	1	MaxFID[5:0] as reported by the MaxFID field of the FIDVID_STATUS MSR.
MaxVID	1	MaxVID[4:0] as reported by the MaxVID field of the FIDVID_STATUS MSR.
NumPStates	1	The number of FID, VID combinations in the PST. This field must be ≥ 1 .
FID	1	FID[5:0] code corresponding to the frequency of the lowest performance state that the processor supports. This is defined in the processor data sheet.
VID	1	VID[4:0] code corresponding to the voltage of the lowest performance state that the processor supports. This is defined in the processor data sheet.
-----	-----	FID, VID pairs are concatenated here so that the total number of pairs is equal to the NumPstates field. Each subsequent FID, VID pair is appended in ascending order (i.e., the last FID, VID pair corresponds to the maximum performance state supported by the processor).

For PSBs that contain more than one PST (i.e., NumPST > 1), a new PST is concatenated immediately following the last VID code of the last performance state of the table.

For processors with a family number of less than Fh, refer to BIOS Requirements for AMD PowerNow! Technology Application Note, order# 25264.

9.8 System Configuration for Power Management

9.8.1 Chipset Configuration for Power Management

Chipset configuration is covered in chipset related documentation. The BIOS is required to:

- Ensure that the SMAF code to STPCLK and Stop Grant mapping for all components based on HyperTransport technology is configured as described in Table 38 on page 215.
- For single processor systems, the HyperTransport links are tri-stated in response to LDTSTOP_L assertion.
- Chipset power management features are appropriately enabled based upon system class.

- LSTSTOP_L assertion during FID_Change:
 - For Revision B processors is at least 4μs but less than 10 μs for UP systems.
 - For Revision C and subsequent processors is at least 2μs but less than 6μs. Note: for UMA chipsets 2μs is ideal and may be required in some cases.
- LSTSTOP_L assertion during FID_Change is 10 μs for MP systems.

9.8.2 Processor Configuration for Power Management

BIOS configures the processor to enable power management during the POST routine. Table 49 on page 241 lists processor memory system configuration register settings that the BIOS must initialize.

Table 49. Configuration Register Settings for Power Management

Functionality	Register	Mobile Setting	UP Desktop Setting	MP Setting
Do not enable HyperTransport™ links to be tri-stated in response to LDTSTOP_L assertion	LDT0 Link Control (function 0: offset 84h[13]) (LdtStopTriEn) LDT1 Link Control (function 0: offset A4h[13]) (LdtStopTriEn) LDT2 Link Control (function 0: offset C4h[13]) (LdtStopTriEn)	0b	0b	0b
Map STPCLK actions to SMAF codes: SMAF 0 = C2 SMAF 1 = C3 SMAF 2 = VID/FID Change SMAF 3 = S1	Power Management Control Low (function 3: offset 80h)	6307_6361h	2307_0000h	Revision B: 2117_0000h Revision C: 2307_0000h
Map STPCLK actions to SMAF codes: SMAF 4 = S3 SMAF 5 = Throttling SMAF 6 = S4/S5 SMAF 7 is not used for STP-CLK, the corresponding field is used for HALT.	Power Management Control High (function 3: offset 84h)	6113_4113h	2113_2113h	Revision B: 0013_0013h Revision C: 2113_2113h

Table 49. Configuration Register Settings for Power Management (Continued)

Functionality	Register	Mobile Setting	UP Desktop Setting	MP Setting
BCLK and LCLK PLL frequency lock	Clock Power/Timing Low (function 3: offset D4h)	Revision B: 000D_0001h Revision C with unbuffered memory: 000D_0001h Revision C with registered DIMMs: 04E2_0007h		
Sets "Ramp VID" (0 mV) and Voltage Regulator Stabilization time (0 s). The processor driver performs this function, not hardware.	Clock Power/Timing High (function 3:offset D8h)	0000_0000h	0000_0000h	0000_0000h

9.8.2.1 Additional BIOS Support Requirements for S3

During the S3 state, power is removed from the processor's CPU core, host bridge, and memory controller. It is required that the BIOS restore the state of the processor's memory controller upon resume from S3 prior to having the memory controller bring system memory out of self-refresh mode. The system must provide non volatile storage for the memory controller configuration registers during the S3 state. For UP and DP systems, this storage will be provided in the chipset. There are basically two opportunities for the BIOS to store the memory controller configuration to this nonvolatile memory.

- During POST as the memory controller is being initially configured—This is preferred, as it does not require SMM support.
- In SMM just prior to entry to the S3 state—BIOS uses an SMI trap on writes to the ACPI PM1 control register to get control of the system just prior to entry to S3. After storing the memory controller configuration registers, I/O instruction restart is used to place the system into the S3 state. This is not preferred because it relies on SMM.

Processor Function 2 configuration space registers at offsets 40–98h must be stored in nonvolatile RAM for support of resume from S3.

9.8.2.2 ACPI Tables/Objects

FADT entries for C-state and throttling support and throttling is listed in Table 50 on page 242.

Table 50. FADT Table Entries

Field	Value
PSTATE_CNT	0
CST_CNT	0
P_LVL2_LAT	> 100

Table 50. FADT Table Entries

Field	Value
P_LVL3_LAT	> 1000
DUTY_WIDTH	0 if _PSV is not used 3 if _PSV is used



10 Performance Monitoring

AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors support the performance-monitoring features introduced in earlier processor implementations. These features allow the selection of events to be monitored, and include a set of corresponding counter registers that track the frequency of monitored events. Software tools can use these features to identify performance bottlenecks, such as sections of code that have high cache-miss rates or frequently mis-predicted branches. This information can then be used as a guide for improving or eliminating performance problems through software optimizations or hardware-design improvements.

For a general description of how to use these performance monitoring features, refer to the “Debug and Performance Resources” section in Volume 2: System Programming of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmers Manual*, order# 24593.

10.1 Performance Counters

The processor provides four 48-bit performance counters. Each counter can monitor a different event. The accuracy of the counters is not ensured. Some events are reserved. When a reserved event is selected, the results are undefined.

Performance counters are used to count specific processor events, such as data-cache misses, or the duration of events, such as the number of clocks it takes to return data from memory after a cache miss. During event counting, the processor increments the counter when it detects an occurrence of the event. During duration measurement, the processor counts the number of processor clocks it takes to complete an event. Each performance counter can be used to count one event, or measure the duration of one event at a time.

The processor supports four performance counters, *PerfCtrn*. The implementation of each counter supports 48 bits of resolution. This section shows the format of the *PerfCtrn* registers.

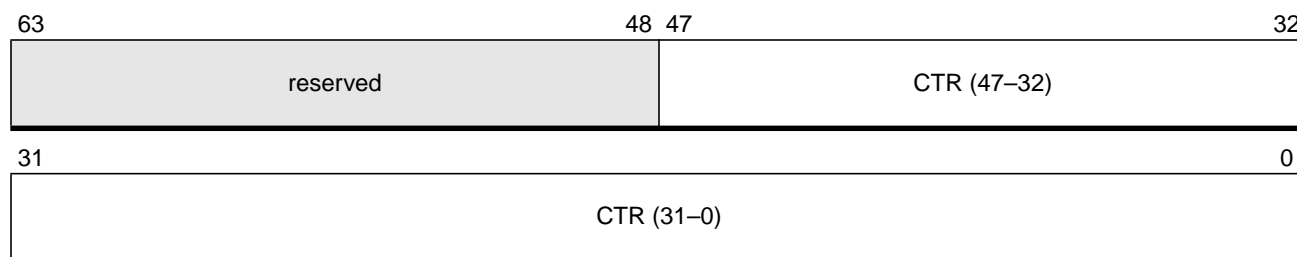
Only code executing at privilege level 0 can directly write the performance counters using the WRMSR instruction. The *PerfCtrn* registers are model-specific registers that can be read using a special *read performance-monitoring counter* instruction, RDPMC. The RDPMC instruction loads the contents of the *PerfCtrn* register specified by the ECX register, into the EDX register and the EAX register. The high 32 bits are loaded into EDX, and the low 32 bits are loaded into EAX. RDPMC can be executed only at CPL=0, unless system software enables use of the instruction at all privilege levels. RDPMC can be enabled for use at all privilege levels by setting CR4.PCE (the performance-monitor counter-enable bit) to 1. When CR4.PCE = 0 and CPL > 0, attempts to execute RDPMC result in a general-protection exception (#GP).

The performance counters can also be read and written by system software running at CPL=0 using the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions, respectively. Writing the performance counters can be useful if software wants to count a specific number of events, and then trigger an interrupt when that count is

reached. An interrupt can be triggered when a performance counter overflows. Software should use the WRMSR instruction to load the count as a two's-complement negative number into the performance counter. This causes the counter to overflow after counting the appropriate number of times.

The performance counters are not assured of producing identical measurements each time they are used to measure a particular instruction sequence, and they should not be used to take measurements of very small instruction sequences. The RDPMC instruction is not serializing, and it can be executed out-of-order with respect to other instructions around it. Even when bound by serializing instructions, the system environment at the time the instruction is executed can cause events to be counted before the counter value is loaded into EDX:EAX.

PerfCtr0–PerfCtr3 Registers C001_0004h, C001_0005h, C001_0006h, C001_0007h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W
63–48	Reserved	RAZ	R
47–0	CTR	Counter value	R

10.2 Performance Event-Select Registers

Performance Event-Select registers (PerfEvtSel*i*) are used to specify the events counted by the performance counters, and to control other aspects of their operation. Each performance counter supported by the implementation has a corresponding event-select register that controls its operation. This section shows the format of the PerfEvtSel*n* registers.

The performance event-select registers can be read and written only by system software running at CPL=0 using the RDMSR and WRMSR instructions, respectively. Any attempt to read or write these registers at CPL>0 causes a general-protection exception to occur.

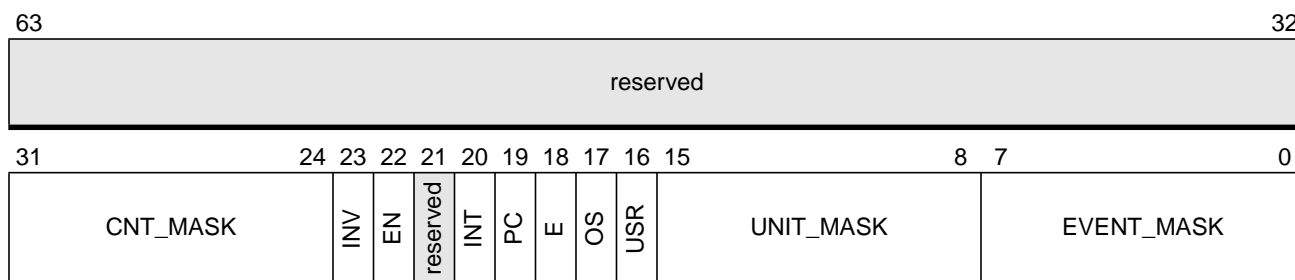
To accurately start counting with the write that enables the counter, disable the counter when changing the event and then enable the counter with a second MSR write.

The edge count mode will increment the counter when a transition happens on the monitored event. If the event selected is changed without disabling the counter, an extra edge will be falsely detected when the first event is a static 0 and the second event is a static one. To avoid this false edge detection, disable the counter when changing the event and then enable the counter with a second MSR write.

The EVENT_MASK field specifies the event or event duration in a processor unit to be counted by the corresponding PerfCtr register. Table 52 on page 248 shows the function unit encoding of EVENT_MASK[7:5]. The UNIT_MASK field is used to further specify or qualify a monitored event. Table 52 on page 248 shows the events and unit masks supported by the processor. The events that can be counted are implementation dependent. For more up-to-date information on the events in the latest processor revisions, refer to the *Revision Guide for the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors*, order# 25759.

PerfEvtSel0–PerfEvtSel3 Registers

C001_0000h, C001_0001h,
C001_0002h, C001_0003h



Bit	Name	Function	R/W
63–32	reserved	RAZ	
31–24	CNT_MASK	Counter Mask	R/W
23	INV	Invert Counter Mask	R/W
22	EN	Enable Counter	R/W
21	reserved	SBZ	
20	INT	Enable APIC Interrupt	R/W
19	PC	Pin Control	R/W
18	E	Edge Detect	R/W
17	OS	Operating-System Mode	R/W
16	USR	User Mode	R/W
15–8	UNIT_MASK	Event Qualification	R/W
7–0	EVENT_MASK	Unit and Event Selection	R/W

Field Descriptions

Event Selection (EVENT_MASK)—Bits 7–0. EVENT_MASK[7:5] selects a processor functional unit. EVENT_MASK[4:0] selects an event within the processor unit.

Event Qualification (UNIT_MASK)—Bits 15–8. Each UNIT_MASK bit further specifies or qualifies the event specified by EVENT_MASK. All events selected by UNIT_MASK are simultaneously monitored.

User Mode (USR)—Bit 16. Count events in user mode (at CPL > 0).

Operating-System Mode (OS)—Bit 17. Count events in operating-system mode (at CPL = 0).

Edge Detect (E)—Bit 18. 1=Edge detection. 0=Level detection.

Pin Control (PC)—Bit 19. With a value of 1, toggles the performance monitor pin PMi when PerfCtr*i* register overflows. With a value of 0, toggles the performance monitor pin PMi each time PerfCtr*i* register is incremented.

Enable APIC Interrupt (INT)—Bit 20. Enables APIC interrupt when PerfCtr*i* register overflows.

Enable Counter (EN)—Bit 22. Enables performance monitor counter.

Invert Counter Mask (INV)—Bit 23. See CNT_MASK.

Counter Mask (CNT_MASK)—Bits 31–24. a) When CNT_MASK is 0, the corresponding PerfCtr*i* register is incremented by the number of events occurring in a clock cycle. Maximum number of events in one cycle is 3. b) When CNT_MASK values are from 1 to 3 and INV is 0, the corresponding PerfCtr*i* register is incremented by 1, if the number of events occurring in a clock cycle is greater than or equal to CNT_MASK. When CNT_MASK values are from 1 to 3 and INV is 1, the corresponding PerfCtr*i* register is incremented by 1, if the number of events occurring in a clock cycle is less than CNT_MASK. c) CNT_MASK values from 4 to 255 are reserved.

Table 51. Processor Functional Unit Encoding

EVENT_MASK[7:5]	Description
0	Selects event from FP unit
1	Selects event from LS unit
2	Selects event from DC unit
3	Selects event from BU unit
4	Selects event from IC unit
5	Reserved
6	Selects event from FR unit
7	Selects event from NB unit

Table 52. Performance Monitor Events

EVENT_MASK [7:0]	Encoded EVENT_MASK [7:5]	UNIT_MASK bit	Description
00h	FP		Dispatched FPU ops
		0	Add pipe ops excluding junk ops
		1	Multiply pipe ops excluding junk ops
		2	Store pipe ops excluding junk ops
		3	Add pipe junk ops
		4	Multiply pipe junk ops

Table 52. Performance Monitor Events (Continued)

EVENT_MASK [7:0]	Encoded EVENT_MASK [7:5]	UNIT_ MASK bit	Description
		5	Store pipe junk ops
		7–6	Reserved
01h	FP		Cycles with no FPU ops retired
02h	FP		Dispatched FPU ops that use the fast flag interface
03h to 1Fh			Reserved
20h	LS		Segment register load
		0	ES
		1	CS
		2	SS
		3	DS
		4	FS
		5	GS
		6	HS
		7	Reserved
21h	LS		Microarchitectural resync caused by self-modifying code
22h	LS		Microarchitectural resync caused by snoop
23h	LS		LS buffer 2 full
24h	LS		Locked operation (Revision B and earlier revisions)
		0	Number of lock instructions executed (Revision C)
		1	Number of cycles spent in the lock request/grant stage (Revision C)
		2	Number of cycles a lock takes to complete once it is non-speculative and is the oldest load/store operation (non-speculative cycles in Ls2 entry 0) (Revision C)
		7-3	Reserved
25h	LS		Microarchitectural late cancel of an operation
26h	LS		Retired CFLUSH instructions
27h	LS		Retired CPUID instructions
28h to 3Fh			Reserved
40h	DC		Access (includes microcode scratchpad accesses)
41h	DC		Miss
42h	DC		Refill from L2
		0	Invalid
		1	Shared
		2	Exclusive

Table 52. Performance Monitor Events (Continued)

EVENT_MASK [7:0]	Encoded EVENT_MASK [7:5]	UNIT_ MASK bit	Description
		3	Owner
		4	Modified
		7–5	Reserved
43h	DC		Refill from system
		0	Invalid
		1	Shared
		2	Exclusive
		3	Owner
		4	Modified
		7–5	Reserved
44h	DC		Copyback
		0	Invalid
		1	Shared
		2	Exclusive
		3	Owner
		4	Modified
		7–5	Reserved
45h	DC		L1 DTLB miss and L2 DTLB hit
46h	DC		L1 DTLB miss and L2 DTLB miss
47h	DC		Misaligned data reference
48h	DC		Microarchitectural late cancel of an access
49h	DC		Microarchitectural early cancel of an access
4Ah	DC		One bit ECC error recorded found by scrubber
		0	Scrubber error
		1	Piggyback scrubber errors
		7–2	Reserved
4Bh	DC		Dispatched prefetch instructions
		0	Load
		1	Store
		2	NTA
		3–7	Reserved
4Ch	DC		DCACHE accesses by locks (Revision C)
		0	Number of dcache accesses by lock instructions (Revision C)
		1	Number of dcache misses by lock instructions (Revision C)
		7-2	Reserved

Table 52. Performance Monitor Events (Continued)

EVENT_MASK [7:0]	Encoded EVENT_MASK [7:5]	UNIT_ MASK bit	Description
4Dh to 5Fh			Reserved
7Dh	BU		Internal L2 request
		0	IC fill
		1	DC fill
		2	TLB reload
		3	Tag snoop request
		4	Cancelled request
		7–5	Reserved
7Eh	BU		Fill request that missed in L2
		0	IC fill
		1	DC fill
		2	TLB reload
		7–3	Reserved
7Fh	BU		Fill into L2
		0	Dirty L2 victim
		1	Victim from L1
		7–2	Reserved
80h	IC		Fetch
81h	IC		Miss
82h	IC		Refill from L2
83h	IC		Refill from system
84h	IC		L1ITLB miss and L2ITLB hit
85h	IC		L1ITLB miss and L2ITLB miss
86h	IC		Microarchitectural resync caused by snoop
87h	IC		Instruction fetch stall
88h	IC		Return stack hit
89h	IC		Return stack overflow
8Ah to BFh			Reserved
C0h	FR		Retired x86 instructions including exceptions and interrupts
C1h	FR		Retired uops
C2h	FR		Retired branches including exceptions and interrupts
C3h	FR		Retired branches mispredicted
C4h	FR		Retired taken branches
C5h	FR		Retired taken branches mispredicted
C6h	FR		Retired far control transfers (always mispredicted)

Table 52. Performance Monitor Events (Continued)

EVENT_MASK [7:0]	Encoded EVENT_MASK [7:5]	UNIT_ MASK bit	Description
C7h	FR		Retired resyncs (non control transfer branches)
C8h	FR		Retired near returns
C9h	FR		Retired near returns mispredicted
CAh	FR		Retired taken branches mispredicted only due to address miscompare
CBh	FR		Retired FPU instructions
		0	x87 instructions
		1	Combined MMX™ and 3DNow!™ instructions
		2	Combined packed SSE and SSE2 instructions
		3	Combined scalar SSE and SSE2 instructions
		4–7	Reserved
CCh	FR		Retired fastpath double op instructions
		0	With low op in position 0
		1	With low op in position 1
		2	With low op in position 2
		3–7	Reserved
CDh	FR		Interrupts masked cycles (IF=0)
CEh	FR		Interrupts masked while pending cycles (INTR while IF=0)
CFh	FR		Taken hardware interrupts
D0h	FR		Nothing to dispatch (decoder empty)
D1h	FR		Dispatch stalls (D2h–DAh combined)
D2h	FR		Dispatch stall from branch abort to retire
D3h	FR		Dispatch stall for serialization
D4h	FR		Dispatch stall for segment load
D5h	FR		Dispatch stall when reorder buffer is full
D6h	FR		Dispatch stall when reservation stations are full
D7h	FR		Dispatch stall when FPU is full
D8h	FR		Dispatch stall when LS is full
D9h	FR		Dispatch stall when waiting for all to be quiet
DAh	FR		Dispatch stall when far control transfer or resync branch is pending
DBh	FR		FPU exceptions
		0	x87 reclass microfaults
		1	SSE retype microfaults
		2	SSE reclass microfaults

Table 52. Performance Monitor Events (Continued)

EVENT_MASK [7:0]	Encoded EVENT_MASK [7:5]	UNIT_ MASK bit	Description
		3	SSE and x87 microtraps
		4–7	Reserved
DCh	FR		Number of breakpoints for DR0
DDh	FR		Number of breakpoints for DR1
DEh	FR		Number of breakpoints for DR2
DFh	FR		Number of breakpoints for DR3
E0h	NB		Memory controller page access event
		0	Page hit
		1	Page miss
		2	Page conflict
		7–3	Reserved
E1h	NB		Memory controller page table overflow
E2h	NB		Memory controller DRAM command slots missed (in MemClks)
E3h	NB		Memory controller turnaround
		0	DIMM turnaround
		1	Read to write turnaround
		2	Write to read turnaround
		7–3	Reserved
E4h	NB		Memory controller bypass counter saturation
		0	Memory controller high priority bypass
		1	Memory controller low priority bypass
		2	DRAM controller interface bypass
		3	DRAM controller queue bypass
		7–4	Reserved
EBh	NB		Sized commands
		0	NonPostWrSzByte
		1	NonPostWrSzDword
		2	PostWrSzByte
		3	PostWrSzDword
		4	RdSzByte
		5	RdSzDword
		6	RdModWr
		7	Reserved
ECh	NB		Probe result

Table 52. Performance Monitor Events (Continued)

EVENT_MASK [7:0]	Encoded EVENT_MASK [7:5]	UNIT_ MASK bit	Description
		0	Probe miss
		1	Probe hit
		2	Probe hit dirty without memory cancel
		3	Probe hit dirty with memory cancel
		7–4	Reserved
F6h	NB		HyperTransport™ bus 0 bandwidth
		0	Command sent
		1	Data sent
		2	Buffer release sent
		3	Nop sent
		7–4	Reserved
F7h	NB		HyperTransport™ bus 1 bandwidth
		0	Command sent
		1	Data sent
		2	Buffer release sent
		3	Nop sent
		7–4	Reserved
F8h	NB		HyperTransport™ bus 2 bandwidth
		0	Command sent
		1	Data sent
		2	Buffer release sent
		3	Nop sent
		7–4	Reserved

11 BIOS Checklist

The checklist in this chapter reviews information that is described elsewhere and is required by BIOS developers to properly incorporate AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors into systems.

11.1 CUID

Use the CUID instruction to properly identify the AMD Athlon™ 64 processor or AMD Opteron™ processor.

- Determine the processor type, stepping, and available features by using functions 0000_0001h and 8000_0001h of the CUID instruction.
- Boot-up display - The processor name should be displayed according to the processor name string defined in section 6.2 of *CUID Guide for the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors*, order# 25481.

For more information on the CUID instruction, see *AMD Processor Recognition Application Note*, order# 20734 and *CUID Guide for the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors*, order# 25481.

11.2 CPU Speed Detection

The BIOS can use the time-stamp counter (TSC) to clock a timed operation and compare the result to the Real-Time Clock (RTC) to determine the operating frequency. See the example of frequency-determination assembler code available on the AMD web site.

11.3 Multiprocessing Capability Detection

The multiprocessing capability of the AMD Opteron™ processor is determined by the MPCap and BigMPCap bits in the Northbridge Capability Register (Function 3, Offset E8h).

Multiprocessing Capability	MPCap	BigMPCap
UP Capable	0	0
DP Capable	1	0
MP Capable	1	1

During POST, the BIOS checks the multiprocessing capability of AMD Opteron™ processors, and configures the system accordingly.

Multiprocessing capability detection is not required in a UP system.

All processors must be DP capable or MP capable in a DP system. If any processor is only UP capable, the BIOS must configure the BSP as a UP processor, and must not initialize the AP.

All processors must be MP capable in an MP system. If any processor is not MP capable, the BIOS must configure the BSP as a UP processor, and must not initialize APs.

If all processors do not have adequate multiprocessing capability for a DP or an MP system, the BIOS must display the following message:

```
***** Warning: non-MP Processor *****
```

```
The processor(s) installed in your system are not multiprocessing capable. Your  
system will continue to boot in a non-supported uniprocessor mode.
```

If all processors have adequate multiprocessing capability for a DP or an MP system, but have different model numbers or operate at different frequencies, the BIOS must configure the BSP as a UP processor, and must not initialize APs. The BIOS must display the following message:

```
***** Warning: non-matching MP Processors *****
```

```
AMD multiprocessing-capable processors have been detected in your system.  
However, all processors must be the same model and frequency to run in  
multiprocessing mode. Your system will continue to boot in a non-supported  
uniprocessor mode.
```

If the BSP is configured as a UP processor in a DP system or an MP system, the BIOS must follow the initialization sequence for a UP system. RQRte[0], RPRte[0], and BCRte[0] in the BSP routing table (Function 0, Offsets 40h, 44h, 48h, 4Ch, 50h, 54h, 58h, and 5Ch) must be set indicating that packets are routed to the BSP node. The routing table must be disabled, and the Request Disable bit (Function 0, Offset 6Ch) must be set for all APs. An interprocessor interrupt command sent to an AP will result in an undefined system behavior.

11.4 Model-Specific Registers (MSRs)

Access only the MSRs that are implemented in the processor.

- Follow the processor MSR programming sequence described in this document. This includes setting the HWCR, SYSCFG, MTRRs, IORRs, clock control MSR, Top of Memory, and other registers.

11.5 Machine Check Architecture (MCA)

The processor supports a machine check architecture that allows reporting and handling of system errors through a consistent interface.

- The global MCA Status register must be cleared (all machine check features disabled).
- MC0_CTL must be set to all 1s because some do not set these bits.

- In addition, the local MCA status and address registers for the following four reporting blocks must also be cleared (all error and parity bits disabled):
 - BU—Bus Unit
 - IC—Instruction Cache Unit.
 - DC—Data Cache Unit
 - LS—Load Store Unit
 - NB—Northbridge Unit

After reset, the BIOS needs to determine if the cause of the reset was a power-on or soft reset.

- When power-on reset occurs, the BIOS must clear the MCA registers.
- Otherwise, the BIOS should check for any MCA information that may be related to the soft reset.

For more information on MCA, see Chapter 5, “Machine Check Architecture.”

11.6 Memory Map

11.6.1 I/O and Memory Type and Range Registers (IORRs, MTRRs)

The memory-type and range registers control the access and cacheability of memory regions in the processor.

- Follow the processor MTRR and IORR programming sequence that is described in this document.
- To initialize MTRRs in BIOS, set the default memory cache type for all addresses to uncacheable, then use a variable range MTRR to set all physical memory as cacheable (writeback), and finally use the fixed-range MTRRs to handle the special cases in the 640-Kbyte–1-Mbyte region. MTRRs should be modified while cache is disabled. Modifying MTRRs while cache is enabled will result in undefined behavior.
- The GART driver (miniport) should program the AGP aperture.
- The BIOS does not map the cacheability of the video frame buffer and AGP aperture space; the operating system, video, and AGP drivers perform this work.

11.6.2 Memory Map Registers (MMRs)

The processor contains several memory map registers to support the appropriate software view of memory.

- Program the correct values in the MSRs, such as Top of Memory (TOP_MEM).

11.7 Cache Testing and Programming

- BIOS must correctly maintain the tag parity and data ECC enable bits.

11.8 Memory System Configuration Registers

Node configuration space contains registers that define RAM, PCI memory, and x86 I/O address paths.

- Address mapping registers are contained in function 1 of each node.
- Cold boot and reset sends code fetch and other addresses to the compatibility link of Node0. At cold boot and reset, these mapping registers are disabled.
- Once enabled, these registers distribute addresses according to register mappings, which include node and link routing. See Chapter 8, “HyperTransport™ Technology Configuration and Enumeration.”
- Thereafter, carefully set registers to reflect current needs for code fetch and memory access, i.e., do not map BIOS E0000h and F0000h space to DRAM until BIOS exits execution from the ROM chip. Otherwise, the system will hang. Likewise, do not map memory-mapped I/O space above 1 Mbyte until BIOS exits execution from the ROM chip, or else the system will hang.
- Memory-mapped I/O (MMIO) and PCI I/O mappings must include address space needed to move option ROM code to RAM, as well as the required run-time resources. This could require setting and resetting the MMIO mappings during enumeration and device initialization. Configuration space access of a device with or without an option ROM is governed by the HyperTransport technology configuration mapping.
- Multihost bus multiprocessor systems require that MMIO mappings direct relevant addresses to the buses of devices through the node/link path to the bus.
- Application processors and the bootstrap processor in multiprocessor systems must be mapped separately with paths to target address space.

11.9 SMM Issues

The processor includes support for system management mode (SMM). The functionality of the AMD Athlon™ 64 processor or AMD Opteron™ processor SMM is a superset of the Pentium® processor functionality.

- The AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors implement the SMM remapping and control registers as model-specific registers on the CPU.
- Implement the SMM state-save area in a manner compatible with the description of SMM found in Chapter 6, “System Management Mode (SMM).”

Program the model-specific registers to set the SMM memory base, local address, destination address, memory type, size and control, etc. See Chapter 6, “System Management Mode (SMM).”

12 Processor Configuration Registers

This chapter includes descriptions of two types of model-specific registers, as follows:

- General model-specific registers (see page 261)
- AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ model-specific registers (see page 284)

12.1 General Model-Specific Registers

Table 53 is a listing of the general model-specific registers supported by the processor, presented in ascending hexadecimal address order. Register descriptions follow the table, organized according to the following functions:

- System software (see page 263)
- Memory typing (see page 265)
- APIC (see page 282)
- Machine check architecture (see page 143)
- Software debug (see page 283)
- Performance monitoring (see page 284)

Table 53. General MSRs

Address	Register Name	Description
0010h	TSC	page 284
001Bh	APIC_BASE	page 282
002Ah	EBL_CR_POWERON	page 282
00FEh	MTRRcap	page 265
0174h	SYSENTER_CS	page 263
0175h	SYSENTER_ESP	page 264
0176h	SYSENTER_EIP	page 264
0179h	MCG_CAP	page 144
017Ah	MCG_STATUS	page 145
017Bh	MCG_CTL	page 146

Table 53. General MSRs (Continued)

Address	Register Name	Description
01D9h	DebugCtl	page 283
01DBh	LastBranchFromIP	page 283
01DCh	LastBranchToIP	page 283
01DDh	LastExceptionFromIP	page 283
01DEh	LastExceptionToIP	page 283
0200–020Eh Even	MTRRphysBase[7:0]	page 266
0201–020Fh Odd	MTRRphysMask[7:0]	page 266
0250h	MTRRfix64K_00000	page 267
0258h	MTRRfix16K_80000	page 268
0259h	MTRRfix16K_A0000	page 269
0268h	MTRRfix4K_C0000	page 271
0269h	MTRRfix4K_C8000	page 272
026Ah	MTRRfix4K_D0000	page 273
026Bh	MTRRfix4K_D8000	page 274
026Ch	MTRRfix4K_E0000	page 275
026Dh	MTRRfix4K_E8000	page 276
026Eh	MTRRfix4K_F0000	page 278
026Fh	MTRRfix4K_F8000	page 279
0277h	PAT	page 280
02FFh	MTRRdefType	page 281
0400h	MC0_CTL	page 150
0401h	MC0_STATUS	page 151
0402h	MC0_ADDR	page 153
0403h,	MC0_MISC	not supported
0404h	MC1_CTL	page 154
0405h	MC1_STATUS	page 155
0406h	MC1_ADDR	page 155
0407h	MC1_MISC	not supported

Table 53. General MSRs (Continued)

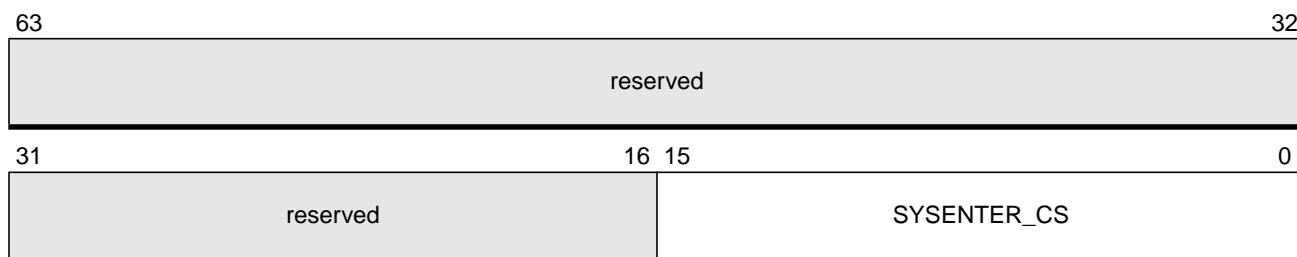
Address	Register Name	Description
0408h	MC2_CTL	page 154
0409h	MC2_STATUS	page 158
040Ah	MC2_ADDR	page 158
040Bh	MC2_MISC	not supported
040Ch	MC3_CTL	page 159
040Dh	MC3_STATUS	page 160
040Eh	MC3_ADDR	page 160
040Fh	MC3_MISC	not supported
0410h	MC4_CTL	page 160
0411h	MC4_STATUS	page 160
0412h	MC4_ADDR	page 160
0413h	MC4_MISC	not supported

12.1.1 System Software Registers

12.1.1.1 SYSENTER_CS Register

This register contains the code segment selector used by the SYSENTER and SYSEXIT instructions. See the SYSENTER and SYSEXIT section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

SYSENTER_CS Register

MSR 0174h


Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–32	reserved	RAZ	R	0
31–16	reserved	SBZ	R/W	0
15–0	SYSENTER_CS	SYSENTER/SYSEXIT code segment selector	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

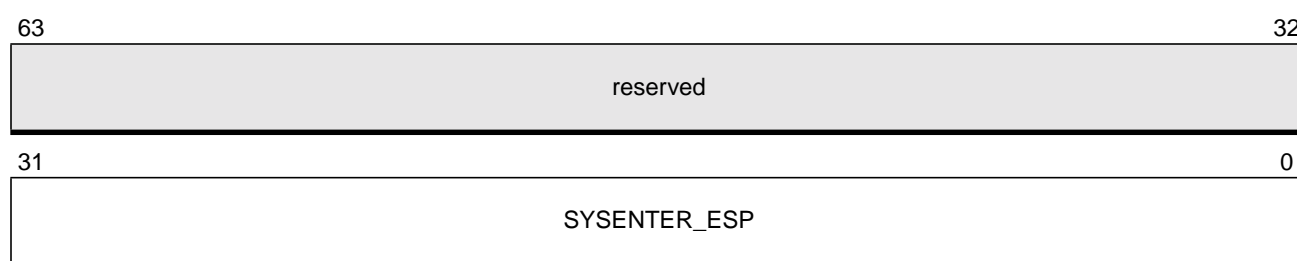
SYSENTER/SYSEXIT Code Segment Selector (SYSENTER_CS)—Bits 15–0.

12.1.1.2 SYSENTER_ESP Register

This register contains the stack pointer used by the SYSENTER and SYSEXIT instructions. See the SYSENTER and SYSEXIT section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

SYSENTER_ESP Register

MSR 0175h



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–32	reserved	RAZ	R	0
31–0	SYSENTER_ESP	SYSENTER/SYSEXIT stack pointer	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

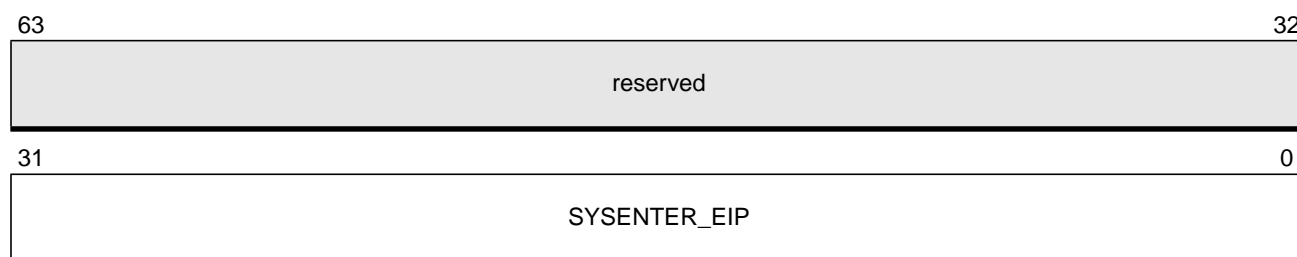
SYSENTER/SYSEXIT Stack Pointer (SYSENTER_ESP)—Bits 31–0.

12.1.1.3 SYSENTER_EIP Register

This register contains the instruction pointer used by the SYSENTER and SYSEXIT instructions. See the SYSENTER and SYSEXIT section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

SYSENTER_EIP Register

MSR 0176h



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–32	reserved	RAZ	R	0
31–0	SYSENTER_EIP	SYSENTER/SYSEXIT instruction pointer	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

SYSENTER/SYSEXIT Instruction Pointer (SYSENTER_EIP)—Bits 31–0.

12.1.2 Memory Typing Registers

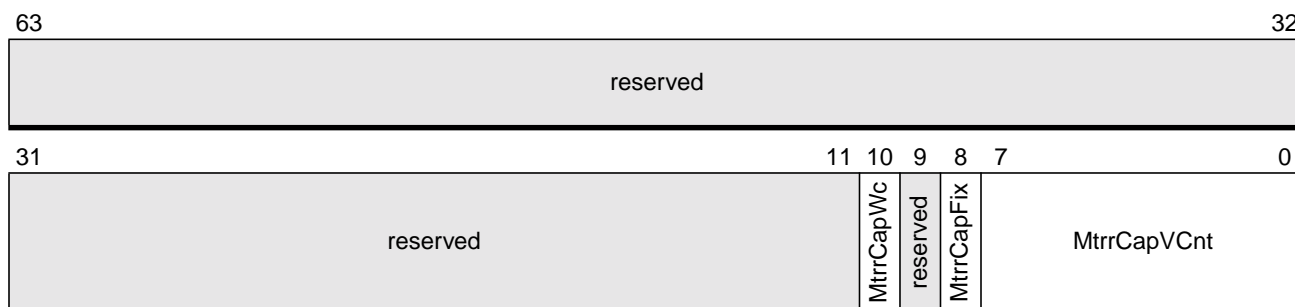
12.1.2.1 MTRRcap Register

This is a read-only register that returns information about the processors MTRR capabilities. See the “Using MTRRs” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

The MTRRcap register is a read-only status register. Attempting to modify this register will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRcap Register

MSR 00FEh



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W
63–11	reserved	RAZ	R
10	MtrrCapWc	Write-combining memory type	R
9	reserved	RAZ	R
8	MtrrCapFix	Fixed range register	R
7–0	MtrrCapVCnt	Variable range registers count	R

Field Descriptions

Variable Range Registers Count (MtrrCapVCnt)—Bits 7–0. Indicates number of variable range registers.

Fixed Range Registers (MtrrCapFix)—Bit 8. Indicates fixed range register capability.

Write-Combining Memory Type (MtrrCapWc)—Bit 10. Indicates write-combining memory type capability.

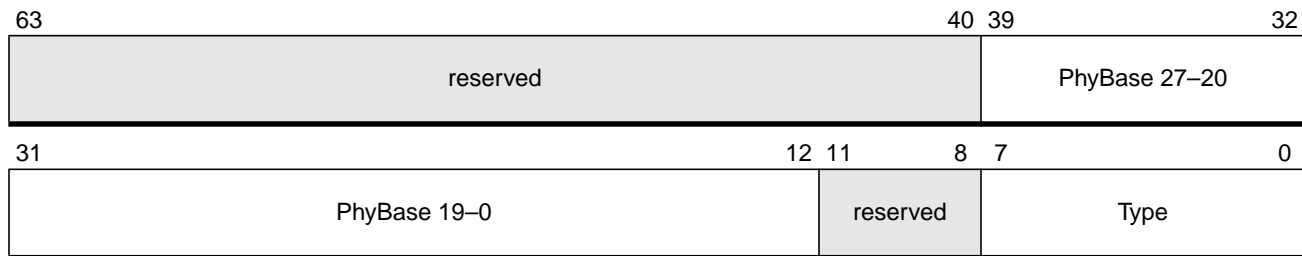
12.1.2.2 MTRRphysBase*i* Registers

These registers define the base address and memory type for each of the variable MTRRs. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Attempting to modify reserved bits in MTRRphysBase*i* will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRphysBase0–7 Registers

**MSRs 0200h, 0202h, 0204h, 0206h,
0208h, 020Ah, 020Ch, 020Eh**



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–40	reserved	MBZ		0
39–12	PhyBase	Base address	R/W	U
11–8	reserved	MBZ		0
7–0	Type	Memory type	R/W	U

Field Descriptions

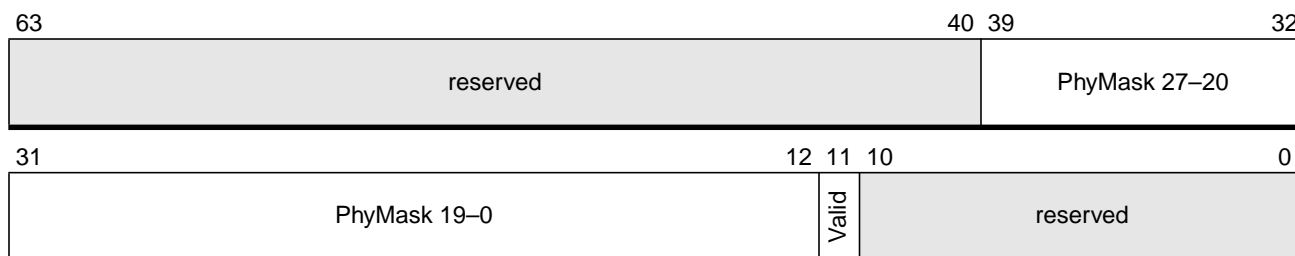
Memory Type (Type)—Bits 7–0. Specifies memory type for this memory range.

Base Address (PhysBase)—Bits 39–12. Specifies base address for this memory range

12.1.2.3 MTRRphysMask*i* Registers

These registers define the address mask and valid bit for each of the variable MTRRs. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Attempting to modify reserved bits in MTRRphysMask*i* will result in a #GP(0).

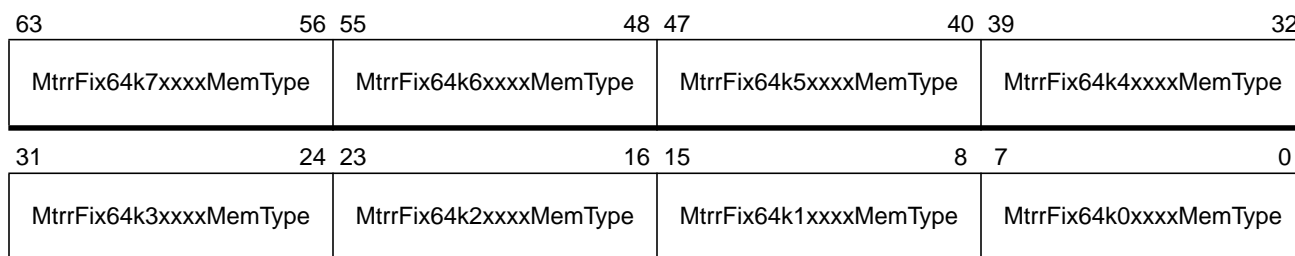
MTRRphysMask0–7 Registers**MSRs 0201h, 0203h, 0205, 0207h,
0209h, 020Bh, 020Dh, 020Fh**

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–40	reserved	MBZ		0
39–12	PhysMask	Address mask	R/W	U
11	Valid	MTRR is valid	R/W	0
10–0	reserved	MBZ		0

Field Descriptions**MTRR is Valid (Valid)**—Bit 11. Indicated MTRR is valid.**Address Mask (PhysMask)**—Bits 39–12. Specifies the address mask for this memory range.**12.1.2.4 MTRRfix64K_00000 Register**

This register controls the memory types for the first 512 Kbyte of physical memory. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix64K_00000 Register**MSR 0250h**

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix64k7xxxxMemType	Memory type address 70000–7FFFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix64k6xxxxMemType	Memory type address 60000–6FFFFh	R/W	U
47–40	MtrrFix64k5xxxxMemType	Memory type address 50000–5FFFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
39–32	MtrrFix64k4xxxxMemType	Memory type address 40000–4FFFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix64k3xxxxMemType	Memory type address 30000–3FFFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix64k2xxxxMemType	Memory type address 20000–2FFFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix64k1xxxxMemType	Memory type address 10000–1FFFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix64k0xxxxMemType	Memory type address 00000–0FFFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address 00000–0FFFFh (MtrrFix64k0xxxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address 00000–0FFFFh.

Memory Type Address 10000–1FFFFh (MtrrFix64k1xxxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address 10000–1FFFFh.

Memory Type Address 20000–2FFFFh (MtrrFix64k2xxxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address 20000–2FFFFh.

Memory Type Address 30000–3FFFFh (MtrrFix64k3xxxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address 30000–3FFFFh.

Memory Type Address 40000–4FFFFh (MtrrFix64k4xxxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address 40000–4FFFFh.

Memory Type Address 50000–5FFFFh (MtrrFix64k5xxxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address 50000–5FFFFh.

Memory Type Address 60000–6FFFFh (MtrrFix64k6xxxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address 60000–6FFFFh.

Memory Type Address 70000–7FFFFh (MtrrFix64k7xxxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address 70000–7FFFFh.

12.1.2.5 MTRRfix16K_80000 Register

This register controls the memory types for physical memory addresses 80000–9FFFFh. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix16K_80000 Register

MSR 0258h

63	56	55	48	47	40	39	32
MtrrFix16k9CxxxMemType	MtrrFix16k98xxxMemType	MtrrFix16k94xxxMemType	MtrrFix16k90xxxMemType				

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
MtrrFix16k8CxxxMemType	MtrrFix16k88xxxMemType	MtrrFix16k84xxxMemType	MtrrFix16k80xxxMemType				

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix16k9CxxxMemType	Memory type address 9C000–9FFFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix16k98xxxMemType	Memory type address 98000–9BFFFh	R/W	U
47–40	MtrrFix16k94xxxMemType	Memory type address 94000–97FFFh	R/W	U
39–32	MtrrFix16k90xxxMemType	Memory type address 90000–93FFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix16k8CxxxMemType	Memory type address 8C000–8FFFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix16k88xxxMemType	Memory type address 88000–8BFFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix16k84xxxMemType	Memory type address 84000–87FFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix16k80xxxMemType	Memory type address 80000–83FFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address 80000–83FFFh (MtrrFix16k80xxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address 80000–83FFFh.

Memory Type Address 84000–87FFFh (MtrrFix16k84xxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address 84000–87FFFh.

Memory Type Address 88000–8BFFFh (MtrrFix16k88xxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address 88000–8BFFFh.

Memory Type Address 8C000–8FFFFh (MtrrFix16k8CxxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address 8C000–8FFFFh.

Memory Type Address 90000–93FFFh (MtrrFix16k90xxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address 90000–93FFFh.

Memory Type Address 94000–97FFFh (MtrrFix16k94xxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address 94000–97FFFh.

Memory Type Address 98000–9BFFFh (MtrrFix16k98xxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address 98000–9BFFFh.

Memory Type Address 9C000–9FFFFh (MtrrFix16k9CxxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address 9C000–9FFFFh.

12.1.2.6 MTRRfix16K_A0000 Register

This register controls the memory types for physical memory addresses A0000–BFFFFh. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix16K_A0000 Register

MSR 0259h

63	56	55	48	47	40	39	32
MtrrFix16kBCxxxMemType		MtrrFix16kB8xxxMemType		MtrrFix16kB4xxxMemType		MtrrFix16kB0xxxMemType	
31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
MtrrFix16kACxxxMemType		MtrrFix16kA8xxxMemType		MtrrFix16kA4xxxMemType		MtrrFix16kA0xxxMemType	

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix16kBCxxxMemType	Memory type address BC000–BFFFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix16kB8xxxMemType	Memory type address B8000–BBFFFh	R/W	U
47–40	MtrrFix16kB4xxxMemType	Memory type address B4000–B7FFFh	R/W	U
39–32	MtrrFix16kB0xxxMemType	Memory type address B0000–B3FFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix16kACxxxMemType	Memory type address AC000–AFFFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix16kA8xxxMemType	Memory type address A8000–ABFFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix16kA4xxxMemType	Memory type address A4000–A7FFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix16kA0xxxMemType	Memory type address A0000–A3FFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address A0000–A3FFFh (MtrrFix16kA0xxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address A0000–A3FFFh.

Memory Type Address A4000–A7FFFh (MtrrFix16kA4xxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address A4000–A7FFFh.

Memory Type Address A8000–ABFFFh (MtrrFix16kA8xxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address A8000–ABFFFh.

Memory Type Address AC000–AFFFFh (MtrrFix16kACxxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address AC000–AFFFFh.

Memory Type Address B0000–B3FFFh (MtrrFix16kB0xxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address B0000–B3FFFh.

Memory Type Address B4000–B7FFFh (MtrrFix16kB4xxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address B4000–B7FFFh.

Memory Type Address B8000–BBFFFh (MtrrFix16kB8xxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address B8000–BBFFFh.

Memory Type Address BC000–BFFFFh (MtrrFix16kBCxxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address BC000–BFFFFh.

12.1.2.7 MTRRfix4K_C0000 Register

This register controls the memory types for physical memory addresses C0000–C7FFFh. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix4K_C0000 Register

MSR 0268h

63	56 55	48 47	40 39	32
MtrrFix4kC7xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kC6xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kC5xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kC4xxxMemType	
31	24 23	16 15	8 7	0
MtrrFix4kC3xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kC2xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kC1xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kC0xxxMemType	

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix4kC7xxxMemType	Memory type address C7000–C7FFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix4kC6xxxMemType	Memory type address C6000–C6FFFh	R/W	U
47–40	MtrrFix4kC5xxxMemType	Memory type address C5000–C5FFFh	R/W	U
39–32	MtrrFix4kC4xxxMemType	Memory type address C4000–C4FFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix4kC3xxxMemType	Memory type address C3000–C3FFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix4kC2xxxMemType	Memory type address C2000–C2FFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix4kC1xxxMemType	Memory type address C1000–C1FFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix4kC0xxxMemType	Memory type address C0000–C0FFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address C0000–C0FFFh (MtrrFix4kC0xxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address C0000–C0FFFh.

Memory Type Address C1000–C1FFFh (MtrrFix4kC1xxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address C1000–C1FFFh.

Memory Type Address C2000–C2FFFh (MtrrFix4kC2xxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address C2000–C2FFFh.

Memory Type Address C3000–C3FFFh (MtrrFix4kC3xxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address C3000–C3FFFh.

Memory Type Address C4000–C4FFFh (MtrrFix4kC4xxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address C4000–C4FFFh.

Memory Type Address C5000–C5FFFh (MtrrFix4kC5xxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address C5000–C5FFFh.

Memory Type Address C6000–C6FFFh (MtrrFix4kC6xxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address C6000–C6FFFh.

Memory Type Address C7000–C7FFFh (MtrrFix4kC7xxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address C7000–C7FFFh.

12.1.2.8 MTRRfix4K_C8000 Register

This register controls the memory types for physical memory addresses C8000–CFFFFh. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix4K_C8000 Register

MSR 0269h

63	56	55	48	47	40	39	32
MtrrFix4kCFxxxMemType		MtrrFix4kCExxxMemType		MtrrFix4kCDxxxMemType		MtrrFix4kCCxxxMemType	
31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
MtrrFix4kCBxxxMemType		MtrrFix4kCAxxxMemType		MtrrFix4kC9xxxMemType		MtrrFix4kC8xxxMemType	

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix4kCFxxxMemType	Memory type for address CF000–CFFFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix4kCExxxMemType	Memory type for address CE000–CEFFFh	R/W	U
47–40	MtrrFix4kCDxxxMemType	Memory type for address CD000–CDFFFh	R/W	U
39–32	MtrrFix4kCCxxxMemType	Memory type for address CC000–CCFFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix4kCBxxxMemType	Memory type for address CB000–CBFFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix4kCAxxxMemType	Memory type for address CA000–CAFFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix4kC9xxxMemType	Memory type for address C9000–C9FFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix4kC8xxxMemType	Memory type for address C8000–C8FFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address C8000–C8FFFh (MtrrFix4kC8xxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address C8000–C8FFFh.

Memory Type Address C9000–C9FFFh (MtrrFix4kC9xxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address C9000–C9FFFh.

Memory Type Address CA000–CAFFFh (MtrrFix4kCAxxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address CA000–CAFFFh.

Memory Type Address CB000–CBFFFh (MtrrFix4kCBxxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address CB000–CBFFFh.

Memory Type Address CC000–CCFFFh (MtrrFix4kCCxxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address CC000–CCFFFh.

Memory Type Address CD000–CDFFFh (MtrrFix4kCDxxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address CD000–CDFFFh.

Memory Type Address CE000–CEFFFh (MtrrFix4kCExxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address CE000–CEFFFh.

Memory Type Address CF000–CFFFh (MtrrFix4kCFxxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address CF000–CFFFh.

12.1.2.9 MTRRfix4K_D0000 Register

This register controls the memory types for physical memory addresses D0000–D7FFF. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix4K_D0000 Register

MSR 026Ah

63	56	55	48	47	40	39	32
MtrrFix4kD7xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kD6xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kD5xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kD4xxxMemType				
31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
MtrrFix4kD3xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kD2xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kD1xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kD0xxxMemType				

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix4kD7xxxMemType	Memory type address D7000–D7FFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix4kD6xxxMemType	Memory type address D6000–D6FFFh	R/W	U
47–40	MtrrFix4kD5xxxMemType	Memory type address D5000–D5FFFh	R/W	U
39–32	MtrrFix4kD4xxxMemType	Memory type address D4000–D4FFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix4kD3xxxMemType	Memory type address D3000–D3FFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix4kD2xxxMemType	Memory type address D2000–D2FFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix4kD1xxxMemType	Memory type address D1000–D1FFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix4kD0xxxMemType	Memory type address D0000–D0FFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address D0000–D0FFFh (MtrrFix4kD0xxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address D0000–D0FFFh.

Memory Type Address D1000–D1FFFh (MtrrFix4kD1xxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address D1000–D1FFFh.

Memory Type Address D2000–D2FFFh (MtrrFix4kD2xxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address D2000–D2FFFh.

Memory Type Address D3000–D3FFFh (MtrrFix4kD3xxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address D3000–D3FFFh.

Memory Type Address D4000–D4FFFh (MtrrFix4kD4xxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address D4000–D4FFFh.

Memory Type Address D5000–D5FFFh (MtrrFix4kD5xxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address D5000–D5FFFh.

Memory Type Address D6000–D6FFFh (MtrrFix4kD6xxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address D6000–D6FFFh.

Memory Type Address D7000–D7FFFh (MtrrFix4kD7xxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address D7000–D7FFFh.

12.1.2.10 MTRRfix4K_D8000 Register

This register controls the memory types for physical memory addresses D8000–DFFFFh. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix4K_D8000 Register

MSR 026Bh

63	56	55	48	47	40	39	32
MtrrFix4kDFxxxMemType	MtrrFix4kDExxxMemType	MtrrFix4kDDxxxMemType	MtrrFix4kDCxxxMemType				
31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
MtrrFix4kDBxxxMemType	MtrrFix4kDAxxxMemType	MtrrFix4kD9xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kD8xxxMemType				

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix4kDFxxxMemType	Memory type address DF000–DFFFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix4kDExxxMemType	Memory type address DE000–DEFFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
47–40	MtrrFix4kDDxxxMemType	Memory type address DD000–DDFFFh	R/W	U
39–32	MtrrFix4kDCxxxMemType	Memory type address DC000–DCFFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix4kDBxxxMemType	Memory type address DB000–DBFFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix4kDAxxxMemType	Memory type address DA000–DAFFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix4kD9xxxMemType	Memory type address D9000–D9FFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix4kD8xxxMemType	Memory type address D8000–D8FFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address D8000–D8FFFh (MtrrFix4kD8xxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address D8000–D8FFFh.

Memory Type Address D9000–D9FFFh (MtrrFix4kD9xxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address D9000–D9FFFh.

Memory Type Address DA000–DAFFFh (MtrrFix4kDAxxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address DA000–DAFFFh.

Memory Type Address DB000–DBFFFh (MtrrFix4kDBxxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address DB000–DBFFFh.

Memory Type Address DC000–DCFFFh (MtrrFix4kDCxxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address DC000–DCFFFh.

Memory Type Address DD000–DDFFFh (MtrrFix4kDDxxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address DD000–DDFFFh.

Memory Type Address DE000–DEFFFh (MtrrFix4kDExxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address DE000–DEFFFh.

Memory Type Address DF000–DFFFFh (MtrrFix4kDFxxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address DF000–DFFFFh.

12.1.2.11 MTRRfix4K_E0000 Register

This register controls the memory types for physical memory addresses E0000–E7FFFh. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix4K_E0000 Register

MSR 026Ch

63	56 55	48 47	40 39	32
MtrrFix4kE7xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kE6xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kE5xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kE4xxxMemType	

31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0	
MtrrFix4kE3xxxMemType				MtrrFix4kE2xxxMemType		MtrrFix4kE1xxxMemType		MtrrFix4kE0xxxMemType

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix4kE7xxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr E7000–E7FFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix4kE6xxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr E6000–E6FFFh	R/W	U
47–40	MtrrFix4kE5xxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr E5000–E5FFFh	R/W	U
39–32	MtrrFix4kE4xxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr E4000–E4FFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix4kE3xxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr E3000–E3FFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix4kE2xxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr E2000–E2FFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix4kE1xxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr E1000–E1FFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix4kE0xxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr E0000–E0FFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address E0000–E0FFFh (MtrrFix4kE0xxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address E0000–E0FFFh.

Memory Type Address E1000–E1FFFh (MtrrFix4kE1xxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address E1000–E1FFFh.

Memory Type Address E2000–E2FFFh (MtrrFix4kE2xxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address E2000–E2FFFh.

Memory Type Address E3000–E3FFFh (MtrrFix4kE3xxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address E3000–E3FFFh.

Memory Type Address E4000–E4FFFh (MtrrFix4kE4xxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address E4000–E4FFFh.

Memory Type Address E5000–E5FFFh (MtrrFix4kE5xxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address E5000–E5FFFh.

Memory Type Address E6000–E6FFFh (MtrrFix4kE6xxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address E6000–E6FFFh.

Memory Type Address E7000–E7FFFh (MtrrFix4kE7xxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address E7000–E7FFFh.

12.1.2.12 MTRRfix4K_E8000 Register

This register controls the memory types for physical memory addresses E8000–EFFFFh. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix4K_E8000 Register
MSR 026Dh

63	56	55	48	47	40	39	32
MtrrFix4kEFxxxMemType	MtrrFix4kEExxxMemType	MtrrFix4kEDxxxMemType	MtrrFix4kECxxxMemType				
31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
MtrrFix4kEBxxxMemType	MtrrFix4kEAxxxMemType	MtrrFix4kE9xxxMemType	MtrrFix4kE8xxxMemType				

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix4kEFxxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr EF000–EFFFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix4kEExxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr EE000–EFFFFh	R/W	U
47–40	MtrrFix4kEDxxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr ED000–EDFFFh	R/W	U
39–32	MtrrFix4kECxxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr EC000–ECFFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix4kEBxxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr EB000–EBFFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix4kEAxxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr EA000–EAFFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix4kE9xxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr E9000–E9FFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix4kE8xxxMemType	Memory type for physical addr E8000–E8FFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address E8000–E8FFFh (MtrrFix4kE8xxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address E8000–E8FFFh.

Memory Type Address E9000–E9FFFh (MtrrFix4kE9xxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address E9000–E9FFFh.

Memory Type Address EA000–EAFFFh (MtrrFix4kEAxxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address EA000–EAFFFh.

Memory Type Address EB000–EBFFFh (MtrrFix4kEBxxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address EB000–EBFFFh.

Memory Type Address EC000–ECFFFh (MtrrFix4kECxxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address EC000–ECFFFh.

Memory Type Address ED000–EDFFFh (MtrrFix4kEDxxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address ED000–EDFFFh.

Memory Type Address EE000–EFFFFh (MtrrFix4kEExxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address EE000–EFFFFh.

Memory Type Address EF000–EFFFFh (MtrrFix4kEFxxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address EF000–EFFFFh.

12.1.2.13 MTRRfix4K_F0000 Register

This register controls the memory types for physical memory addresses F0000–F7FFFh. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix4K_F0000 Register

MSR 026Eh

63	56	55	48	47	40	39	32
MtrrFix4kF7xxxMemType				MtrrFix4kF6xxxMemType			
MtrrFix4kF5xxxMemType				MtrrFix4kF4xxxMemType			
31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
MtrrFix4kF3xxxMemType				MtrrFix4kF2xxxMemType			
MtrrFix4kF1xxxMemType				MtrrFix4kF0xxxMemType			

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix4kF7xxxMemType	Memory type address F7000–F7FFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix4kF6xxxMemType	Memory type address F6000–F6FFFh	R/W	U
47–40	MtrrFix4kF5xxxMemType	Memory type address F5000–F5FFFh	R/W	U
39–32	MtrrFix4kF4xxxMemType	Memory type address F4000–F4FFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix4kF3xxxMemType	Memory type address F3000–F3FFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix4kF2xxxMemType	Memory type address F2000–F2FFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix4kF1xxxMemType	Memory type address F1000–F1FFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix4kF0xxxMemType	Memory type address F0000–F0FFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address F0000–F0FFFh (MtrrFix4kF0xxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address F0000–F0FFFh.

Memory Type Address F1000–F1FFFh (MtrrFix4kF1xxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address F1000–F1FFFh.

Memory Type Address F2000–F2FFFh (MtrrFix4kF2xxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address F2000–F2FFFh.

Memory Type Address F3000–F3FFFh (MtrrFix4kF3xxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address F3000–F3FFFh.

Memory Type Address F4000–F4FFFh (MtrrFix4kF4xxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address F4000–F4FFFh.

Memory Type Address F5000–F5FFFh (MtrrFix4kF5xxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address F5000–F5FFFh.

Memory Type Address F6000–F6FFFh (MtrrFix4kF6xxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address F6000–F6FFFh.

Memory Type Address F7000–F7FFFh (MtrrFix4kF7xxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address F7000–F7FFFh.

12.1.2.14 MTRRfix4K_F8000 Register

This register controls the memory types for physical memory addresses F8000–FFFFFFh. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRfix4K_F8000 Register

MSR 026Fh

63	56	55	48	47	40	39	32
MtrrFix4kFFxxxMemType		MtrrFix4kFExxxMemType		MtrrFix4kFDxxxMemType		MtrrFix4kFCxxxMemType	
31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
MtrrFix4kFBxxxMemType		MtrrFix4kFAxxxMemType		MtrrFix4kF9xxxMemType		MtrrFix4kF8xxxMemType	

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–56	MtrrFix4kFFxxxMemType	Memory type address FF000–FFFFFFh	R/W	U
55–48	MtrrFix4kFExxxMemType	Memory type address FE000–FEFFFh	R/W	U
47–40	MtrrFix4kFDxxxMemType	Memory type address FD000–FDFFFh	R/W	U
39–32	MtrrFix4kFCxxxMemType	Memory type address FC000–FCFFFh	R/W	U
31–24	MtrrFix4kFBxxxMemType	Memory type address FB000–FBFFFh	R/W	U
23–16	MtrrFix4kFAxxxMemType	Memory type address FA000–FAFFFh	R/W	U
15–8	MtrrFix4kF9xxxMemType	Memory type address F9000–F9FFFh	R/W	U
7–0	MtrrFix4kF8xxxMemType	Memory type address F8000–F8FFFh	R/W	U

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Memory Type Address F8000–F8FFFh (MtrrFix4kF8xxxMemType)—Bits 7–0. Memory type for physical address F8000–F8FFFh.

Memory Type Address F9000–F9FFFh (MtrrFix4kF9xxxMemType)—Bits 15–8. Memory type for physical address F9000–F9FFFh.

Memory Type Address FA000–FAFFFh (MtrrFix4kFAxxxMemType)—Bits 23–16. Memory type for physical address FA000–FAFFFh.

Memory Type Address FB000–FBFFFh (MtrrFix4kFBxxxMemType)—Bits 31–24. Memory type for physical address FB000–FBFFFh.

Memory Type Address FC000–FCFFFh (MtrrFix4kFCxxxMemType)—Bits 39–32. Memory type for physical address FC000–FCFFFh.

Memory Type Address FD000–FDFFFh (MtrrFix4kFDxxxMemType)—Bits 47–40. Memory type for physical address FD000–FDFFFh.

Memory Type Address FE000–FEFFFh (MtrrFix4kFExxxMemType)—Bits 55–48. Memory type for physical address FE000–FEFFFh.

Memory Type Address FF000–FFFFFh (MtrrFix4kFFxxxMemType)—Bits 63–56. Memory type for physical address FF000–FFFFFh.

12.1.2.15 PAT Register

This register contains the eight page attribute fields used for specifying memory types for pages. See the “Page-Attribute Table Mechanism” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting any range to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0). Setting any reserved bits will result in a #GP(0).

PAT Register

MSR 0277h

63	59	58	56	55	51	50	48	47	43	42	40	39	35	34	32
reserved	PA7			reserved	PA6			reserved	PA5			reserved	PA4		
31	27	26	24	23	19	18	16	15	11	10	8	7	3	2	0
reserved	PA3			reserved	PA2			reserved	PA1			reserved	PA0		

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–59	reserved	MBZ		0
58–56	PA7	Memory type for Page Attribute index 7	R/W	0
55–51	reserved	MBZ		0
50–48	PA6	Memory type for Page Attribute index 6	R/W	7
47–43	reserved	MBZ		0
42–40	PA5	Memory type for Page Attribute index 5	R/W	4
39–35	reserved	MBZ		0
34–32	PA4	Memory type for Page Attribute index 4	R/W	6
31–27	reserved	MBZ		0

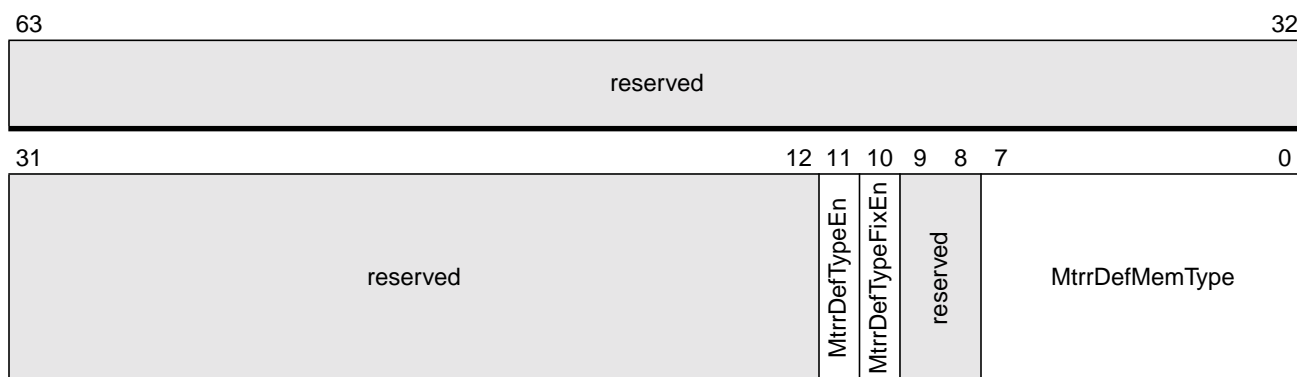
Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
26–24	PA3	Memory type for Page Attribute index 3	R/W	0
23–19	reserved	MBZ		0
18–16	PA2	Memory type for Page Attribute index 2	R/W	7
15–11	reserved	MBZ		0
10–8	PA1	Memory type for Page Attribute index 1	R/W	4
7–3	reserved	MBZ		0
2–0	PA0	Memory type for Page Attribute index 0	R/W	6

12.1.2.16 MTRRdefType Register

This register enables the MTRRs and defines the default memory type for memory not within one of the MTRR ranges. See the “Memory Type Range Registers” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Setting MtrrDefMemType to an undefined memory type will result in a #GP(0). Setting any reserved bits will result in a #GP(0).

MTRRdefType Register

MSR 02FFh


Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–12	reserved	MBZ		0
11	MtrrDefTypeEn	Enable MTRRs	R/W	0
10	MtrrDefTypeFixEn	Enable Fixed Range MTRRs	R/W	0
9–8	reserved			0
7–0	MtrrDefMemType	Default Memory Type	R/W	0

* Memory types must be set to values consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Default Memory Type (MtrrDefMemType)—Bit 7–0.

Enable Fixed Range MTRRs (MtrrDefTypeFixEn)—Bit 10.

Enable MTRRs (MtrrDefTypeEn)—Bit 11.

12.1.3 APIC Registers

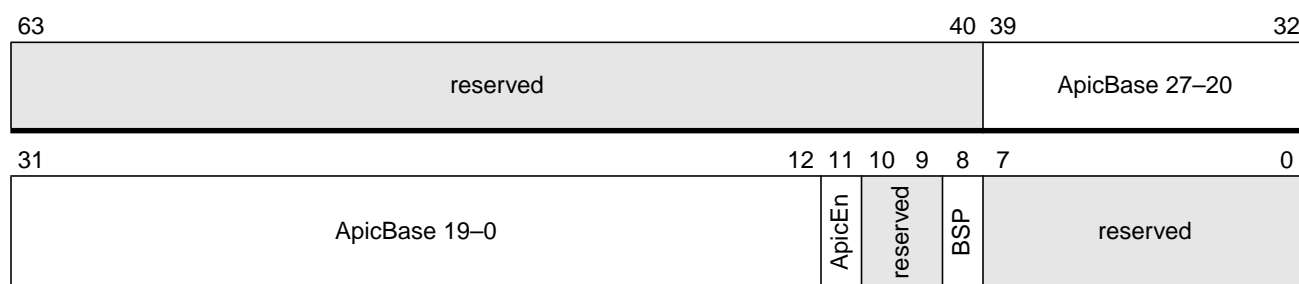
12.1.3.1 APIC_BASE Register

This register enables APIC and defines the APIC base address. It also identifies the Boot Strap Processor (BSP).

Setting any reserved bits will result in a #GP(0).

APIC_BASE Register

MSR 001Bh



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–40	reserved	MBZ		0
39–12	ApicBase	APIC Base Address	R/W	0x0FEE00
11	ApicEn	Enable APIC	R/W	0
10–9	reserved	MBZ		0
8	BSP	Boot Strap Processor	R/W	1 if uniprocessor or bsp of multiprocessor system
7–0	reserved	MBZ		0

* APIC configuration must be consistent with system hardware.

Field Descriptions

Boot Strap Processor (Bsp)—Bit 8.

Enable APIC (ApicEn)—Bit 11.

APIC Base Address (ApicBase)—Bits 39–12.

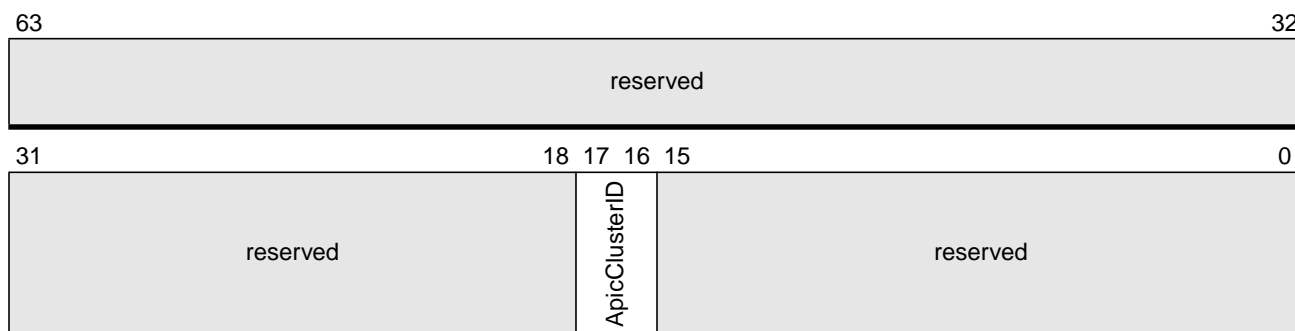
12.1.3.2 EBL_CR_POWERON Register

This read-only register contains the APIC cluster ID. See the “APIC Initialization” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

Attempting to write to this register will result in a #GP(0).

EBL_CR_POWERON Register

MSR 002Ah



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W
63–18	reserved	MBZ	
17–16	ApicClusterID	APIC Cluster ID	R
15–0	reserved	MBZ	

Field Descriptions

APIC Cluster ID (ApicClusterID)—Bits 17–16.

12.1.4 Software Debug Registers

The AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors incorporate extensive debug facilities. These include the following control, status, and control-transfer recording MSRs.

- **DebugCtl Register (MSR 01D9h)**—Provides additional debug controls over control-transfer recording and single stepping, as well as external-breakpoint reporting and trace messages.
- **LastBranchFromIP Register (MSR 01DBh)**—Loaded with the segment offset of the branch instruction.
- **LastBranchToIP Register (MSR 01DCh)**—Holds the target rIP of the last branch that occurred before an exception or interrupt.
- **LastExceptionFromIP Register (MSR 01DDh)**—Holds the source rIP of the last branch that occurred before the exception or interrupt.
- **LastExceptionToIP Register (MSR 01DEh)**—Holds the target rIP of the last branch that occurred before the exception or interrupt.

For more detailed information on the use of these MSRs, see the “Debug and Performance Resources” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual*.

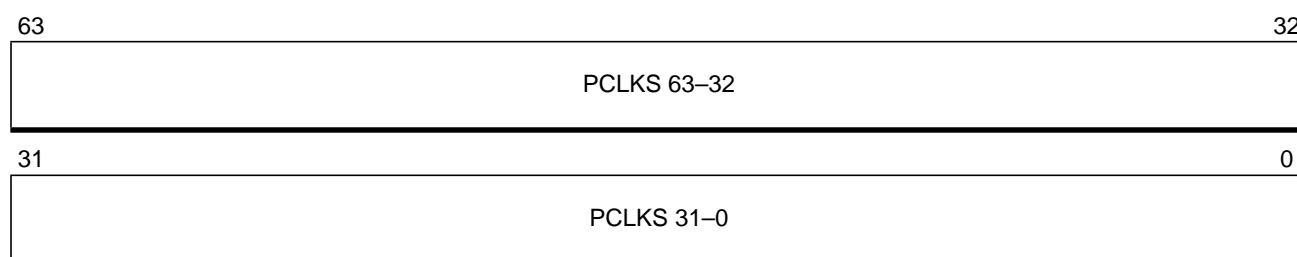
12.1.5 Performance Monitoring Registers

12.1.5.1 TSC Register

The time-stamp counter (TSC) register maintains a running count of the number of internal processor clock cycles executed after a reset. It is incremented by 1 on each internal processor clock. When the TSC overflows its 64-bit range, it wraps around to 0. See the “Time-Stamp Counter” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

TSC Register

MSR 0010h



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–0	PCLKS	Running Clock Cycle Count	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Processor Clock Cycles (PCLKS)—Bits 63–0. Running count of number of internal processor clock cycles.

12.2 AMD Athlon™ 64 processor and AMD Opteron™ Processor Model-Specific Registers

Table 54 is a listing of the model-specific registers supported by the AMD Athlon™ 64 processor and AMD Opteron™ processor, presented in ascending hexadecimal address order. Register descriptions follow the table, organized according to the following functions:

- Features (see page 286)
- Identification (see page 291)
- Memory typing (see page 292)
- I/O range registers (see page 293)
- System call extension registers (see page 294)
- Segmentation (see page 296)

- System management (see page 165)
- Power management (see page 298)

Table 54. AMD Athlon™ 64 Processor and AMD Opteron™ Processor MSRs

Address	Register Name	Description
C000_0080h	EFER	page 286
C000_0081h	STAR	page 294
C000_0082h	LSTAR	page 295
C000_0083h	CSTAR	page 295
C000_0084h	SF_MASK	page 296
C000_0100h	FS.Base	page 296
C000_0101h	GS.Base	page 297
C000_0102h	KernelGSbase	page 297
C001_0000h–C001_0003h	PerfEvtSel <i>i</i>	page 246
C001_0004h–C001_0007h	PerfCtr <i>i</i>	page 245
C001_0010h	SYSCFG	page 286
C001_0015h	HWCR	page 288
C001_0016h, C001_0018h	IORRBase[1:0]	page 293
C001_0017h, C001_0019h	IORRMsk[1:0]	page 293
C001_001Ah	TOP_MEM	page 292
C001_001Dh	TOP_MEM2	page 292
C001_001Eh	MANID	page 291
C001_001Fh	NB_CFG	page 290
C001_0041h	FIDVID_CTL	page 298
C001_0042h	FIDVID_STATUS	page 300
C001_0050–C001_0053h	IOTRAP_ADDR <i>i</i>	page 302
C001_0054h	IOTRAP_CTL	page 303
C001_0111h	SMM_BASE	page 171
C001_0112h	SMM_ADDR	page 176
C001_0113h	SMM_MASK	page 175

12.2.1 Feature Registers

12.2.1.1 EFER Register

This register controls which extended features are enabled. See the “Extended Feature Enable Register (EFER)” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

The LMA bit is a read-only status bit. When writing EFER, the processor will signal a #GP(0) if an attempt is made to change LMA from its previous value. BIOS should leave this register alone unless it needs to use one of the features enabled by this register.

EFER Register

MSR C000_0080h



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–12	reserved	MBZ	R/W	0
11	NXE	No-Execute Page Enable	R/W	0
10	LMA	Long Mode Active	R	0
9	reserved	MBZ	R	0
8	LME	Long Mode Enable	R/W	0
7–1	reserved	RAZ	R	0
0	SYSCALL	System Call Extension Enable	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

System Call Extension Enable (SCE)—Bit 0. Enables the system call extension

Long Mode Enable (LME)—Bit 8. Enables the long mode feature

Long Mode Active (LMA)—Bit 10. Indicates the long mode feature is active

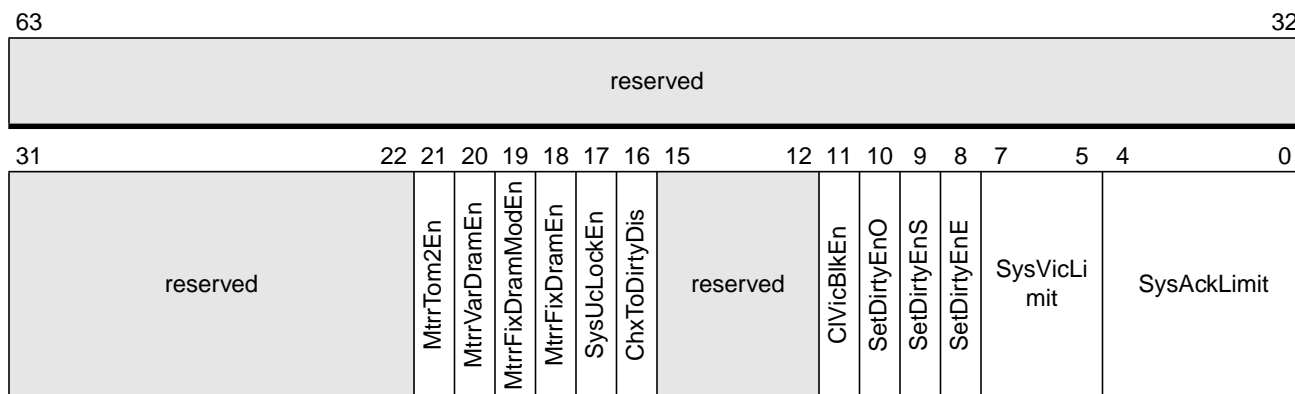
No-Execute Page Enable (NXE)—Bit 11. Enables the no-execute page feature

12.2.1.2 SYSCFG Register

This register controls the system configuration.

The MtrrFixDramModEn bit should be set to 1 during BIOS initialization of the fixed MTRRs, then cleared to 0 for operation.

SYSCFG Register

MSR C001_0010h


Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset	BIOS
63–22	reserved	RAZ	R	0	
21	MtrrTom2En	Top of Memory Address Register 2 Enable (reserved)	R/W	0	0
20	MtrrVarDramEn	Top of Memory Address Register and I/O Range Register Enable	R/W	0	1
19	MtrrFixDramModEn	RdDram and WrDram Bits Modification Enable	R/W	0	0
18	MtrrFixDramEn	Fixed RdDram and WrDram Attributes Enable	R/W	0	1
17	SysUcLockEn	System Interface Lock Command Enable	R/W	1	1
16	ChxToDirtyDis	Change to Dirty Command Disable	R/W	0	0
15–12	reserved	RAZ	R	0	
11	CIVicBlkEn	Revision B and earlier revisions: CIVicBlk System Interface Command Enable Revision C: Reserved	R/W	0	0
10	SetDirtyEnO	CleanToDirty Command for O->M State Transition Enable	R/W	1	1
9	SetDirtyEnS	SharedToDirty Command for S->M State Transition Enable	R/W	1	1
8	SetDirtyEnE	SharedToDirty Command for E->M State Transition Enable	R/W	0	0
7–5	SysVicLimit	Outstanding Victim Bus Command Limit	R/W	000b	000b
4–0	SysAckLimit	Outstanding Bus Command Limit	R/W	00001b	00001b

Field Descriptions

Outstanding Bus Command Limit (SysAckLimit)—Bit 4–0. Limits maximum number of outstanding bus commands.

Outstanding Victim Bus Command Limit (SysVicLimit)—Bit 7–5. Limits maximum number of outstanding victim bus commands.

SharedToDirty Command for E->M State Transition Enable (SetDirtyEnE)—Bit 8. Enables SharedToDirty commands for E->M state transitions.

SharedToDirty Command for S->M State Transition Enable (SetDirtyEnS)—Bit 9. Enables SharedToDirty commands for S->M state transitions.

CleanToDirty Command for O->M State Transition Enable (SetDirtyEnO)—Bit 10. Enables CleanToDirty commands for O->M state transitions.

CIVicBlk System Interface Command Enable (CIVicBlkEn)—Bit 11. Enables CIVicBlk system interface command.

Change to Dirty Command Disable (ChxToDirtyDis)—Bit 16. Disables change to dirty commands, evicts line from DC instead.

System Interface Lock Command Enable (SysUcLockEn)—Bit 17. Enables lock commands on system interface.

Fixed RdDram and WrDram Attributes Enable (MtrrFixDramEn)—Bit 18. Enables fixed MTRR RdDram and WrDram attributes.

RdDram and WrDram Bits Modification Enable (MtrrFixDramModEn)—Bit 19. Enables modification of RdDram and WrDram bits in fixed MTRRS.

Top of Memory Address Register and I/O Range Register Enable (MtrrVarDramEn)—Bit 20. Enables use of top of memory address register and the I/O range registers.

Top of Memory Address Register 2 Enable (MtrrTom2En)—Bit 21. Enables use of top of memory address register 2 (reserved).

12.2.1.3 HWCR Register

This register controls the hardware configuration.

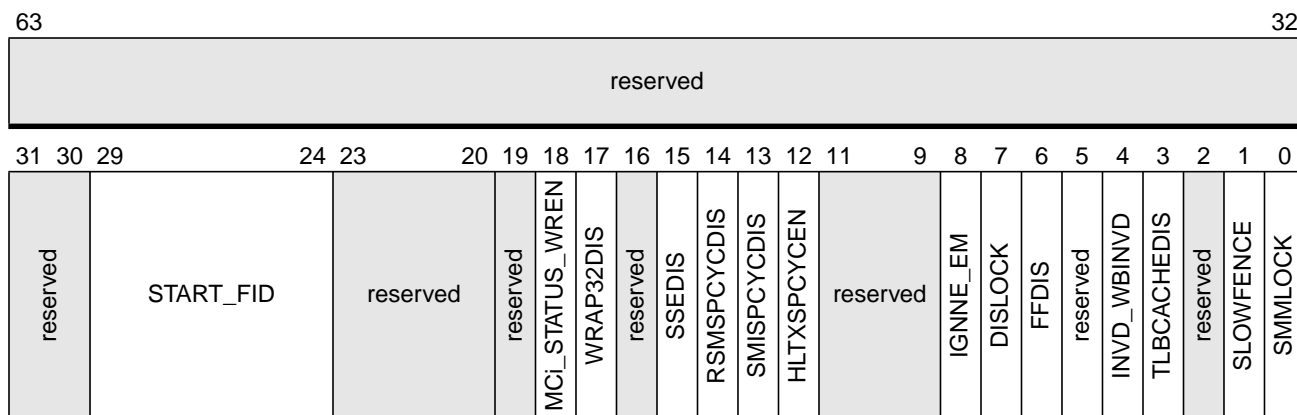
Operating systems that maintain page tables in uncacheable memory (UC memory type) must set the TLBCACHEDIS bit to insure proper operation.

BIOS and SMM handlers may use the WRAP32DIS bit to access physical memory above 4 Gbytes without switching into 64-bit mode. By setting WRAP32DIS to a 1 in conjunction with setting the expanded FS or GS base registers, BIOS can size all of physical memory from legacy mode. To do so, BIOS would write a >32 bit base to the FS or GS base register using WRMSR. Then it would address 2 Gbytes from one of those bases using normal memory reference instructions with a FS or GS override prefix. However, the INVLPG, FST, and SSE store instructions generate 32-bit addresses in legacy mode, regardless of the state of WRAP32DIS.

The MCi_STATUS_WREN bit can be used to debug Machine Check handlers. When MCi_STATUS_WREN bit is set, privileged software can write non-zero values to the Machine Check MSRs (MSRs 017Ah, 0401h, 0405h, 0409h, 040Dh, 0411h, 0402h, 0406h, 040Ah, 040Eh, 0412h) without generating exceptions, and then simulate a machine check using the "int 18" instruction.

Setting a reserved bit in these MSRs does not generate an exception when this mode is enabled. However, setting a reserved bit may result in undefined behavior.

HWCR Register

MSR C001_0015h


Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–32	reserved	RAZ	R	0
31–30	reserved	SBZ	R/W	0
29–24	START_FID	Startup FID Status	R	0
23–20	reserved	RAZ	R	0
19	reserved	SBZ	R/W	0
18	MCI_STATUS_WREN	MCI Status Write Enable	R/W	0
17	WRAP32DIS	32-bit Address Wrap Disable	R/W	0
16	reserved			0
15	SSEDIS	SSE Instructions Disable	R/W	0
14	RSMSPCYCDIS	Special Bus Cycle On RSM Disable	R/W	0
13	SMISPCYCDIS	Special Bus Cycle On SMI Disable	R/W	0
12	HLTXSPCYCEN	Enable Special Bus Cycle On Exit From HLT	R/W	0
11–9	reserved	SBZ	R/W	0
8	IGNNE_EM	IGNNE Port Emulation Enable	R/W	0
7	DISLOCK	Disable x86 LOCK prefix functionality	R/W	0
6	FFDIS	TLB Flush Filter Disable	R/W	0
5	reserved	SBZ	R/W	0
4	INVD_WBINVD	INVD to WBINVD Conversion	R/W	0
3	TLBCACHEDIS	Cacheable Memory Disable	R/W	0
2	reserved	SBZ	R/W	0
1	SLOWFENCE	Slow SFENCE Enable	R/W	0
0	SMMLOCK	SMM Code Lock	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

SMM Code Lock (SMMLOCK)—Bit 0. Locks SMM code in TSeg range by making it read-only.

Slow SFENCE Enable (SLOWFENCE)—Bit 1. Enable slow sfence.

Cachable Memory Disable (TLBCACHEDIS)—Bit 3. Disable performance improvement that assumes that the PML4, PDP, PDE and PTE entries are in cacheable memory. If page tables are uncachable, TLBCACHEDIS must be set to ensure correct functionality.

INVD to WBINVD Conversion (INVD_WBINVD)—Bit 4. Convert INVD to WBINVD.

TLB Flush Filter Disable (FFDIS)—Bit 6. Disable TLB flush filter.

Disable LOCK (DISLOCK)—Bit 7. Disable x86 LOCK prefix functionality.

IGNNE Port Emulation Enable (IGNNE_EM)—Bit 8. Enable emulation of IGNNE port.

Special Bus Cycle On HLT Exit Enable (HLTXSPCYCEN)—Bit 12. Enables special bus cycle generation on exit from HLT. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

Special Bus Cycle On SMI Disable (SMISPCYCDIS)—Bit 13. Disables special bus cycle on SMI.

Special Bus Cycle On RSM Disable (RSMSPCYCDIS)—Bit 14. Disables special bus cycle on RSM.

SSE Instructions Disable (SSEDIS)—Bit 15. Disables SSE instructions.

32-bit Address Wrap Disable (WRAP32DIS)—Bit 17. Disable 32-bit address wrapping.

MCi Status Write Enable (MCi_STATUS_WREN)—Bit 18. When set, writes by software to Machine Check Error Status MSRs, Machine Check Error Address MSRs, and Machine Check MISC MSRs (if implemented) do not cause general protection faults. Such writes update all implemented bits in these registers. When clear, writing a non-zero pattern to these registers causes a general protection fault. See the description above for more details.

Startup FID Status (START_FID)—Bits 29–24. Status of the startup FID.

12.2.1.4 NB_CFG Register

Software must perform a read-modify-write to this register to change its value.

NB_CFG Register

MSR C001_001Fh

63	37	36	35	32	
reserved				DisDatMsk	reserved
31					0
reserved					

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–37	reserved		R/W	0
36	DisDatMsk	Disable Data Mask	R/W	0
35–0	reserved		R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Disable Data Mask (DisDatMsk)—Bits 36. Disables DRAM data masking function. For all sized write requests a DRAM read is performed before writing the data. See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this field.

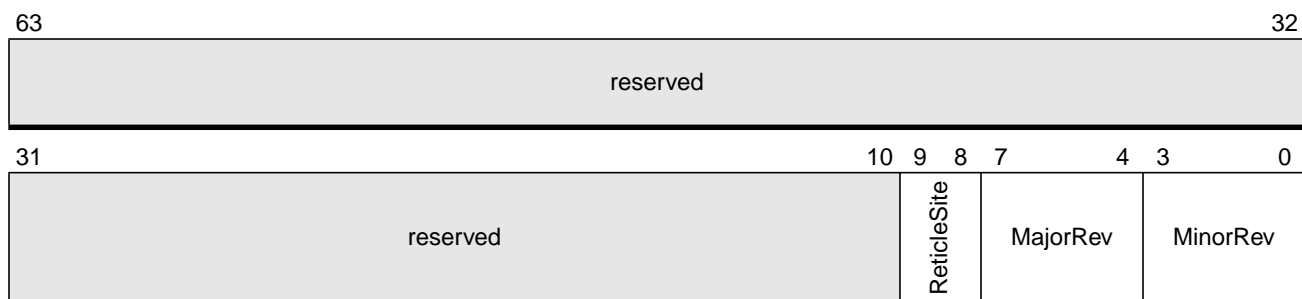
12.2.2 Identification Registers

12.2.2.1 MANID Register

This status register holds the mask manufacturing identification number.

MANID Register

MSR C001_001Eh



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W
63–10	reserved		
9–8	ReticleSite	Reticle site	R
7–4	MajorRev	Major mask set revision number	R
3–0	MinorRev	Minor mask set revision number	R

Field Descriptions

Minor Mask Set Revision Number (MinorRev)—Bits 3–0.

Major Mask Set Revision Number (MajorRev)—Bits 7–4.

Reticle Site (ReticleSite)—Bits 9–8.

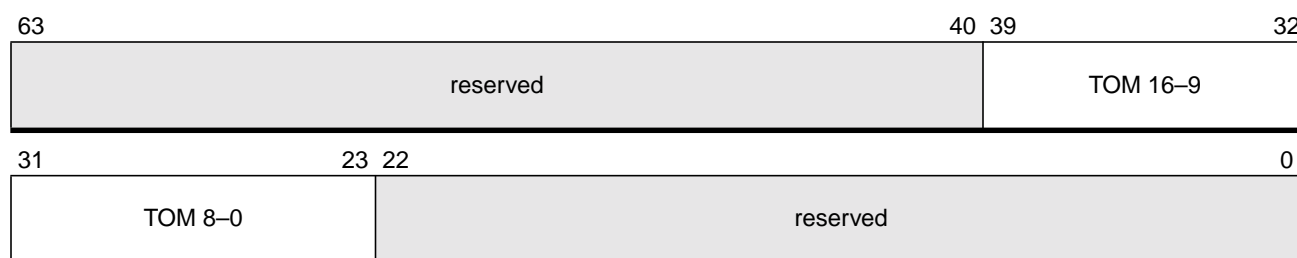
12.2.3 Memory Typing Registers

12.2.3.1 TOP_MEM Register

This register holds the address of the top of memory. When enabled, this address indicates the first byte of I/O above DRAM.

TOP_MEM Register

MSR C001_001Ah



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–40	reserved	RAZ		
39–23	TOM	Top of Memory	R/W	
22–0	reserved	RAZ		

Field Descriptions

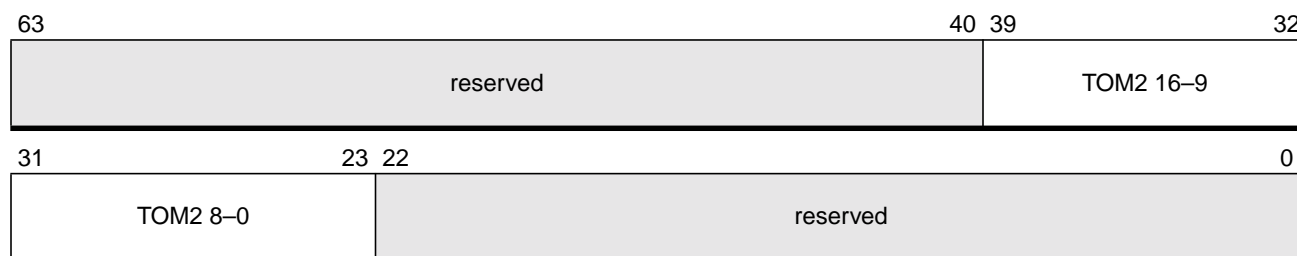
Top of Memory (TOM)—Bits 39–23. Address of top of memory (8-Mbyte granularity).

12.2.3.2 TOP_MEM2 Register

This register holds the second top of memory address. When enabled by setting the MtrrTom2En bit in the SYSCFG register, this address indicates the first byte of I/O above a second allocation of DRAM that starts at 4 Gbytes. Hence, the address in TOP_MEM2 should be set above 4 Gbytes.

TOP_MEM2 Register

MSR C001_001Dh



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–40	reserved	RAZ		

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
39–23	TOM2	Second Top of Memory	R/W	
22–0	reserved	RAZ		

Field Descriptions

Second Top of Memory (TOM2)—Bits 39–23. Address of second top of memory (8-Mbyte granularity).

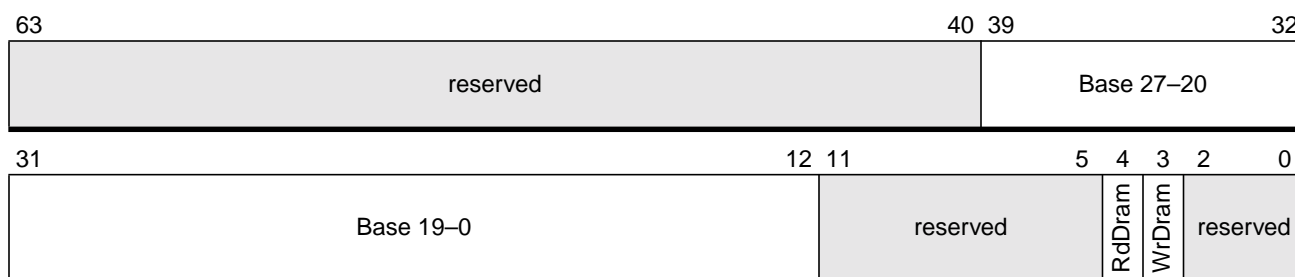
12.2.4 I/O Range Registers

12.2.4.1 IORRBase*i* Registers

These registers hold the bases of the variable I/O ranges.

IORRBase0–1 Registers

MSRs C001_0016h, C001_0018h



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–40	reserved	RAZ		
39–12	Base	Base address	R/W	
11–5	reserved	RAZ		
4	RdDram	Read from DRAM	R/W	
3	WrDram	Write to DRAM	R/W	
2–0	reserved	RAZ		

Field Descriptions

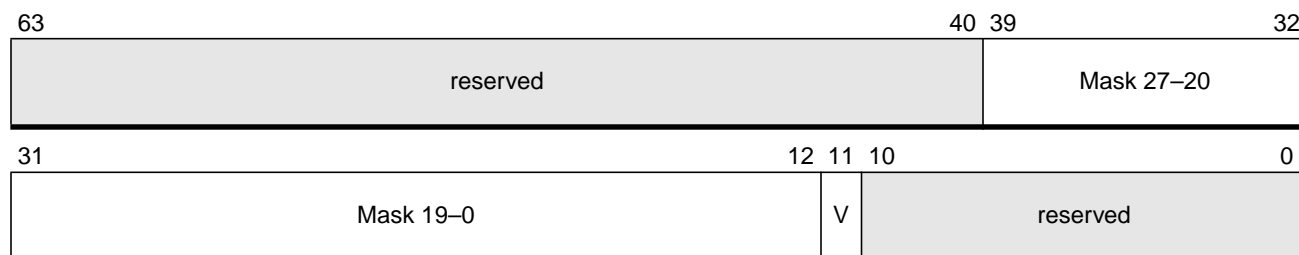
Write to DRAM (WrDram)—Bit 3. If set, stores write to DRAM, otherwise I/O for this range.

Read from DRAM (RdDram)—Bit 4. If set, fetches read from DRAM, otherwise from I/O for this range.

Base Address (Base)—Bits 39–12. Base address for this range.

12.2.4.2 IORRMask*i* Registers

These registers hold the masks of the variable I/O ranges.

IORRMask0–1 Registers
MSRs C001_0017h, C001_0019h


Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–40	reserved	RAZ		
39–12	Mask	Address mask	R/W	
11	V	Enables variable I/O range registers	R/W	
10–0	reserved	RAZ		

Field Descriptions

Variable I/O Range (V)—Bit 11. Enables variable I/O range register.

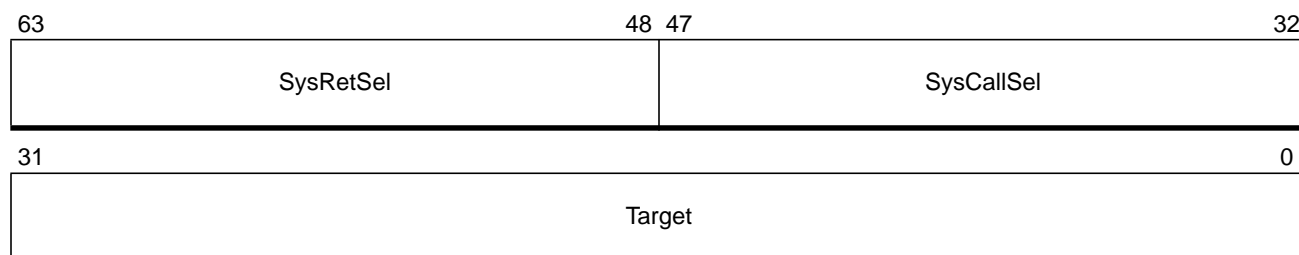
Address Mask (Mask)—Bits 39–12. Address mask.

12.2.5 System Call Extension Registers

The system call extension is enabled by setting bit 0 in the EFER register. This feature adds the SYSCALL and SYSRET instructions which can be used in flat addressed operating systems as low latency system calls and returns. See the “SYSCALL and SYSRET” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information.

12.2.5.1 STAR Register

This register holds the target address used by the SYSCALL instruction and the code and stack segment selector bases used by the SYSCALL and SYSRET instructions.

STAR Register
MSR C000_0081h


Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–48	SysRetSel	SYSRET CS and SS	R/W	
47–32	SysCallSel	SYSCALL CS and SS	R/W	
31–0	Target	SYSCALL target address	R/W	

Field Descriptions

SYSCALL Target Address (Target)—Bits 31–0.

SYSCALL CS and SS (SysCallSel)—Bits 47–32.

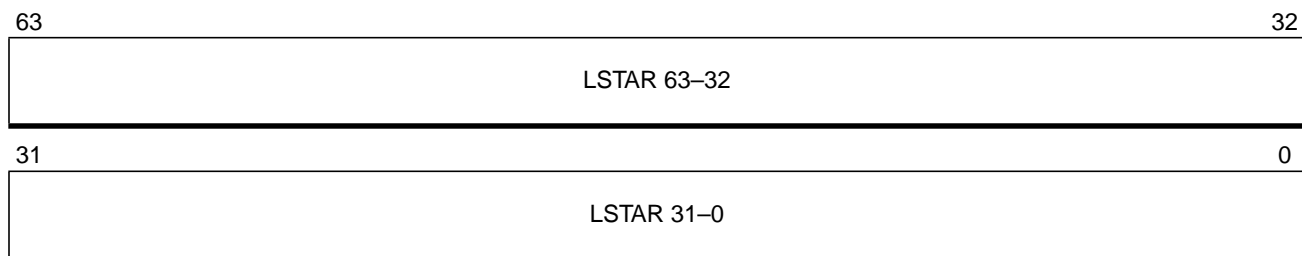
SYSRET CS and SS (SysRetSel)—Bits 63–48.

12.2.5.2 LSTAR Register

The address stored in this register must be in canonical form (if not canonical, a #GP fault will occur).

LSTAR Register

MSR C000_0082h



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–0	LSTAR	Long Mode Target Address	R/W	

Field Descriptions

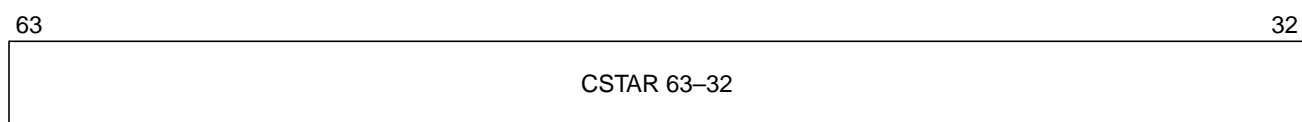
Long Mode Target Address (LSTAR)—Bits 63–0. Target address for 64-bit mode calling programs.

12.2.5.3 CSTAR Register

The address stored in this register must be in canonical form (if not canonical, a #GP fault will occur).

CSTAR Register

MSR C000_0083h





Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–0	CSTAR	Compatibility mode target address	R/W	

Field Descriptions

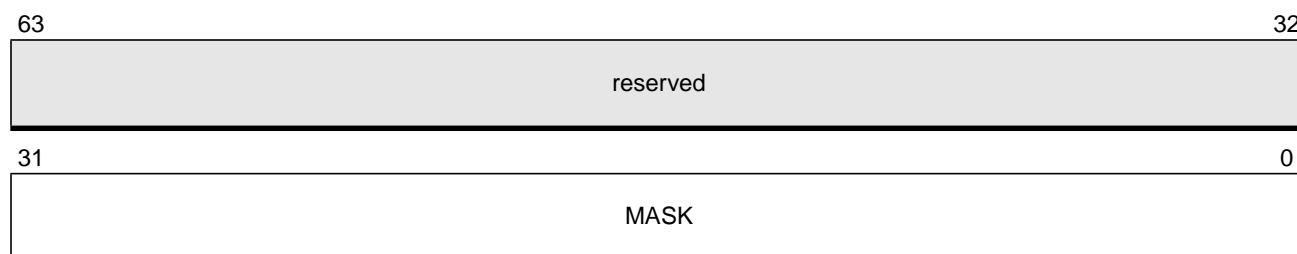
Compatibility Mode Target Address (CSTAR)—Bits 63–0. Target address for compatibility mode calling programs.

12.2.5.4 SF_MASK Register

This register holds the EFLAGS mask used by the SYSCALL instruction. Each one in this mask will clear the corresponding EFLAGS bit when executing the SYSCALL instruction.

SF_MASK Register

MSR C000_0084h



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–32	reserved	RAZ		
31–0	MASK	SYSCALL Flag Mask	R/W	

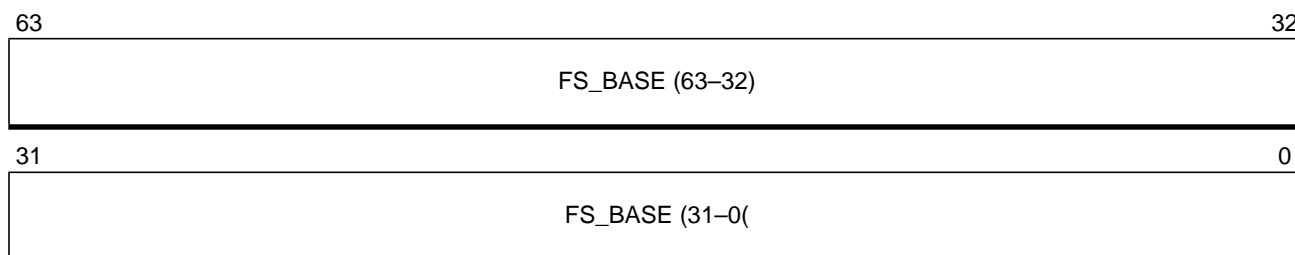
Field Descriptions

SYSCALL Flag Mask (MASK)—Bits 31–0.

12.2.6 Segmentation Registers

12.2.6.1 FS.Base Register

This register provides access to the expanded 64 bit FS segment base. The address stored in this register must be in canonical form (if not canonical, a #GP fault will occur).

FS.Base Register**MSR C000_0100h**

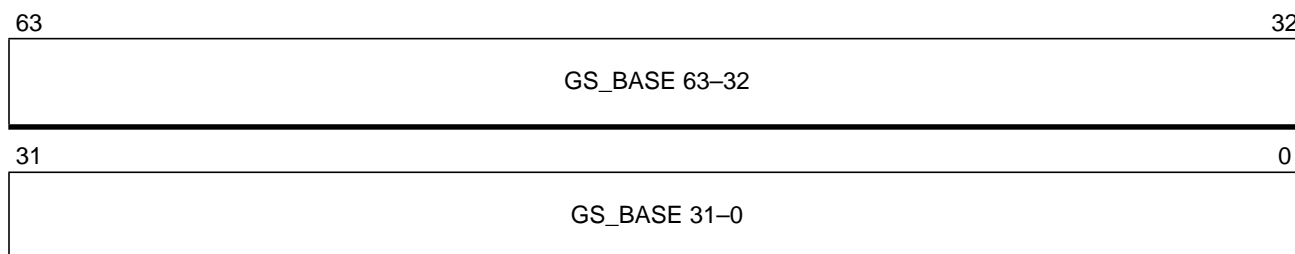
Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63-0	FS_BASE	Expanded FS segment base	R/W	

Field Descriptions

Expanded FS Segment Base (FS_BASE)—Bits 63-0.

12.2.6.2 GS.Base Register

This register provides access to the expanded 64 bit GS segment base. The address stored in this register must be in canonical form (if not canonical, a #GP fault will occur).

GS.Base Register**MSR C000_0101h**

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63-0	GS_BASE	Expanded GS segment base	R/W	

Field Descriptions

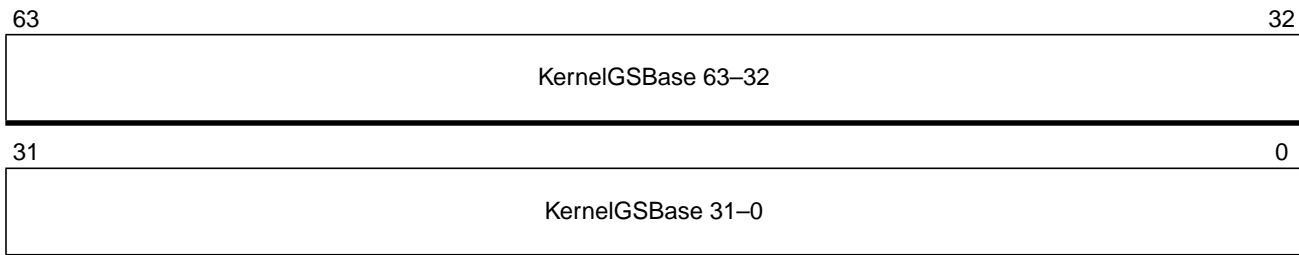
Expanded GS Segment Base (GS_BASE)—Bits 63-0.

12.2.6.3 KernelGSbase Register

This register holds the kernel data structure pointer which can be swapped with the GS_BASE register using the new 64-bit mode instruction SwapGS. See the “SWAPGS Instruction” section in Volume 2 of the *AMD64 Architecture Programmer's Manual* for more information. The address stored in this register must be in canonical form (if not canonical, a #GP fault will occur).

KernelGSbase Register

MSR C000_0102h



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–0	KernelGSBase	Kernel data structure pointer	R/W	

Field Descriptions

Kernel Data Structure Pointer (KernelGSBase)—Bits 63–0.

12.2.7 Power Management Registers

Mobile processors contain AMD PowerNow!™ technology hardware that allows the processor operating voltage and frequency to be dynamically controlled for power management purposes. Use CPUID function 8000_0007h (Get Advanced Power Management Feature Flags) to determine the thermal and power management capabilities of the processor. Refer to “Processor Performance States” on page 217 regarding the use of the FIDVID_STATUS and FIDVID_CTL MSRs.

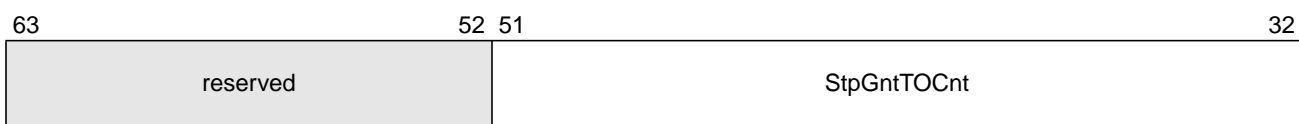
12.2.7.1 FIDVID_CTL Register

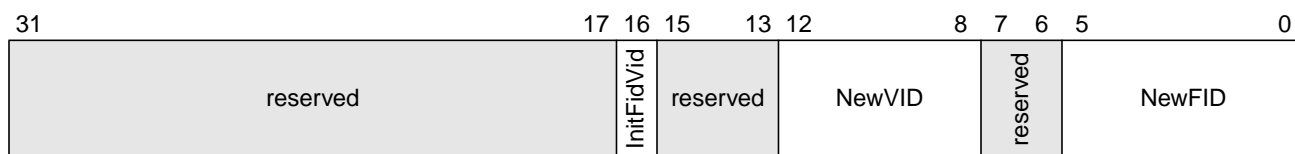
This register holds configuration information relating to power management control. Accessing this register is allowed if the device supports either FID control or VID control as indicated by CPUID. If neither FID control nor VID control is indicated, accessing the FIDVID_CTL register will cause a GP# fault.

This register is used to specify new Frequency ID (FID) and/or Voltage ID (VID) codes to which to change on the next FID/VID change. This register is also used to control how long to wait following a FID/VID change before the PLL and voltage regulator are stable at the new FID/VID. This register is persistent through a warm reset and is initialized to 0 on a cold reset.

FIDVID_CTL Register

MSR C001_0041h





Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–52	reserved	MBZ		0
51–32	StpGntTOCnt	Stop Grant Time-Out Count	R/W	0
31–17	reserved	MBZ		0
16	InitFidVid	Initiate FID/VID Change	W	0
15–13	reserved	MBZ		0
12–8	NewVID	New VID	R/W	0
7–6	reserved	MBZ	R	0
5–0	NewFID	New FID	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Stop Grant Time-Out Count (StpGntTOCnt)—Bits 51-32. This field carries a count of system clock cycles (5 ns) that must elapse from the time a new FID is applied until the time that the PLL is stable at the new FID.

Initiate FID/VID Change (InitFidVid)—Bits 16. Writing this bit to a 1 initiates a FID/VID change. In a multiprocessor system, only the bootstrap processor sees this bit written as a 1. Writing this bit to a 1 initiates the FID change special bus cycle; in Revision B and earlier revisions, the VID change special bus cycle was also initiated. This is a write-only bit and always reads as 0. The status of the resulting FID/VID change can be determined from the FIDVID_STATUS register.

New VID (NewVID)—Bits 12–8. This field is the new VID to transition to. If an attempt is made to write a NewVID value that corresponds to a voltage greater than the voltage that MaxVID corresponds to in the FIDVID_STATUS register then the MaxVID value is written instead. See Table 45 on page 235 for VID values and their corresponding voltages.

New FID (NewFID)—Bits 5–0. This field is the new FID to transition to. If an attempt is made to write a NewFID value greater than MaxFID in the FIDVID_STATUS register then the MaxFID value is written instead. See Table 55 for FID code translations.

Table 55. FID Code Translations

Reference Clock Multiplier	6-Bit FID Code	Reference Clock Multiplier	6-Bit FID Code
4x	00_0000b	15x	01_0110b
5x	00_0010b	16x	01_1000b
6x	00_0100b	17x	01_1010b

Table 55. FID Code Translations (Continued)

Reference Clock Multiplier	6-Bit FID Code	Reference Clock Multiplier	6-Bit FID Code
7x	00_0110b	18x	01_1100b
8x	00_1000b	19X	01_1110b
9x	00_1010b	20X	10_0000b
10x	00_1100b	21X	10_0010b
11x	00_1110b	22x	10_0100b
12x	01_0000b	23x	10_0110b
13x	01_0010b	24x	10_1000b
14x	01_0100b	25x	10_1010b

Note: Encodings not listed are reserved. Using reserved encodings will cause unpredictable behavior.

12.2.7.2 FIDVID_STATUS Register

This register holds status of the current FID, the current VID, pending changes, and maximum values. Accessing this register is allowed if the device supports either FID control or VID control as indicated via CPUID. If neither FID control nor VID control is indicated, accessing the FIDVID_STATUS register will cause a GP# fault.

See Table 55 on page 299 for a complete list of FID values and their corresponding reference clock multiplier values. See Table 45 on page 235 for VID values and their corresponding voltages.

FIDVID_STATUS Register

MSR C001_0042h

63	53	52	48	47	45	44	40	39	37	36	32
reserved				MaxVID		reserved	StartVID		reserved	CurrVID	

31	30	29	28	24	23	22	21	16	15	14	13	8	7	6	5	0
FidVidPending	reserved		MaxRampVID			reserved	MaxFID			reserved	StartFID			reserved	CurrFID	

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–53	reserved	RAZ	R	0
52–48	MaxVID	Max Working VID	R	0
47–45	reserved	RAZ	R	0
44–40	StartVID	Startup VID	R	0
39–37	reserved	RAZ	R	0

Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
36–32	CurrVID	Current VID	R	0
31	FidVidPending	FID/VID Change Pending	R	0
30–29	reserved	RAZ	R	0
28–24	MaxRampVID	Max Ramp VID	R	0
23–22	reserved	RAZ	R	0
21–16	MaxFID	Max FID	R	0
15–14	reserved	RAZ	R	0
13–8	StartFID	Startup FID	R	0
7–6	reserved	RAZ	R	0
5–0	CurrFID	Current FID	R	0

Field Descriptions

Max Working VID (MaxVID)—Bits 52–48. This field reflects the max working VID.

Startup VID (StartVID)—Bits 44–40. This field reflects the startup VID.

Current VID (CurrVID)—Bits 36–32. This field reflects the current VID.

FID/VID Change Pending (FidVidPending)—Bit 31. This bit indicates that a FID/VID change is pending. It is set to 1 by hardware when the InitFidVid bit is set in the FIDVID_CTL register. It is cleared by hardware when the FID/VID change has completed.

Max Ramp VID (MaxRampVID)—Bit 28–24. This field reflects the max Ramp VID.

Max FID (MaxFID)—Bit 21–16. This field reflects the max FID.

Startup FID (StartFID)—Bit 13–8. This field reflects the startup FID.

Current FID (CurrFID)—Bit 5–0. This field reflects the current FID.

12.2.8 IO and Configuration Space Trapping to SMI

IO and configuration space trapping to SMI is a mechanism for executing SMI handler if a specific IO access to one of the specified addresses is detected. Access address and access type checking is done before IO instruction execution. If the access address and access type match one of the specified IO address and access types, the SMI handler is executed, the IO instruction is not executed, and a breakpoint set on the IO instruction is not taken. The IO instruction can be executed inside the SMI handler. This mechanism has higher priority than the SMI# interrupt. If the trap is not taken, check for SMI# interrupt is done after the IO instruction has been executed.

Configuration accesses are special IO accesses. An IO access is defined as a configuration access when IO instruction address bits 31–0 are CFCh, CFDh, CFEh, or CFFh. The access address for a configuration space access is the current value of doubleword IO register CF8h. The access address for an IO access that is not a configuration access is equivalent to the IO instruction address, bits 31–0.

The access address is compared with SmiAddr, and the instruction access type is compared with the enabled access types defined by ConfigSMI, SmiOnRdEn, and SmiOnWrEn. Access address bits 23-0 can be masked with SmiMask. Fields SmiAddr, SmiMask, ConfigSMI, SmiOnRdEn, and SmiOnWrEn are defined in IOTRAP_ADDR*i* registers (*i* = 0,1,2,3).

An SMI handler executed as a result of IO and configuration space trapping will by default only be detected by the processor executing the IO instruction. The user has the ability to enable an SMI special bus cycle and RSM special bus cycle generation.

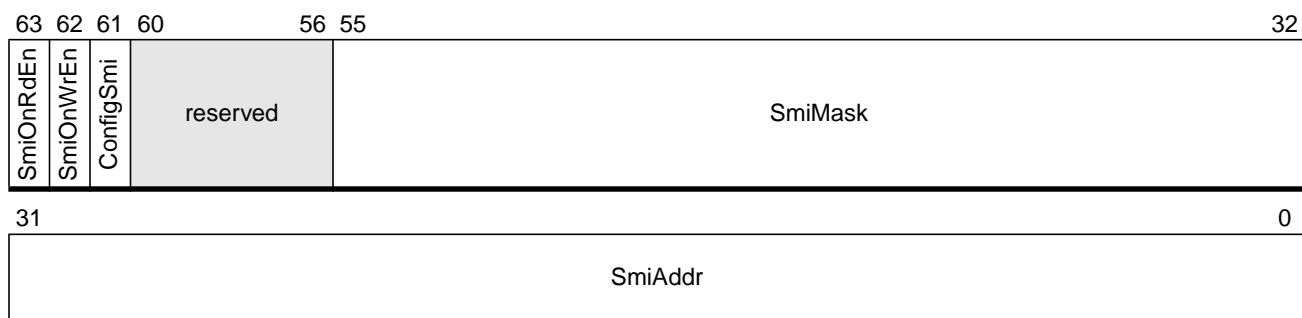
IO and configuration space trapping to SMI applies only to single IO instructions; it does not apply to string and REP IO instructions.

12.2.8.1 IOTRAP_ADDR*i* Registers

See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this register.

IOTRAP_ADDR*i* Registers

MSRs C001_0050h, C001_0051h,
C001_0052h, C001_0053h



Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63	SmiOnRdEn	Enable SMI on IO Read	R/W	0
62	SmiOnWrEn	Enable SMI on IO Write	R/W	0
61	ConfigSmi	Configuration Space SMI	R/W	0
60-56	reserved	RAZ	R	
55-32	SmiMask	SMI Mask	R/W	0
31-0	SmiAddr	SMI Address	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

Enable SMI on IO Read (SmiOnRdEn)—Bits 63. Enables SMI generation on a read access.

Enable SMI on IO Write (SmiOnWrEn)—Bit 62. Enables SMI generation on a write access.

Configuration Space SMI (ConfigSmi)—Bit 61. 1 = configuration access (see “IO and Configuration Space Trapping to SMI” on page 301 for more information on configuration access detection); 0 = IO access different than configuration access.

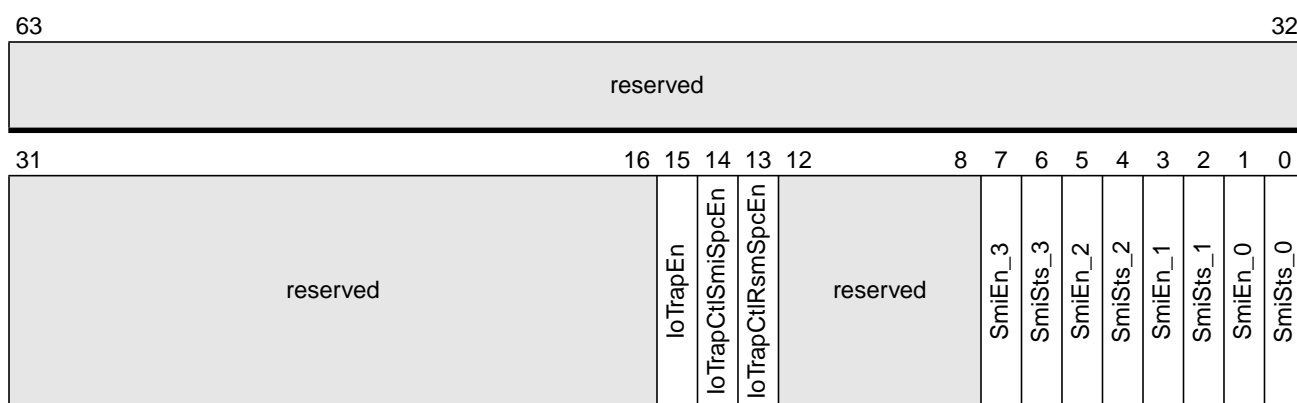
SMI Mask (SmiMask)—Bits 55-32. SMI IO trap mask. 0 = mask address bit; 1 = do not mask address bit.

SMI Address (SmiAddr)—Bits 31-0. SMI IO trap address.

12.2.8.2 IOTRAP_CTL Register

See “Register Differences in Revisions of the AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors” on page 19 for revision information about this register.

IOTRAP_CTL Register

MSR C001_0054h


Bit	Mnemonic	Function	R/W	Reset
63–16	reserved	RAZ	R	
15	IoTrapEn	IO Trap Enable	R/W	0
14	IoTrapCtlSmiSpcEn	IO Trap Control SMI Special Cycle Enable	R/W	0
13	IoTrapCtlRsmSpcEn	IO Trap Control RSM Special Cycle Enable	R/W	0
12-8	reserved	RAZ	R	
7	SmiEn_3	SMI Enable 3	R/W	0
6	SmiSts_3	SMI Status 3	R/W	0
5	SmiEn_2	SMI Enable 2	R/W	0
4	SmiSts_2	SMI Status 2	R/W	0
3	SmiEn_1	SMI Enable 1	R/W	0
2	SmiSts_1	SMI Status 1	R/W	0
1	SmiEn_0	SMI Enable 0	R/W	0
0	SmiSts_0	SMI Status 0	R/W	0

Field Descriptions

IO Trap Enable (IoTrapEn)—Bit 15. Enable IO and configuration space trapping.

IO Trap Control SMI Special Cycle Enable (IoTrapCtlSmiSpcEn)—Bit 14. Enable SMI special bus cycle generation when SMI handler is entered as a result of IO and configuration space trapping.

IO Trap Control RSM Special Cycle Enable (IoTrapCtlRsmSpcEn)—Bit 13. Enable RSM special bus cycle generation when SMI handler is entered as a result of IO and configuration space trapping.

SMI Enable 3 (SmiEn_3)—Bit 7. Enable SMI generation if IO access matches access specified in MSR C001_0053h.

SMI Status 3 (SmiSts_3)—Bit 6. Set if IO access matched access specified in MSR C001_0053h.

SMI Enable 2 (SmiEn_2)—Bit 5. Enable SMI generation if IO access matches access specified in MSR C001_0052h.

SMI Status 2 (SmiSts_2)—Bit 4. Set if IO access matched access specified in MSR C001_0052h.

SMI Enable 1 (SmiEn_1)—Bit 3. Enable SMI generation if IO access matches access specified in MSR C001_0051h.

SMI Status 1 (SmiSts_1)—Bit 2. Set if IO access matched access specified in MSR C001_0051h.

SMI Enable 0 (SmiEn_0)—Bit 1. Enable SMI generation if IO access matches access specified in MSR C001_0050h.

SMI Status 0 (SmiSts_0)—Bit 0. Set if IO access matched access specified in MSR C001_0050h.

Glossary

128-bit media instructions. Instructions that use the 128-bit XMM registers. These are a combination of SSE and SSE2 instruction sets.

64-bit media instructions. Instructions that use the 64-bit MMX™ registers. These are primarily a combination of MMX and 3DNow!™ instruction sets, with some additional instructions from the SSE and SSE2 instruction sets.

16-bit mode. Legacy mode or compatibility mode in which a 16-bit address size is active. See *legacy mode* and *compatibility mode*.

32-bit mode. Legacy mode or compatibility mode in which a 32-bit address size is active. See *legacy mode* and *compatibility mode*.

64-bit mode. A submode of *long mode*. In 64-bit mode, the default address size is 64 bits and new features, such as register extensions, are supported for system and application software.

absolute. Said of a displacement that references the base of a code segment rather than an instruction pointer. Contrast with *relative*.

AH–DH. The high 8-bit AH, BH, CH, and DH registers. Compare *AL–DL*.

AL–DL. The low 8-bit AL, BL, CL, and DL registers. Compare *AH–DH*.

AL–r15B. The low 8-bit AL, BL, CL, DL, SIL, DIL, BPL, SPL, and R8B–R15B registers, available in 64-bit mode.

biased exponent. The sum of a floating-point value's exponent and a constant bias for a particular floating-point data type. The bias makes the range of the biased exponent always positive, which allows reciprocation without overflow.

byte. Eight bits.

clear. To write a bit-value of 0. Compare *set*.

compatibility mode. A submode of *long mode*. In compatibility mode, the default address size is 32 bits and legacy 16-bit and 32-bit applications run without modification.

b. A bit, as in *1 Mb* for one megabit, or *lsb* for least-significant bit.

B. A byte, as in *1 MB* for one megabyte, or *LSB* for least-significant byte.

canonical address. AMD Athlon™ 64 and AMD Opteron™ processors implement 48-bit virtual addresses. A virtual address having all 1s or all 0s in bit 63 through the most significant implemented bit (bit 47 for AMD Athlon™ 64 processor and AMD Opteron™ processor) is said to be in canonical form. Accessing a virtual address that is not in canonical form results in a fault.

commit. To irreversibly write, in program order, an instruction's result to software-visible storage, such as a register (including flags), the data cache, an internal write buffer, or memory.

CPL. Current privilege level.

CR n . Control register number n .

CS. Code segment register.

direct. Referencing a memory location whose address is included in the instruction's syntax as an immediate operand. The address may be an absolute or relative address. Compare *indirect*.

dirty data. Data held in the processor's caches or internal buffers that is more recent than the copy held in main memory.

displacement. A signed value that is added to the base of a segment (absolute addressing) or an instruction pointer (relative addressing). Same as *offset*.

doubleword. Two words, or four bytes, or 32 bits.

double quadword. Eight words, or 16 bytes, or 128 bits. Also called *octword*.

DP. Two processors or dual processors.

eAX–eSP. The 16-bit AX, BX, CX, DX, DI, SI, BP, SP registers or the 32-bit EAX, EBX, ECX, EDX, EDI, ESI, EBP, ESP registers. Compare *rAX–rSP*.

EFER. Extended features enable register.

effective address size. The address size for the current instruction after accounting for the default address size and any address-size override prefix.

effective operand size. The operand size for the current instruction after accounting for the default operand size and any operand-size override prefix.

eFLAGS. 16-bit or 32-bit flags register. Compare *rFLAGS*.

EFLAGS. 32-bit (extended) flags register.

eIP. 16-bit or 32-bit instruction-pointer register. Compare *rIP*.

EIP. 32-bit (extended) instruction-pointer register.

element. See *vector*.

exception. An abnormal condition that occurs as the result of executing an instruction. The processor's response to an exception depends on the type of the exception. For all exceptions except 128-bit media SIMD floating-point exceptions and x87 floating-point exceptions, control is transferred to the handler (or service routine) for that exception, as defined by the exception's vector. For floating-point exceptions defined by the IEEE 754 standard, there are both masked and unmasked responses. When unmasked, the exception handler is called, and when masked a default response is provided instead of calling the handler.

FLAGS. 16-bit flags register.

flush. When referring to caches, (1) to writeback, if modified, and invalidate, as in “flush the cache line”; when referring to the processor pipeline, (2) to invalidate, as in “flush the pipeline”; or (3) to change a value, as in “flush to zero”.

GDT. Global descriptor table.

GDTR. Global descriptor table register.

GPRs. General-purpose registers. For the 16-bit data size, these are AX, BX, CX, DX, DI, SI, BP, SP. For the 32-bit data size, these are EAX, EBX, ECX, EDX, EDI, ESI, EBP, ESP. For the 64-bit data size, these include RAX, RBX, RCX, RDX, RDI, RSI, RBP, RSP, and R8–R15.

IDT. Interrupt descriptor table.

IDTR. Interrupt descriptor table register.

IGN. Ignore. Field is ignored.

indirect. Referencing a memory location whose address is in a register or other memory location. The address may be an absolute or relative address. Compare *direct*.

IP. 16-bit instruction-pointer register.

IRB. The virtual-8086 mode interrupt-redirection bitmap.

IST. The long-mode interrupt-stack table.

IVT. The real-address mode interrupt-vector table.

LDT. Local descriptor table.

LDTR. Local descriptor table register.

legacy x86. The legacy x86 architecture. See “Related Documents” on page 18 for descriptions of the legacy x86 architecture.

legacy mode. An operating mode of the AMD64 architecture in which existing 16-bit and 32-bit applications and operating systems run without modification. A processor implementation of the AMD64 architecture can run in either *long mode* or *legacy mode*. Legacy mode has three submodes, *real mode*, *protected mode*, and *virtual-8086 mode*.

long mode. An operating mode unique to the AMD64 architecture. A processor implementation of the AMD64 architecture can run in either *long mode* or *legacy mode*. Long mode has two submodes, *64-bit mode* and *compatibility mode*.

lsb. least-significant bit.

LSB. least-significant byte.

main memory. Physical memory, such as RAM and ROM (but not cache memory) that is installed in a particular computer system.

mask. (1) A control bit that prevents the occurrence of a floating-point exception from invoking an exception handling routine. (2) A field of bits used for a control purpose.

MBZ. Must be 0. If software attempts to set an MBZ bit to 1, a general-protection exception (#GP) occurs.

memory. Unless otherwise specified, *main memory*.

ModRM. A byte following an instruction opcode that specifies address calculation based on mode (mod), register (r), and memory (m) variables.

offset. A direct memory offset. I.e., a displacement that is added to the base of a code segment (for absolute addressing) or to an instruction pointer (for addressing relative to the instruction pointer, as in RIP-relative addressing).

MP. More than two processors.

msb. Most-significant bit.

MSB. Most-significant byte.

MSR. Model-specific register.

multimedia instructions. A combination of *128-bit media instructions* and *64-bit media instructions*.

octword. Same as *double quadword*.

offset. Same as *displacement*.

overflow. The condition in which a floating-point number is larger in magnitude than the largest, finite, positive or negative number that can be represented in the data-type format being used.

packed. See *vector*.

PAE. Physical-address extensions.

physical memory. Actual memory, consisting of *main memory* and *cache*.

probe. A check for an address in a processor's caches or internal buffers. *External probes* originate outside the processor, and *internal probes* originate within the processor.

processor. This term refers to AMD Athlon™ 64 processor architecture and AMD Opteron™ processor architecture. This document covers both classes of devices. For details about differences between them, see the *AMD Athlon™ 64 Processor Data Sheet*, order# 24659 and the *AMD Opteron™ Processor Data Sheet*, order# 23932.

protected mode. A submode of *legacy mode*.

quadword. Four words, or eight bytes, or 64 bits.

r8–r15. The 8-bit R8B–R15B registers, or the 16-bit R8W–R15W registers, or the 32-bit R8D–R15D registers, or the 64-bit R8–R15 registers.

rAX–rSP. The 16-bit AX, BX, CX, DX, DI, SI, BP, SP registers, or the 32-bit EAX, EBX, ECX, EDX, EDI, ESI, EBP, ESP registers, or the 64-bit RAX, RBX, RCX, RDX, RDI, RSI, RBP, RSP registers. The “r” variable should be replaced by nothing for 16-bit size, “E” for 32-bit size, or “R” for 64-bit size.

RAX. 64-bit version of EAX register.

RAZ. Read as zero (0), regardless of what is written.

RBP. 64-bit version of EBP register.

RBX. 64-bit version of EBX register.

RCX. 64-bit version of ECX register.

RDI. 64-bit version of EDI register.

RDX. 64-bit version of EDX register.

real-address mode. See *real mode*.

real mode. A short name for *real-address mode*, a submode of *legacy mode*.

relative. Referencing with a displacement (also called offset) from an instruction pointer rather than the base of a code segment. Contrast with *absolute*.

REX. An instruction prefix that specifies a 64-bit operand size and provides access to additional registers.

rFLAGS. 16-bit, 32-bit, or 64-bit flags register. Compare *RFLAGS*.

RFLAGS. 64-bit flags register. Compare *rFLAGS*.

rIP. 16-bit, 32-bit, or 64-bit instruction-pointer register. Compare *RIP*.

RIP-Relative Addressing. 4-bit instruction-pointer register. Addressing relative to the 64-bit RIP instruction pointer. Compare *moffset*.

RSI. 64-bit version of ESI register.

RSP. 64-bit version of ESP register.

SBZ. Should be zero. If software attempts to set an SBZ bit to 1, it results in undefined behavior.

set. To write a bit-value of 1. Compare *clear*.

SIB. A byte following an instruction opcode that specifies address calculation based on scale (S), index (I), and base (B).

SIMD. Single instruction, multiple data. See *vector*.

SP. Stack pointer register.

SS. Stack segment register.

SSE. Streaming SIMD extensions instruction set. See *128-bit media instructions* and *64-bit media instructions*.

SSE2. Extensions to the SSE instruction set. See *128-bit media instructions* and *64-bit media instructions*.

sticky bit. A bit that is set or cleared by hardware and that remains in that state until explicitly changed by software.

TOP. x87 top-of-stack pointer.

TPR. Task-priority register (CR8), a new register introduced in the AMD64 architecture to speed interrupt management.

TR. Task register.

TSS. Task state segment.

underflow. The condition in which a floating-point number is smaller in magnitude than the smallest non-zero, positive or negative number that can be represented in the data-type format being used.

UP. One processor or uniprocessor.

vector. (1) A set of integer or floating-point values, called *elements*, that are packed into a single operand. Most of the 128-bit and 64-bit media instructions use vectors as operands. Vectors are also called *packed* or *SIMD* (single-instruction multiple-data) operands. (2) An index into an interrupt descriptor table (IDT), used to for accessing exception handlers. Compare *exception*.

virtual-8086 mode. A submode of *legacy mode*.

word. Two bytes, or 16 bits.

x86. See *legacy x86*.

Index of Register Names

B

BU Machine Check

- Address Register (MSR 040Ah) 158
- Control Register (MSR 0408h) 156
- Status Register (MSR 0409h) 158

C

- Capabilities Pointer Register (Function 0: Offset 34h) 31
- Class Code/Revision ID Register (Function 0: Offset 08h) 30
- Class Code/Revision ID Register (Function 1: Offset 08h) 55
- Class Code/Revision ID Register (Function 2: Offset 08h) 68
- Class Code/Revision ID Register (Function 3: Offset 08h) 89
- Clear Interrupts Register (Function 3: Offset B4h) 121
- Clock Power/Timing High Register (Function 3: Offset D8h) 123
- Clock Power/Timing Low Register (Function 3: Offset D4h) 121
- Config
 - Base and Limit 0 Register (Function 1: Offset E0h) 64
 - Base and Limit 1 Register (Function 1: Offset E4h) 64
 - Base and Limit 2 Register (Function 1: Offset E8h) 64
 - Base and Limit 3 Register (Function 1: Offset ECh) 64
- Configuration Address Register 0CF8h 25

D

DC Machine Check

- Address Register (MSR 0402h) 153
- Control Register (MSR 0400h) 150
- Status (MSR 0401h) 151

- Device/Vendor ID register (Function 0: Offset 00h) 29
- Device/Vendor ID Register (Function 1: Offset 00h) 55
- Device/Vendor ID Register (Function 2: Offset 00h) 67
- Device/Vendor ID Register (Function 3: Offset 00h) 88
- Display Refresh Flow Control Buffers 115
- DRAM
 - Bank Address Mapping Register (Function 2: Offset 80h) 72
 - Base 0 Register (Function 1: Offset 40h) 57
 - Base 1 Register (Function 1: Offset 48h) 57
 - Base 2 Register (Function 1: Offset 50h) 57
 - Base 3 Register (Function 1: Offset 58h) 57
 - Base 4 Register (Function 1: Offset 60h) 57
 - Base 5 Register (Function 1: Offset 68h) 57
 - Base 6 Register (Function 1: Offset 70h) 57
 - Base 7 Register (Function 1: Offset 78h) 57
 - Config High Register (Function 2: Offset 94h) 83
 - Config Low Register (Function 2: Offset 90h) 80
 - CS Base 0 Register (Function 2: Offset 40h) 69
 - CS Base 1 Register (Function 2: Offset 44h) 69
 - CS Base 2 Register (Function 2: Offset 48h) 69
 - CS Base 3 Register (Function 2: Offset 4Ch) 69

- CS Base 4 Register (Function 2: Offset 50h) 69
- CS Base 5 Register (Function 2: Offset 54h) 69
- CS Base 6 Register (Function 2: Offset 58h) 69
- CS Base 7 Register (Function 2: Offset 5Ch) 69
- CS Mask 0 Register (Function 2: Offset 60h) 72
- CS Mask 1 Register (Function 2: Offset 64h) 72
- CS Mask 2 Register (Function 2: Offset 68h) 72
- CS Mask 3 Register (Function 2: Offset 6Ch) 72
- CS Mask 4 Register (Function 2: Offset 70h) 72
- CS Mask 5 Register (Function 2: Offset 74h) 72
- CS Mask 6 Register (Function 2: Offset 78h) 72
- CS Mask 7 Register (Function 2: Offset 7Ch) 72
- Delay Line Register (Function 2: Offset 98h) 86
- Limit 0 Register (Function 1: Offset 44h) 58
- Limit 1 Register (Function 1: Offset 4Ch) 58
- Limit 2 Register (Function 1: Offset 54h) 58
- Limit 3 Register (Function 1: Offset 5Ch) 58
- Limit 4 Register (Function 1: Offset 64h) 58
- Limit 5 Register (Function 1: Offset 6Ch) 58
- Limit 6 Register (Function 1: Offset 74h) 58
- Limit 7 Register (Function 1: Offset 7Ch) 58
- Scrub Address High Register (Function 3: Offset 60h) 108
- Scrub Address Low Register (Function 3: Offset 5Ch) 108
- Timing High Register (Function 2: Offset 8Ch) 78
- Timing Low Register (Function 2: Offset 88h) 76

G

GART

- Aperture Base Register (Function 3: Offset 94h) 119
- Aperture Control Register (Function 3: Offset 90h) 118
- Cache Control Register (Function 3: Offset 9Ch) 120
- Table Base Register (Function 3: Offset 98h) 119
- Global Machine Check Capabilities Register (MSR 0179h) 144
- Global Machine Check Exception Reporting Control Register (MSR 017Bh) 146
- Global Machine Check Processor Status Register (MSR 017Ah) 145

H

Header

- Type Register (Function 0: Offset 0Ch) 31
- Type Register (Function 1: Offset 0Ch) 56
- Type Register (Function 2: Offset 0Ch) 68
- Type Register (Function 3: Offset 0Ch) 89

HyperTransport

- Initialization Control Register (Function 0: Offset 6Ch) 40
- Read Pointer Optimization Register (Function 3: Offset DCh) 124
- Transaction Control Register (Function 0: Offset 68h) 36

I

IC Machine Check

- Address Register (MSR 0406h) 155
- Control Register (MSR 0404h) 154
- Status Register (MSR 0405h) 155

L

LDT0

- Buffer Count Register (Function 0: Offset 90h) 49
- Bus Number Register (Function 0: Offset 94h) 51
- Capabilities Register (Function 0: Offset 80h) 42
- Feature Capability Register (Function 0: Offset 8Ch) 48
- Frequency/Revision Register (Function 0: Offset 88h) 47
- Link Control Register (Function 0: Offset 84h) 43
- Type Register (Function 0: Offset 98h) 51

LDT1

- Buffer Count Register (Function 0: Offset B0h) 49
- Bus Number Register (Function 0: Offset B4h) 51
- Capabilities Register (Function 0: Offset A0h) 42
- Feature Capability Register (Function 0: Offset ACh) 48
- Frequency/Revision Register (Function 0: Offset A8h) 47
- Link Control Register (Function 0: Offset A4h) 43
- Type Register (Function 0: Offset B8h) 51

LDT2

- Buffer Count Register (Function 0: Offset D0h) 49
- Bus Number Register (Function 0: Offset D4h) 51
- Capabilities Register (Function 0: Offset C0h) 42
- Feature Capability Register (Function 0: Offset CCh) 48
- Frequency/Revision Register (Function 0: Offset C8h) 47
- Link Control Register (Function 0: Offset C4h) 43
- Type Register (Function 0: Offset D8h) 51

LS Machine Check

- Address Register (MSR 040Eh) 160
- Control Register (MSR 040Ch) 159
- Status Register (MSR 040Dh) 160

M

MC0_CTL Register (MSR 0400h) 150

MC0_STATUS Register (MSR 0401h) 151

MC1_CTL Register (MSR 0404h) 154

MC2_CTL Register (MSR 0408h) 156

MC3_CTL Register (MSR 040Ch) 159

MCA

- NB Address High Register (Function 3: Offset 54h) 102
- NB Address Low Register (Function 3: Offset 50h) 102
- NB Configuration Register (Function 3: Offset 44h) 93
- NB Control Register (Function 3: Offset 40h) 91
- NB Status High Register (Function 3: Offset 4Ch) 99
- NB Status Low Register (Function 3: Offset 48h) 96

MCG_CAP Register (MSR 0179h) 144

MCG_CTL Register (MSR 017Bh) 146

MCG_STATUS Register (MSR 017Ah) 145

MCi_ADDR Register (MSRs 0402h, 0406h, 040Ah, 040Eh,

0412h) 149

MCi_CTL Registers (MSRs 0400h, 0404h, 0408h, 040Ch,
0410h) 147

MCi_STATUS Registers (MSRs 0401h, 0405h, 0409h, 040Dh,
0411h) 147

Memory-Mapped I/O

- Base 0 Register (Function 1: Offset 80h) 60
- Base 1 Register (Function 1: Offset 88h) 60
- Base 2 Register (Function 1: Offset 90h) 60
- Base 3 Register (Function 1: Offset 98h) 60
- Base 4 Register (Function 1: Offset A0h) 60
- Base 5 Register (Function 1: Offset A8h) 60
- Base 6 Register (Function 1: Offset B0h) 60
- Base 7 Register (Function 1: Offset B8h) 60
- Limit 0 Register (Function 1: Offset 84h) 61
- Limit 1 Register (Function 1: Offset 8Ch) 61
- Limit 2 Register (Function 1: Offset 94h) 61
- Limit 3 Register (Function 1: Offset 9Ch) 61
- Limit 4 Register (Function 1: Offset A4h) 61
- Limit 5 Register (Function 1: Offset ACh) 61
- Limit 6 Register (Function 1: Offset B4h) 61
- Limit 7 Register (Function 1: Offset BCh) 61

N

NB Machine Check

- Address Register (MSR 0412h) 160
- Control Register (MSR 0410h) 160
- Status Register (MSR 0411h) 160

NB_CFG Register (MSR C001_001Fh) 290

Node ID Register (Function 0: Offset 60h) 34

Northbridge

- Capabilities Register (Function 3: Offset E8h) 126

P

PCI I/O

- Base 0 Register (Function 1: Offset C0h) 62
- Base 1 Register (Function 1: Offset C8h) 62
- Base 2 Register (Function 1: Offset D0h) 62
- Base 3 Register (Function 1: Offset D8h) 62
- Limit 0 Register (Function 1: Offset C4h) 63
- Limit 1 Register (Function 1: Offset CCh) 63
- Limit 2 Register (Function 1: Offset D4h) 63
- Limit 3 Register (Function 1: Offset DCh) 63

Performance

- Monitor 0 Register (Function 3: Offset A0h) 121
- Monitor 1 Register (Function 3: Offset A4h) 121
- Monitor 2 Register (Function 3: Offset A8h) 121
- Monitor 3 Register (Function 3: Offset ACh) 121

Power Management

- Control High Register (Function 3: Offset 84h) 117
- Control Low Register (Function 3: Offset 80h) 116

R

Registers

General MSRs 261

Model Specific Registers 285

Power Management 217, 241

Routing Table

Node 0 Register (Function 0: Offset 40h) 32–33

Node 1 Register (Function 0: Offset 44h) 33

Node 2 Register (Function 0: Offset 48h) 33

Node 3 Register (Function 0: Offset 4Ch) 33

Node 4 Register (Function 0: Offset 50h) 33

Node 5 Register (Function 0: Offset 54h) 33

Node 6 Register (Function 0: Offset 58h) 33

Node 7 Register (Function 0: Offset 5Ch) 33

S

Scrub Control Register (Function 3: Offset 58h) 106

SMM

Save State (Offset FE00–FFFFh) 167

SRI-to-XBAR Buffer Count Register (Function 3: Offset
70h) 109

Status/Command Register (Function 0: Offset 04h) 30

T

Thermtrip Status Register (Function 3: Offset E4h) 125

U

Unit ID Register (Function 0: Offset 64h) 35

X

XBAR-to-SRI Buffer Count Register (Function 3: Offset
74h) 113

